

TRADITIONS OF THE SAPTARSI GROUP  
DOWN TO THE END OF THE GUPTA PERIOD

John Edward Mitchiner

Thesis submitted to the University of London  
for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

School of Oriental  
and African Studies

1976



ProQuest Number: 10672692

All rights reserved

INFORMATION TO ALL USERS

The quality of this reproduction is dependent upon the quality of the copy submitted.

In the unlikely event that the author did not send a complete manuscript and there are missing pages, these will be noted. Also, if material had to be removed, a note will indicate the deletion.



ProQuest 10672692

Published by ProQuest LLC (2017). Copyright of the Dissertation is held by the Author.

All rights reserved.

This work is protected against unauthorized copying under Title 17, United States Code  
Microform Edition © ProQuest LLC.

ProQuest LLC.  
789 East Eisenhower Parkway  
P.O. Box 1346  
Ann Arbor, MI 48106 – 1346

TRADITIONS OF THE SAPTARṢI GROUP  
DOWN TO THE END OF THE GUPTA PERIOD

John Edward Mitchiner

Thesis submitted to the University of London  
for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy

School of Oriental  
and African Studies

1976

# ABSTRACT

Traditions of the Saptar̥ṣi Group underwent a number of changes in the period between the Vedic Sam̥hitās and the early Purāṇas. The change in designation of the constellation Ursa Major from R̥k̥sas to R̥ṣis is an indication of the Indianisation of essentially Indo-European ideas: while the tradition of the Saptar̥ṣis as Prāṇas is indicative of the early speculative identity of macrocosm and microcosm within the Saptar̥ṣi traditions. (Chapter 1).

Two main lists of the Saptar̥ṣi group may be discerned: one of which appears primarily in the Vedic texts, and the other in the Epic and Purāṇic texts. (Chapters 1-2).

The formulation of the second main list is developed from lists of six Prajāpatis and Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: and in turn gives rise to lists of eight, nine and ten Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. (Chapter 2).

The change in identities between the R̥ṣis of the two main lists is traceable in some measure to the influence over the Saptar̥ṣi traditions of Brahmin families in regions to the south of the Vindhyas. (Chapter 3).

The Purāṇic tradition of listing 14 Saptar̥ṣi groups in different Manvantaras presupposes an earlier tradition of the appearance of Saptar̥ṣi groups in different Yugas of a Kalpa. (Chapter 4)

The tradition of the Saptar̥ṣis as stars develops from ideas of their nature as embodiments of Fire: while the astronomical theory of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga demonstrates two versions, differing in the number of Nakṣatras in each version. (Chapter 5).

Both the second main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group and the second version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga (Chapters 2-3 and 5) demonstrate the degree to which the Epic and Purāṇic traditions of the Saptar̥ṣi group were promulgated and influenced by Brahmin families of the Western Deccan, particularly under the Śātavāhana and Vākātaka dynasties during the early centuries of the Christian era.



## CONTENTS

Abstract	2
Contents	3
List of Tables	6
Abbreviations	7
Acknowledgements	8
 <u>INTRODUCTION</u>	 10
(a) Previous Studies	10
(b) The Chronology of the Textual Material	14
(c) Textual Citations	32
 <u>CHAPTER 1 : Early Traditions of the Saptarsi Group</u>	 33
1. Introduction	33
2. Enumerations of the Saptarsi Group	34
(a) The Sūtra Texts	34
(b) The Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic Texts	37
(c) The Vedic Samhitās	40
3. Further Designations of the Saptarsi Group	44
(a) Vipras	44
(b) Rksas	47
(c) Prānas	57
(d) Other Designations	69
4. Alternative Names of Individual Rsis	80
 <u>CHAPTER 2 : The Later Lists of the Saptarsi Group</u>	 86
1. Introduction	86
(a) The Two Main Lists of the Saptarsi Group	86
(b) Further Designations of the Saptarsi Group	88
2. Enumerations of the Saptarsi Group	90
(a) The Rāmāyana	90
(b) The Mahābhārata	92
(c) The Harivaṃśa	101
(d) The Early Purāṇic Texts	106

	4.
(e) The Astronomical Texts	114
(f) Conclusions	117
3. Further Designations of the Saptarsi Group	119
(a) The Prajāpatīs	120
(b) The Mind-born Sons of Brahman	125
4. Conclusion	132
 <u>CHAPTER 3 : Gotra and Regional Factors operative in the Formulation of the Second Main List of the Saptarsi Group</u>	 134
1. Introduction	134
2. Gotra Factors	135
(a) The General Nature of the Gotra Organisation	135
(b) Lists of the Saptarsis as Founders of Lineages	138
(c) Relationships between the Main Rsis	147
(d) Gotra Influences in the Rsi Traditions	157
(e) Conclusion	165
3. Regional Factors	168
(a) The Region of the Saptarsi Group	168
(b) The Region of Rsis in the Earlier Texts	175
(c) The Region of Rsis in the Rāmāyana	178
(d) The Region of Rsis in the Mahābhārata and the Early Purāṇic Texts	185
(e) Conclusion	193
4. Conclusion	197
 <u>CHAPTER 4 : The Manvantara Traditions of the Saptarsis</u>	 202
1. Introduction	202
2. The Identity of the Saptarsis in the 14 Manvantaras	205
(a) The Lists of the Saptarsis	205
(b) Examination of the Lists	213
(c) Observations	220
3. The Saptarsis within the Manvantara Theory	222
(a) The Function and Appearance of the Saptarsis within the Manvantara	222
(b) The Appearance of the Saptarsis within the Mahāyuga	226
(c) The Abode of the Saptarsis	239
4. Conclusion	246

	5.
<u>CHAPTER 5 : The Saptarsis as Stars in the Sky</u>	248
1. Introduction	248
2. The Earlier Literature	249
3. The Later Literature	254
(a) Poetical References	254
(b) Mythological References	256
(c) Astronomical or Observational References	262
4. The Transference of the Saptarsis to the Sky	266
(a) The Intermediary Role of Fire	266
(b) Fire as the Means whereby the Rsis attain Svargaloka	268
(c) The Rsis as Embodiments of Fire-Agni	273
(d) The Rsis as Suns	277
(e) The Transference of the Saptarsis to the Sky	282
5. The Saptarsi Yuga	284
(a) Introduction	284
(b) The Saptarsi Yuga according to Varāhamihira	288
(c) The Saptarsi Yuga according to the Early Purānic Texts	304
(d) The Saptarsi Yuga according to Vrddha Garga	315
(e) Conclusion: The Two Versions of the Saptarsi Yuga	328
 <u>CONCLUSION</u>	 336
 Bibliography 1 : Textual Editions Cited	 343
Bibliography 2 : Main Translations of Texts	351
Bibliography 3 : Select Secondary Works	354

LIST OF TABLES

Table 1 :	The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Harivamśa	207
Table 2 :	The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Matsya Purāṇa	208
Table 3 :	The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa	209
Table 4 :	The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Viṣṇu Purāṇa	210
Table 5 :	The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa	211
Table 6 :	The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Vāyu Purāṇa	212
Table 7 :	The Period of the Saptarṣi Yuga, according to Varāhamihira	302
Table 8 :	The Saptarṣis in Maghā and associated Events, according to the Epic and Purāṇic texts	303
Table 9 :	The Period of the Saptarṣi Yuga, according to Vrddha Garga	326
Table 10 :	The Period of the Saptarṣi Yuga, according to Varāhamihira and the Purāṇic Texts (commencing with Śravanā)	327

ABBREVIATIONS

ADMG	Abhandlungen der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft.
AKAWB	Abhandlungen der Königlichen Akademie der Wissenschaft zu Berlin.
AOSP	American Oriental Society Publication.
ASI	Archaeological Survey of India.
ASS	Ānandaśrama Sanskrit Series.
Bib.Ind.	Bibliotheca Indica.
BORI	Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute.
BSOAS	Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies.
BSPS	Bombay Sanskrit and Prakrit Series.
CASS	Centre of Advanced Study in Sanskrit.
CII	Corpus Inscriptionum Indicarum.
CSS	Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series.
Ep.Ind.	Epigraphia Indica.
GOS	Gaekward's Oriental Series.
HOS	Harvard Oriental Series.
IHQ	Indian Historical Quarterly.
Ind.Ant.	Indian Antiquary.
Ind.Stud.	Indische Studien.
JAOS	Journal of the American Oriental Society.
JASB	Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal.
JBBRAS	Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society.
JRAS	Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society.
KSS	Kashi Sanskrit Series.
LCL	Loeb Classical Library.
MAR	Mythology of All Races.
NKGWG	Nachrichten von der Königlichen Gesellschaft der Wissenschaft zu Göttingen.
n.s.	New Series.
OST	Original Sanskrit Texts.
PSS	Punjab Sanskrit Series.
RAS otf	Royal Asiatic Society Oriental Translation Fund.
SBE	Sacred Books of the East.
SBH	Sacred Books of the Hindus.
ŚP	Śata Pitaka Series.
SVS	Sarasvati Vihara Series.
TCAAS	Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences.
TSS	Trivandrum Sanskrit Series.
TITLVK	Tydschrift voor Indische Taal-, Land en Volken-Kunde.
VIS	Vishveshvaranand Indological Series.
WIS	Woolner Indological Series.
ZDMG	Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

First and foremost I should like to express my indebtedness to my two supervisors: to Dr. W.D. O'Flaherty - now of the Department of South and South-East Asian Studies, University of California at Berkeley - who guided me through the first two years of research, and to Dr. J.G. de Casparis who has seen the research through its final stages.

I am particularly grateful also to Dr. A. Piatigorski (Department of History, S.O.A.S.) for various points of advice and criticism on topics arising from the thesis: and to Mr. J.E.B. Gray (Department of India, Pakistan and Ceylon, S.O.A.S.) for initial Sanskrit tuition.

The financial assistance of the Social Science Research Council enabled me to carry out research both in this country and also in India. I should like to thank especially Dr. V.N. Singh, Sri A.S. Gupta and Dr. G.S. Rai of the Kashiraj Trust in Benares for discussion and advice on various aspects of Purāṇic tradition, particularly on the Saptarṣi Manvantara tradition: as also Drs. Tripathi and Basu (Department of Philosophy) and Dr. S.N. Rai (Department of Physics) of the Benares Hindu University. I am grateful also to Dr. C. Sivaramamurti (National Museum) and Mr. S.B. Roy (Institute of Chronology) in Delhi, particularly for discussion of the Saptarṣi Yuga: and to Profs. V. Raghavan and K.K. Rajan in Madras, for advice and discussion on various aspects of the Saptarṣi traditions.

My thanks go also to the librarians and staff of the following Institutions:

in London, the School of Oriental and African Studies; the India Office; the British Museum Reading Room and Department of Oriental Printed Books and Manuscripts; the Royal Asiatic Society; and Senate House;

in Oxford, the Oriental Institute and the Indian Institute;

in Benares, the Central Library and Department of Philosophy Library  
of the Benares Hindu University; and the Sanskrit University;  
in Poona, the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute;  
in Madras, the Central Library of the University of Madras;  
in Calcutta, the Asiatic Society of Bengal.

I take this opportunity to thank additionally the many  
friends and members of family whose help, advice and criticism  
have complemented and aided the research for the thesis.

## INTRODUCTION.

### (a) Previous Studies.

The thesis is primarily a study of the traditions of the Saptarṣi group as a whole, rather than of the traditions of individual Ṛsis who are included in that group. It seeks in the first instance to elucidate the identity of the Ṛsis who are included in that group: to discern some of the reasons affecting the inclusion of Ṛsis in the group: and to examine some of the main traditions associated with the group. In this respect it considers traditions of individual Ṛsis only insofar as those traditions would appear relevant to the group as a whole, and only insofar as they help to explain the inclusion of a Ṛsi within the group or to throw further light upon the traditions of the group as a whole.

Traditions of individual Ṛsis have been considered by many previous writers: as for example in the recent studies of Bhṛgu by Goldman,<sup>(1)</sup> of Vasistha by Dandekar<sup>(2)</sup> and Sharma,<sup>(3)</sup> and of Viśvāmitra by Das Gupta,<sup>(4)</sup> Sastri<sup>(5)</sup> and Kapadia.<sup>(6)</sup> Similarly, references to individual Ṛsis have been collected in such general studies as those of Hillebrandt,<sup>(7)</sup> Macdonell,<sup>(8)</sup> Macdonell-Keith<sup>(9)</sup> and Muir<sup>(10)</sup> for

- 
- (1) R. Goldman - Myth and Metamyth: A Critical Study of the Evolution and Manipulation of the Bhārgava Corpus in the Mahābhārata : University of Pennsylvania 1971.
  - (2) R.N. Dandekar - Vasistha as a Religious Conciliator : CASS 41, Poona 1970.  
- The Two Births of Vasistha : Innsbruck 1974.
  - (3) U.C. Sharma - Vasistha in the Purāṇas : Purāṇa vol.16, 1974.
  - (4) K.K. Das Gupta - The Purāṇas on the Audumbaras : Purāṇa vol.7, 1965.
  - (5) A.M. Sastri - The Mahābhārata on the Relation between Viśvāmitra and the Audumbaras : Purāṇa vol.7, 1965.
  - (6) B.H. Kapadia - Viśvāmitra in Vedic, Epic and Purāṇic Literature : Vidyanagar 1971.
  - (7) A. Hillebrandt - Vedische Mythologie : Breslau 1891-1892.
  - (8) A.A. Macdonell - Vedic Mythology : Strassburg 1879.
  - (9) A.A. Macdonell & A.B. Keith - Vedic Index : London 1912.
  - (10) J. Muir - Original Sanskrit Texts : London 1872-1884.



the early Vedic texts, and those of Dowson<sup>(11)</sup> and Hopkins<sup>(12)</sup> for the later Epic and Purāṇic texts. Such studies have not generally been intended to consider such individual traditions of Ṛsis in relation to their relevance to the traditions of the group of Saptarṣis as a whole: nor to the reasons for the inclusion of Ṛsis in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group. This is accordingly one of the principal aims of the thesis: in particular to discover why two separate main lists of the group should have been formulated, and to see what factors have been instrumental in bringing about the change in identities between the Ṛsis of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group. Previous studies have tended to notice without any further comment or attempted explanation the existence of two separate lists - as for example in the works of Dowson and Hopkins. They have not generally attempted to consider in any detail the relative importance of these groups both in relation to each other and also in respect of the textual material within which each is primarily to be found: nor have they attempted to discern the reasons which have led to the virtual replacement in importance of the one group by the other, as occurs between the Vedic texts on the one hand and the Epic and Purāṇic texts on the other hand. It would indeed be perhaps little exaggeration to say that nearly all previous studies of the Ṛsis, both individually and more especially as a group, have tended to be descriptive rather than analytical in nature: and in this respect it might be said that the thesis attempts to initiate a new direction in such studies.

The task of discerning such reasons for the replacement of the one group by the other is undertaken especially in respect of the role of the Saptarṣis in the Gotra organisation, and also in respect of regional data within the Ṛsi traditions. Such regional data have not been previously collected or analysed in detail for

---

(11) J. Dowson - A Classical Dictionary of Hindu Mythology : London 1913.

(12) E.W. Hopkins - Epic Mythology : Strassburg 1915.

individual Rsis included in the Saptarsi group with reference to the resulting regional association of the group as a whole: and similarly, while such previous studies as those of Brough,<sup>(13)</sup> Rahurkar,<sup>(14)</sup> Bhargava,<sup>(15)</sup> and Pargiter<sup>(16)</sup> have considered the lineages of individual Rsis, these have again not generally been assessed in relation to the role of those Rsis within the Saptarsi group, nor in relation to the changes in identity which occur between the Rsis included in either of the two main lists of the Saptarsi group.

In examining such lists and traditions of the Saptarsi group, certain further terms which are used to designate the group are also taken into account - such as Rksa, Prāna and Prājāpati. Several of these terms have not been previously considered in any detail insofar as they are applied to the Saptarsi group: and where such consideration has been given to them - as for example in the case of the term Rksa by Keith<sup>(17)</sup> - this has been largely on only one aspect of the term, and frequently in a brief and somewhat unsatisfactory manner.

The Manvantara theory has been considered in general terms by several previous writers: most recently for example by Chenburkar,<sup>(18)</sup> Church,<sup>(19)</sup> and Gupta.<sup>(20)</sup> But neither the lists of Saptarsis in each of the 14 Manvantaras nor the specific role of the Saptarsis within the Manvantara theory have previously been considered in detail.

---

(13) J. Brough - Early Brahmanical System of Gotra and Pravara : Cambridge 1953.

- Early History of the Gotras : JRAS 1946.

(14) V.G. Rahurkar - Seers of the Rgveda : Poona 1964.

(15) P.L. Bhargava - India in the Vedic Age : London 1971.

(16) F.E. Pargiter - Ancient Indian Historical Tradition : London 1922.

(17) cf. A.B. Keith - Indian Mythology, p.102 : Boston 1917.

(18) J. Chenburkar - Historical and Religious Background of the Concept of Four Yugas .. : Purāna vol.16, 1974.

(19) C.D. Church - The Myth of Four Yugas in the Sanskrit Purānas : Purāna vol.16, 1974.

(20) A.S. Gupta - Purānic Theory of the Yugas and Kalpas : Purāna vol.11, 1969.

Several previous attempts have been made to discern the precise nature of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga: most notably by Cunningham,<sup>(21)</sup> and more recently by such writers as Sethna<sup>(22)</sup> and Roy.<sup>(23)</sup> Such attempts have frequently resulted in contradictory, and sometimes manifestly inaccurate, results. Cunningham gave no detailed consideration to the Pur̥āṇic accounts of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga, referring only to the accounts in the Viṣṇu and Bhāgavata Pur̥āṇas: and he supposed that the version followed by Vṛddha Garga was the same as that followed by the Pur̥āṇas. Most later writers have relied upon the interpretation of such Pur̥āṇic data given by Pargiter:<sup>(24)</sup> yet that would in itself appear to be somewhat inadequate in the case of certain ślokaṣ which are of central importance in establishing the version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga used in those texts. All previous writers, while discerning two different versions of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga, have tended to assume that these differ only in the periods ascribed to the Saptar̥ṣis being in each Nakṣatra: yet it would appear necessary to question the validity of such an assumption. It would also appear necessary to question the bold claims made by several recent writers for the antiquity of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga: while at the same time attempting to discern the likely antiquity and origin of each of the two versions.

---

(21) A. Cunningham - A Book of Indian Eras : Calcutta 1883.

(22) K.D. Sethna - Megasthenes and Indian Chronology : Pur̥āṇa vols.8-10, 1966-1968.

(23) S.B. Roy - Ancient India, a Chronological Study : Delhi 1975.

(24) F.E. Pargiter - Dynasties of the Kali Age : Oxford 1913.

(b) The Chronology of the Textual Material.

The texts which are examined in the thesis are, as indicated through the use of the term saptarsi, those which relate to the Sanskrit traditions of the Saptarsi group. They are moreover those whose date of composition may be ascribed to the period prior to the end of the Gupta dynasty. Although no precise date can be given of when the Imperial Gupta dynasty actually came to an end, this may be placed around the middle of the 6th century A.D. It would appear that Gupta suzerainty in Magadha had ceased by the mid-6th century A.D.: as is suggested by a land-grant in the Gāyā district issued in A.D. 551, which makes no reference to any Gupta ruler but to a certain Nandana who is styled kumārāmatya mahārāja. On the other hand, Gupta suzerainty is still acknowledged in north Bengal in a land-grant from Dāmodarpur of Gupta 224 or A.D. 543.<sup>(25)</sup> It would also appear that remnants of Gupta power lasted considerably beyond this date in outlying regions: as is indicated for example by the acknowledgement of Gupta suzerainty in an inscription from Sumandala in Kalinga of the year Gupta 250 or A.D. 569.<sup>(26)</sup> The expression "the end of the Gupta dynasty" is therefore taken to denote in this context the ending of imperial Gupta power around the middle of the 6th century A.D.: and the texts to be considered in the thesis are accordingly those whose date of composition may be said to be probably prior to this period.

The textual material to be taken into consideration comprises a very large number of individual works. It would not appear necessary to enter upon a detailed discussion of the chronology of each individual text - or of the chronological divisions within each text - when such a text furnishes only one or two passages which are of relevance to the thesis: since such a discussion, although of value in its own right, would not serve the purpose of the thesis

---

(25) cf. D.C. Sircar - Select Inscriptions, book 3 no.39, p.346.

(26) cf. Ep.Ind. vol.28, p.79 : also S.R. Goyal - A History of the Imperial Guptas, pp.384-386.

as a whole. On the other hand, several works to which reference is made - such as the Yuga Purāṇa of Vṛddha Garga - demand in the present context a more detailed discussion than has usually been accorded them by previous writers. In the following account of textual chronology, therefore, much reference has been made to the work of Renou,<sup>(27)</sup> particularly on the dating of Vedic texts: while reference has also been made to the earlier works of Winternitz<sup>(28)</sup> and Macdonell,<sup>(29)</sup> and to the relevant sections in the Cambridge History of India<sup>(30)</sup> and in the first three volumes of the History and Culture of the Indian Peoples.<sup>(31)</sup> Further studies of individual texts or authors are referred to in the appropriate contexts.

Although individual texts may on occasions fall beyond the strict categories within which they are nominally included in respect of their chronology, it has nevertheless been thought useful to employ such general categories as those of Vedic Saṃhitās, Brāhmaṇas, and so forth, and to ascribe an approximate overall period to them: while subsequently noting the relative chronology of individual texts within each category.

---

(27) L. Renou - L'Inde Classique : Paris 1947.

(28) M. Winternitz - History of Indian Literature : Calcutta 1927-1933.

(29) A.A. Macdonell - History of Sanskrit Literature : rep. Delhi 1971.

(30) E.J. Rapson (ed) - Cambridge History of India, vol.1 : rep. Delhi 1968.

(31) R.C. Majumdar & A.C. Pusalker (ed) - History and Culture of the Indian People, vols.1-3 : Bombay 1951-1954.

1. Vedic Samhitās : approximate period c.1400-900 B.C.

a.) R̥gveda: The earliest of the four Vedas: books 2-9 are older than books 1 and 10. Attempts to interpret astronomical data in the hymns as indicating dates in the 4th or 5th millenia (e.g. by Jacobi and Tilak) are not here accepted as conclusive. The hymns generally indicate the recent entry of the Vedic Āryans into India around the Panjāb: and the close connection of the language with that of the Avesta suggests a very recent Indo-Iranian separation, and a similar date for both the R̥gveda and the Avesta. Renou suggests a date not later than the 6th or 7th century B.C. for the composition of the Avesta: but Burrow<sup>(32)</sup> has recently suggested that the founding of the Zoroastrian religion is not likely to be later than c.1100 B.C., and may be as much as 600 years earlier. Archaeological indications are somewhat ambiguous: it is possible to suggest, for example, that Painted Grey Ware is to be associated with invaders who were not identical with the Vedic Āryans; and it would therefore seem possible to use such evidence only in a secondary capacity to further arguments. It may however be noted that there is considerable evidence for placing the Mahābhārata war as an historical event around the 10th century B.C., on the basis of the flooding at Hastināpura:<sup>(33)</sup> hence, if this were to be accepted, then the composition of the R̥gveda should most probably be placed at a period considerably earlier than this, since while knowing of the Bharatas the hymns show little knowledge of such a war. In general terms, the latter part of the 2nd millenium B.C. would seem the most likely period of composition of the R̥gvedic hymns: the period might be extended back to c.1750 B.C. if it were to be accepted that the Vedic Āryans who composed the hymns were also those who finally destroyed the Indus Valley Civilisation. Against the suggestion of Renou, however, it may be

(32) T. Burrow - The Proto-Indoaryans : JRAS 1973.

(33) cf. B.B. Lal - Excavations at Hastināpura : Ancient India vols.10-11, 1954-1955.

suggested that even if the Indus Civilisation were proved to be of Indo-European character, this would not necessarily demand a revision of the date of the R̥gveda: for the hymns would appear to know little of urban civilisation, hence even in the case of an Indo-European civilisation in the Indus it might be inferred that the peoples of such an urban civilisation would have had little apart from a language-base in common with the Vedic Āryans. Thus the date of c.1750 B.C. may be taken as the very earliest date: the probability being that the R̥gvedic hymns were composed mainly several centuries later than this date, with books 1 and 10 being added probably at a still later date.

- b) Yajurveda: This frequently borrows mantras from the R̥gveda, and generally presumes its existence. The Black recension is probably older than the White: and according to Schröder the Maitrāyaṇī, followed by the Kaṭha, are the oldest of the Black recensions. Such a view is not unanimously accepted. If the R̥gveda is ascribed to c.1400-1100, the Yajurveda may probably be ascribed in approximate terms to c.1200-1000 B.C. The Sāmaveda is very largely borrowed from the R̥gveda: and it is variously considered to either predate, postdate, or be contemporary with the Yajurveda.
- c) Atharvaveda: This borrows considerably from the R̥gveda, approximately one-seventh of the total being taken directly from that work. The language also appears to be generally considerably later than that of the R̥gveda, and the work gives evidence of a more eastern geographical orientation (e.g. the references to the Māgadha in the Vr̥atyā-Kāṇḍa 15). The content would however seem to be often primitive and archaic in character: and its relation to the other Samhitās is unclear. Books 19-20 are probably of later date than the rest of the work. A very approximate period might be proposed of c.1300-900 B.C.
-

2. Brāhmanas : approximate period c.900-600 B.C.

All follow the various Vedas to which they are attached.

- a) R̥gveda Brāhmanas: The Aitareya precedes the Kausītaki, the latter being more systematic and detailed: both are probably among the oldest of the Brāhmanas, second only to the Taittirīya in age. Perhaps c.850 B.C.
- b) Yajurveda Brāhmanas: The Taittirīya is perhaps the oldest of all the Brāhmanas, c.900 B.C.: the Śatapatha is considerably more recent as a whole, perhaps c.700 B.C.
- c) Sāmaveda Brāhmanas: The Jaiminiya precedes the Pañcaviṃśa, both perhaps c.800 B.C. The Śadvimśa, Sāmavidhāna and other minor Brāhmanas are among the latest of this class, perhaps c.600 B.C.
- d) Atharvaveda Brāhmanas: The Gopatha is among the latest of all the Brāhmanas: perhaps 7th or even 6th century B.C.

3. Āranyakas and Upaniṣads : approximate period c.700-400 B.C.

Both categories presuppose the Brāhmanas to which they belong and refer; Āranyakas predate Upaniṣads, and prose sections in the Upaniṣads generally predate verse sections. The earliest of the Upaniṣads are probably the Brhadāraṇyaka, Chandogya, Aitareya and Kausītaki - perhaps c.600 B.C.; next are the Kena, Taittirīya, and Īśa. To a somewhat later date belong the Katha, Śvetāśvatara, Mūṇḍaka and Praśna - perhaps c.500 B.C.; while to a considerably later date belong the Māṇḍukya and Maitri. Further Upaniṣads extend into medieval times.



4. Kalpa Sūtras : approximate period c.500-200 B.C.

- a) Śrauta Sūtras: According to Caland, certain Śrauta Sūtras may have been composed prior to sections of the Brāhmanas - for example the Baudhāyana prior to parts of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa. This opinion is not unanimously accepted. Following Renou, it may be accepted that a Śrauta Sūtra is generally later than the Brāhmaṇa from which it derives. The Baudhāyana is probably one of the earliest: the Śāṅkhāyana earlier than the Āśvalāyana; and the Mānava, Lātyāyana, and Drāhyāyana also relatively early, perhaps c.400 B.C. To a later date belong the Āpastamba and Hiranyakeśin: and the latest are probably the Kātyāyana, the Vaikhānasa, and the Vaitāna.
- b) Grhya Sūtras: These are generally later than the Śrauta Sūtras. The Gobhila and Mānava are among the earliest: the Baudhāyana is earlier than the Āpastamba. The Hiranyakeśin is somewhat later than these; and the Vaikhānasa is perhaps the latest.
- c) Dharma Sūtras: Yaska quotes legal rules in the Sūtra style, hence it is likely that this class of literature may date back as early as c.500 B.C. The Gautama is probably the earliest: the Āpastamba is also early, perhaps c.400 B.C., and the Hiranyakeśin is closely related to it. The Vāsistha is somewhat later, perhaps c.300 B.C.; while the Vaikhānasa in its present form is unlikely to be earlier than around the 3rd century A.D.

### 5. Yāska, Śaunaka, and Kautilya.

Yāska is probably considerably earlier than Pāṇini, and the Nirukta is usually ascribed to around the 6th or 5th century B.C.

The Brhaddevatā is based considerably upon the Nirukta, and mentions Yāska: while it is probably earlier than Pāṇini, who mentions Śaunaka - and earlier again than Kātyāyana in the 3rd century B.C. Its composition may thus be ascribed to around the 5th or 4th century B.C.

The chronology of Trautman may be cited in the case of Kautilya:<sup>(34)</sup> parts of the Arthaśāstra may date from early Maurya times, c.300 B.C., but it would seem likely that considerable parts have been added to the work perhaps several centuries later, and in its present form it probably dates from the early centuries A.D.

### 6. Dharma Śāstras : approximate period c.200 B.C. - A.D. 500.

The chronology of Kane<sup>(35)</sup> is adopted in this instance. Manu is probably the oldest of the Dharma Śāstras, being formulated in its present form between c.200 B.C. and A.D. 200. Next is probably the Viṣṇu, dating in its present form to between c.A.D. 100 and 300: and the Yājñavalkya may also be ascribed to the same approximate period. The Nārada may be ascribed to between A.D. 100 and 400: while the Brhaspati is the latest of these texts, reaching its present form between c.A.D. 300 and 500.

---

(34) T.R. Trautman - Kautilya and the Arthaśāstra : Mysore 1958.

(35) P.V. Kane - A History of the Dharmaśāstra : Poona 1930-1962.  
(esp. vol.1).

7. Epics : approximate period c.300 B.C. - A.D. 300.

a) Rāmāyana: The original story of the Rāmāyana is likely to be of considerable antiquity. No mention is made, for example, of the city of Pātāliputra, even though Rāma is said to have passed by the very place where that city later stood: the capital of Kosala is invariably referred to as Ayodhyā, rather than Sāketa as in Buddhist, Jain and Greek sources and in Patañjali: and both Mithilā and Viśālā are spoken of as twin cities under separate rulers, whereas even in the time of the Buddha they had combined to form the city of Vaiśālī under a single ruler. Together with further indications, the original story of the Rāmāyana would thus seem likely to date from before c.500 B.C.

In its present form, books 1 and 7 are generally of later date than books 2-6. Frequent references in the Mahābhārata to both Valmiki and the Rāmāyana - including the quotation in the Drona Parvan of a passage from the Yuddha Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana - suggests that parts at least are of earlier date than such parts of the Mahābhārata. The Rāmopākhyāna in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata presupposes and in parts agrees verbatim with the Valmiki Rāmāyana - again suggesting dependence on the latter. Conversely, however, parts of the Mahābhārata would appear to preserve more archaic features of language than are found in the Rāmāyana. Pāṇini mentions Vāsudeva, Arjuna and Yudhiṣṭhira, but not Rāma - thus suggesting that the Mahābhārata story had at least a greater currency in the late centuries B.C. than the Rāmāyana story. The latter point would not, however, seem a conclusive indication that the Rāmāyana had not been formulated by the time of Pāṇini, as has been suggested by several writers: since the story itself was almost certainly current before the time of Pāṇini, and his silence on the subject cannot necessarily be taken as an indication of the lack of a definitive Rāmāyana story. In general terms, the composition in their present

form of books 2-6 may probably be placed substantially between c.250 B.C. and A.D. 50: while that of books 1 and 7 may be placed substantially between c.50 B.C. and A.D. 200.

- b) Mahābhārata: The original story of the Mahābhārata is again likely to be of considerable antiquity. The date of the war, which would seem likely to represent a basically historical struggle, is traditionally placed around 3137 or 2449 B.C.: while archaeological evidence would tend to suggest a date around the 11th or 10th century B.C. on the basis of the flooding at Hastināpura in the 9th century B.C. (see under R̥veda) which is said in the Epic to have occurred a few generations after the war itself. The Āśvalāyana Grhya Sūtra refers to the Bhārata and Mahābhārata as sacred works: while Patañjali refers to a Pāṇḍu epic, and Pāṇini to a Mahābhārata. Thus some form of Epic composition is likely to have been in existence by around the 4th century B.C., which was subsequently considerably added to and received its final form probably by the 4th century A.D. - and in any event not later than the early-6th century A.D., as indicated by the reference in the Khoh inscription of Śarvanātha of (Gupta) year 214 = A.D. 533 to the Epic as śatasahasrīyām samhitāgām,<sup>(36)</sup> thereby denoting that it had by this time attained the full length of the form in which it is now known.

The relative chronology of individual books and passages in the Mahābhārata within this period is complicated by the fact that a passage of manifestly late origin may be interpreted either as an interpolation within a book, or else as an indication that the book as a whole is of late origin: and in certain cases it is difficult to decide between the two interpretations. The Critical Edition produced by the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute is followed in the thesis as that most likely to represent a comprehensive form

(36) cf. CII vol.3 no.31; on dating, cf. Sircar - Select Inscriptions, book 3 no.49 p.390 note 1.

of the Mahābhārata common to each of the two main recensions of the text, as opposed to including interpolations found only in individual editions of the text. It is generally accepted that much of the material in books 1, 3, 12, and 13 represents a later addition to the text, in comparison with the material in the other books. Without at this stage entering upon a more detailed discussion of individual passages and books, it may be noted that further indications of the relative priority of individual passages may be discerned through an examination of the Saptarṣi traditions themselves: hence such indications will accordingly be referred to in the examination of such texts, particularly in Chapter 2.

---

8. Early Purāṇas : approximate period c.A.D. 100-550.

The term "early Purāṇas" is here intended to designate those Purāṇic texts whose date of composition is generally accepted by most writers as being substantially in or before the time of the end of the Gupta dynasty - that is to say, before approximately the middle of the 6th century A.D. The Harivamśa is for practical purposes here considered as a Purāṇic text: for although it may be considered either as a supplement to the Epic literature or as a Purāṇic text, it contains many features which in the present context connect it more closely with the latter literature - as for example through its accounts of the Saptarṣi Manvantara tradition, which are not found in the Epic texts and which occur only in the Purāṇic literature.

- a) Yuga Purāṇa: This text occupies a unique position among the early Purāṇic texts. Although it is extremely brief and lacks many of the features of the classical Mahāpurāṇas, nonetheless its name, content and antiquity lay claim to considerably more attention than has previously been given to it. The text, as collated in the edition of Mankad,<sup>(37)</sup> occupies only some 235 lines: and it appears as a chapter in a work variously called the Gārgī-saṁhitā, the Gārgī-jyotiṣa, or the Vṛddha-Garga-saṁhitā - its authorship thus being ascribed to the early astronomer Vṛddha Garga. The content of the Purāṇa is, as the name indicates, designed to give a description of the four Yugas: and in doing so, it admits of an historical interpretation which affords evidence of the likely date of the text. Since such a date is of importance both for establishing the date of Vṛddha Garga and also for determining the date for this stage in the development of the Yuga and Manvantara theories, it is of value to give an account of the content of the work,

---

(37) D.R. Mankad (ed) - Yugapurāṇam : Vallabhavidyanagar 1951.

particularly since it has been so little considered by previous writers.

After the accounts of the Kṛta, Treta and Dvāpara Yugas (lines 1-73), which contain similar details to those found in the Mahābhārata and elsewhere, the account of the Kali Yuga moves from Janamejaya Pārīksita to Udāyin Śiśunāga and the founding of Pāṭaliputra (lines 74-88): and then to the reign of Śālīśūka (lines 89-93) - who, according especially to the Viṣṇu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas, was a Maurya successor of Aśoka. It next describes a brief incursion of the Yavanas or Greeks to Sāketa, and refers to this time as being the advent of the end of the Kali Yuga (lines 94-115). Next comes an account of the reigns of Agniveśya kings, followed by the brief incursions of Śāka rulers who are defeated by peoples of the Deccan but leave the land desolate (lines 116-131). The account then returns to give details of the Agniveśya kings, and of the Śuṅga Agnimitra: this is followed by an account of their destruction at the hands of a Śātuvāra or Śātavāhana king, and then again by an incursion of the Śakas who plunder the land and leave it desolate before returning to their own land (lines 131-180). There next follows an account of a great famine and 12-year drought, particularly among the peoples of the river Śipra (near Ujjayinī), which finally heralds the end of the Kali Yuga (lines 181-199). The remainder of the work describes how men survive into the start of the new Kṛta Yuga, in 12 regions which extend from the Vindhya and Western Deccan into Southern India: where they establish new kings and sow the seeds of future prosperity (lines 200-233). The final two lines give the length of the Kalpa as 1,000 Yugas (lines 234-235).

On the basis of this summary of contents, it may be observed that the account clearly recalls the incursions of Greeks and Śakas, and the reign of the Śuṅga Agnimitra (c.2nd century B.C.). It also suggests the rise of a Śātavāhana king, who destroys the

---

Agniveśya (= Śuṅga?) successors of Agnimitra, which is followed by a brief incursion and plundering raid by Śakas who do not settle but return to their own land, and then by a great famine and 12-year drought which is interpreted by the author as the end of the Yuga. Bearing in mind particularly the Kālaka stories, which would seem to contain an accurate reminiscence of Śaka activity in Western India immediately prior to 58 B.C., the account may be interpreted as referring the end of the Kali Yuga to a period around the middle of the 1st century B.C.: a period which would be consistent with the apparently vivid and detailed reminiscences in the text of incursions of Greeks and Śakas during the 2nd and 1st centuries B.C. The account also omits any reference to a period of Śaka rule, as opposed to Śaka incursions: and states explicitly that the Śakas returned with their plunder to their own distant land (harisyanti śakāḥ kośam caturbhāgam svakam param - line 180). The work would thus appear to have been composed prior to the establishment of Śaka settlement and rule in Western India in the early- and mid-1st century A.D. Moreover, in referring to the rule of a Sātuvāra or Śātavāhana king who defeated the successors of Agnimitra, and by then depicting the continuation of life after the end of the Kali Yuga in the region of the Western Deccan and Southern India, the account would seem to refer to the early period of Śātavāhana rule. The almost visionary prophecy that prosperity would come to those living in such regions after the withdrawal of the Śakas and after the subsequent 12-year drought would again seem to indicate that the writer is referring to a time very shortly after c.50 B.C., during which the region of the Deccan and South India was witnessing the rise of new prosperity under the recently-established rule of the Śātavāhanas. It would therefore seem likely that this account in the Yuga Purāṇa was composed during the latter part of the 1st

---



century B.C.: and accordingly, since its composition is ascribed to Vṛddha Garga, the date of this writer may also be placed on this basis in the latter part of the 1st century B.C.

- b) Harivamśa: The Critical Edition produced by the Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute is followed in the thesis. It may be inferred in general terms that this postdates certainly the earlier parts of the Mahābhārata, and probably also many of the later parts of that work: while it is likely to be earlier than or contemporary with the other early Purāṇic texts. Further indications of the relative chronological relationship of these texts are discernible within the Saptarṣi traditions in the texts: thus for example the Manvantara accounts, which do not appear in the Mahābhārata, are presented only in part in the Harivamśa (as also in the Matsya Purāṇa), and appear in a greatly developed form in the other early Purāṇic texts (see Chapter 4). Such indications will accordingly be referred to in the examination of such traditions in the thesis. The date of composition of the Harivamśa text as given in the B.O.R.I. edition may be placed in approximate terms within the period between c.A.D. 150 and 300.
- c) Matsya Purāṇa: Frequently considered as the earliest Purāṇa. In respect of the Saptarṣi traditions in the text, certain sections demand an early date relative to the other texts: thus for example the Manvantara lists of Saptarṣis agree most closely with those of the Harivamśa (see Chapter 4), suggesting a close association between the two texts on this topic. Certain further lists of Rṣis in the Matsya are otherwise found only in the Mānava Dharma Śāstra (cf. 3.5-8, 102.19 and Manu 1.34-35: see Chapter 2): thus suggesting a date prior to c.A.D. 200 for such sections. Other indications of relative chronology in respect of the Saptarṣi traditions will be noted in the thesis. It is noteworthy that no mention is made

in any of the 20 Editions and Manuscripts surveyed by Pargiter<sup>(38)</sup> to the Guptas among the lists of royal dynasties, as occurs in all of the other early Purāṇas which contain such lists. The approximate period of composition may be given as between c.A.D. 100 and 300.

- d) Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas: These two texts frequently agree with each other verbatim, while also containing a minority of passages specific to each: and they may thus be said to share a common date of composition, and probably a common prototype - with the possibility that one has been largely copied from the other. The lengthy Lalitopākhyānam in the Brahmāṇḍa is, however, of considerably later date: and is accordingly not considered in the thesis. The Manvantara lists of Saptarṣis are evidently of later date than those in the Harivaṃśa and the Matsya Purāṇa, particularly through the consistent addition of Gotra names (see Chapter 4); also, the Guptas are mentioned among the royal dynasties, while on the other hand a text of the Vāyu is referred to by Bana in the Harṣacarita (c.A.D. 650). The approximate period of composition may be given as between c.A.D. 200 and 400.
- e) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa: The Manvantara list of Saptarṣis in this text agrees most closely with that of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa (see Chapter 4). Certain lists of Ṛsis which are included in all the other early Purāṇas are omitted from the Mārkaṇḍeya (see Chapter 2): and no accounts are given of royal dynasties or of the Saptarṣi Yuga. Certain other lists of Ṛsis which are included in the Mārkaṇḍeya, Vāyu, Brahmāṇḍa and Viṣṇu Purāṇas are omitted from the Matsya: hence such omissions might perhaps be interpreted as an indication of early date. The approximate period of composition may be given as between c.A.D. 100 and 500.

---

(38) cf. F.E. Pargiter - Dynasties of the Kali Age : Oxford 1913.

- f) Viṣṇu Purāṇa: This text is generally taken to be later than the others, and is closest in form to the classical definition of a Purāṇa. It gives a different account of the Saptarṣi Yuga from that in the Matsya, Vāyu and Brahmandā Purāṇas (see Chapter 5): and it gives only a summary account of royal genealogies which Pargiter has termed a condensed redaction of the accounts in the other Purāṇas. Other sections would however seem to be of relatively early date: as for example several of the lists of Ṛsis (see Chapter 2). The approximate period of composition may be given as between c.A.D. 250 and 500.
- g) General: The sections in the Matsya, Vāyu, Brahmandā and Viṣṇu Purāṇas relating to the Saptarṣi Yuga presuppose the end of the Andhra dynasty in A.D. 238, and may most probably be ascribed in composition to the latter part of the 3rd century A.D. (see Chapter 5). In respect of the remaining 13 Mahāpurāṇas, these may almost certainly be said to date substantially from a later period, sometimes considerably so: the bulk of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, for example, may most probably be ascribed to around the 9th or 10th century A.D., although since this is the only other Mahāpurāṇa to contain a detailed account of the Saptarṣi Yuga - which is largely copied from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa - reference has accordingly been made to such sections of this work in Chapter 5. The remaining Mahāpurāṇas may in all probability be ascribed in composition to between the 7th and 11th centuries A.D.: and these have accordingly not been taken into account in the thesis.

### 9. Astronomers.

- a) Vedāṅga-Jyotiṣa: This work may most probably be ascribed to the 3rd or 2nd century B.C. Commentators on the work cite the opinions of Vṛddha Garga: and it would seem likely that the work is earlier than Garga himself, since otherwise some reference to such an authority as Garga might have been expected within the text, rather than in elucidation of the text
- b) Vṛddha Garga: Considerably earlier than Varāhamihira, who regards him as an ancient authority. On the basis of his identity as the author of the Gārgī-jyotiṣa or Vṛddha-Garga-saṃhitā (see under Yuga Purāṇa), he may be ascribed to the latter part of the 1st century B.C.
- c) Sūrya Siddhānta: Referred to by Vṛddha Garga as one of the five great Siddhāntas - the other four being no longer extant in anything resembling their original form. It is probably earlier than Parāśara, and probably dates originally from between the 1st and 3rd centuries A.D.: although subsequent interpolations have been made to the text, possibly by Lāṭā around A.D. 500.
- d) Parāśara and Āryabhata: Āryabhata cites Parāśara as an authority, hence Parāśara may be placed perhaps between the 2nd and 4th centuries A.D. Āryabhata was born in Śaka 398 or A.D. 476: and he dates his own work the Āryabhaṭīya in Śaka 421 or A.D. 499.
- e) Varāhamihira: According to one somewhat questionable tradition, Varāhamihira died in Śaka 509 or A.D. 587.<sup>(39)</sup> He bases his own calculations on the year Śaka 427 or A.D. 505, and he also makes reference to Āryabhata. He may accordingly be said to have flourished probably during the first half of the 6th century A.D.

---

(39) cf. S.B. Dikshit - Bhāratīya Jyotiḥ Śāstra, p.211.

10. Bhāsa, Śūdraka, Vātsyāyana, and Kālidāsa.

The chronology of Keith<sup>(40)</sup> is adopted in this instance.

Bhāsa is almost certainly earlier than Kālidāsa - assuming his identity as the author of the plays ascribed to him; and he is probably later than Aśvaghōṣa in the 1st century A.D. He may thus most probably be ascribed to the 2nd or 3rd century A.D.

The Mṛcchakatika ascribed to Śūdraka is probably of later date than the plays of Bhāsa, and earlier than Kālidāsa: and it may thus be ascribed to between the 3rd and 4th centuries A.D.

The Kāma Sūtra of Vātsyāyana mentions the Vākāṭaka city of Vatsagulma, which was probably not of importance or note until the mid-4th century A.D.: while on the other hand Varāhamihira would appear to have made use of parts of the work in his Brhatsamhitā, and Kālidāsa is acquainted with a work of this nature. The date of Vātsyāyana may thus probably be placed between the 4th and the 6th centuries A.D.

The arguments of Keith and others ascribing Kālidāsa to approximately A.D. 400 are accepted in the present context.

---

(40) cf. A.B. Keith - History of Sanskrit Literature : rep. Delhi 1973.

(c) Textual Citations.

Extensive textual citations are made throughout the course of the thesis. These are taken from the editions referred to in Bibliography I, unless otherwise stated; and the following points should also be noted. In the case of citations from the Rāmāyana, from the Mahābhārata, and from the Harivaṃśa, the Critical Editions of these texts are accepted as basic guides to a composite text of these works: and passages relegated to the Appendices of these Editions are not cited in the thesis. Similarly, śloka-citations from these works refer in all cases to the Critical Editions of the texts. In the case of citations of passages common to several works -- as occurs particularly in the case of passages from the early Purāṇic literature -- the form cited is generally that given in the text of the first work which is referred to in the footnotes, as is also the form of śloka-division. Minor differences occur in some cases between parallel passages cited from different Purāṇic texts: and where marked differences occur between such texts, the relevant passages in each of the texts are cited separately.

It may also be noted that the forms santa xai and santarsi are both encountered in the texts: the former primarily in Vedic texts, the latter primarily in Epic and Purāṇic texts. The forms cited in quotations are those which occur in the editions referred to in Bibliography I; while in the main text of the thesis, the classical form Septarsi is consistently used.

## CHAPTER 1 : Early Traditions of the Saptarsi Group.

### Section 1 : Introduction.

One of the first and most important questions to be dealt with in discussing the Saptarsi group is the question of the identity of the Saptarsis: that is to say, the question of which Rsis are actually included within the group of seven, and of how consistent these groupings remain between the various texts which are to be examined.

It may in general terms be said that there exist two main lists or enumerations of the Saptarsi group: only one of which appears in what may for practical purposes be termed the earlier literature. The terms "earlier literature" and "early traditions" as they are being used in this context are intended to denote primarily such traditions as occur within literary texts whose date of composition may be said to precede that of the Epics and Purāṇas, in accordance with the general chronology of textual material outlined in the Introduction. The other main list of the Saptarsi group occurs only in the Epic and Purāṇic texts, and in further literature contemporary with those texts. In addition to these two main lists, there also occur a number of more general lists of Rsis which include most or all of the Rsis in the two main lists: as for example in the various lists of Prajāpatīs and Mind-born Sons of Brahṃā, which occur primarily in the Epic and subsequent texts. A further development is to be found in the Purāṇic texts, which contain lists of Saptarsis for each of the fourteen Manvantaras. Each of these various lists or enumerations will be examined separately in the following Chapters, together with further traditions of the Saptarsi group, in order to illustrate how the actual identity of the Saptarsis alters and develops between the various texts and groups of texts.

---

Section 2 : Enumerations of the Saptarsi Group.

In view of the fact that enumerations of the Saptarsi group are given explicitly only from the Sūtra texts onwards, the following account in this section will first deal with the Sūtra texts, and will then trace the earlier references to the group and its members back through the Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic texts to the Vedic Samhitās.

(a) The Sūtra texts.

Although it is not until the Sūtra texts that an enumeration of Rsis is given who are explicitly said to constitute the Saptarsi group, nevertheless in these texts the members of the group appear to constitute a well-defined and ordered list -- particularly in connection with the Gotra organisation. Thus for example several of the Śrauta Sūtra texts, in the sections on gotra and pravara, relate that the Saptarsis are Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa -- together with Agastya as the eighth:

"viśvāmitro jamadagnir bharadvājo 'tha gotamaḥ  
atrir vasisthaḥ kaśyapa ity ete sapta ṛsayah |

....

saptanām ṛṣīṇāṃ agastyāstamanāṃ yad apatyam tad gotram ity ācakṣate"

(1)

The appearance in these lists of Agastya as the eighth Rsi occurs in several further contexts. A similar list of the Saptarsis is to be found in the Hiraṇyakeśin Grhya Sūtra:

"viśvāmitro jamadagnir bharadvājo 'tha gautamaḥ |  
atrir vasisthaḥ kaśyapaḥ ||  
ity ete saptarsayah" ||

The passage thereafter gives instructions for setting up seats of darbha-grass for the Saptarsis and for Arundhatī (the wife of Vasistha) towards the north, and also for Agastya towards the south:

(1) e.g. pariśiṣṭabhāgaḥ to 12.15 of the Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra: pravara-praśna line 54 of the Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra: etc.

(2) Hiraṇyakeśin Grhya Sūtra 2.8.19.2-7.



"nivītina uttarata udīcīnapravane udagagrair darbhaih  
 prāgapavargāny āsanāni kalpayanti .... |  
 vasisthakaśyapayor antarāle 'rundhatyai kalpayanti |  
 daksinatch prācīnapravane 'gastyāya" |

The regional association of R̥sis suggested in this passage is a topic which will be pursued in Chapter 3. In the present context it may be noted that, in listing the members of the Saptarsi group - and in actually calling them the Saptarsis - such Sūtra texts enumerate the Saptarsis as Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa: together with the addition of Agastya as the eighth R̥si.

It becomes necessary at this point to make one important qualification in respect of the lists which are found in the Śrauta Sūtra texts in connection with the Gotra and Pravara organisations. The passage quoted above from various Śrauta Sūtra texts is unequivocal in stating the identities of the Saptarsis to be as listed above. In practice, however, when dealing with each of the individual Gotras and Pravaras, these Śrauta Sūtra texts invariably subordinate the Jāmadagnyas to the Bhrgus or Dhārgavas, and subordinate the Gautamas and the Bhāradvājas to the Āṅgirasas. Thus the Bhrgus are always subdivided into the Jāmadagnya-Bhrgus and the Kevala-Bhrgus ("just Bhrgus", "Bhrgus by themselves"): while similarly the Āṅgirasas are subdivided into Gautama-Āṅgirasas, Bhāradvāja-Āṅgirasas, and Kevala-Āṅgirasas. Hence the resulting list of R̥si-Gotras and Pravaras is indeed seven in number: yet the seven R̥si-founders are now listed as Bhrgu, Āṅgiras, Atri, Viśvāmitra, Vasistha, Kaśyapa, and Agastya.<sup>(3)</sup> It should however be noted that these seven are never referred to in the Sūtra texts as the Saptarsis: and indeed, both these and also much later texts such as the Gotra-pravara-mañjarī explicitly state the identities of the Saptarsis to be as quoted above - the latter

(3) e.g. Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra 12.1-15 & Apastamba Śrauta Sūtra 24.5-10 : Mānava Śrauta Sūtra 11.8.1-9 : etc. (see Chapter 3 for further details).

text also stating that Bhṛgu and Āṅgiras do not belong to the Saptar̥sis.<sup>(4)</sup> The question of this variant list of R̥sis given in the gotra and pravara sections of the Śrauta Sūtras is one which will be examined in detail in chapter 3. It may however be noted here that the subordination of the R̥sis Jamadagni, Bharadvāja and Gotama to the R̥sis Bhṛgu and Āṅgiras represents an incipient trend to bring the R̥sis Bhṛgu and Āṅgiras - as also Agastya - into closer connection with the Saptar̥si group: a trend which is to be found in a greatly developed form in the Epic and Purāṇic texts.

In the present context it may thus be observed that the Sūtra texts recognise one main list of R̥sis who are called the Saptar̥sis, which consists of the R̥sis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa: while these texts also append Agastya to the group, terming him the eighth R̥si, and thus giving him the status of an outsider to this group of seven R̥sis.

---

(4) e.g. Gotra-pravara-mañjarī 1.11-12 : 10.131-132.

(b) The Brāhmaṇa and Upanisadic texts.

While the Sūtra texts make explicit the dual statements both that there are seven Ṛsis and also who are those seven Ṛsis, the preceding texts frequently make reference either to the Saptarṣis as a group or to the individual members of the Saptarṣi group, without explicitly connecting the two.

The Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa for example contains a list of Ṛsis who strove to attain Svargaloka or "the world of heaven". The Ṛsis listed in this context are, in order of reference, Vasistha, Bharadvāja, Jamadagni, Gotama, Atri, and Viśvāmitra: and then, in addition to these six, also Agastya who went last of all to Svargaloka after uttering a hymn:

"tad u vāvāgastyah paścevanububudha ṛsayo ha vā ime prajā asmil  
loke vidhāya svargam lokam agman iti so 'kāmayatāham api prajā  
asmil loke vidhāya svargam lokam anugaccheyam iti .... sa etam  
sodaśam stomam apaśyat tam āharat .... svargam lokam anvagacchat" (5)

It will be noted that in this passage Kaśyapa is omitted from the otherwise standard list of Saptarṣis as found in the Sūtra texts: while Agastya appears to be included in the group of seven, yet only just - for the text makes it plain that he went last of all behind the other Ṛsis, and uses this as justification for saying that for this reason the Agastis are outside the Kuru-Pañcālas:

"tasmād v agastayo bahirdheva kurupañcālebhyah" |

The Gopatha Brāhmaṇa - a relatively late Brāhmaṇa text - gives a list of Ṛsis who perform tapas: these Ṛsis being enumerated as Vasistha, Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Gautama, Bharadvāja, Guṅgu, Agastya, and Kaśyapa. (6) The Guṅgu mentioned in this context appears once also in the Rgveda in plural form, denoting the name of a certain tribe of people. (7) Yet in this Brāhmaṇa passage it would seem more

(5) Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa 2.218-221.

(6) Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.2.8.

(7) Rgveda 10.48.3.

likely that "Guṅgu" may be taken as an alternative designation -- or perhaps less likely as a replacement -- of the Ṛṣi Atri: since the list would then read as yet another enumeration of what was then becoming the standard group of Saptarṣis, together with Agastya as the eighth Ṛṣi.

One further passage is of considerable interest inasmuch as it highlights what would appear to represent, in this group of earlier texts, a list of the Saptarṣi group in a form which suggests that the actual Ṛṣi-members of this group had not yet been fully constituted in the period of the composition of the Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic texts. The passage occurs in the final section of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which constitutes the Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad. (8) It commences by quoting a verse from the Atharvaveda: although the actual form of the original passage has been slightly altered by the later text. The Atharvaveda verse relates that there is a cup with its opening at the side and with its bottom turned upwards, in which is placed the glory of all forms, and where are seated the Saptarṣis who have become its keepers:

"tiryaḡbīlaś camasa ūrdhva-budhnaś tasmin yaśo nihitam viśvarūpam |  
tad āsata ṛṣayaḥ sapta sākam ye asya gopā mahato babhūvuh" || (9)

The later text makes explicit the connection between the Saptarṣis and the seven Prāṇas within the head (see next section), while adding in addition Voice as the eighth: a situation which calls to mind other Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra references to lists of the Saptarṣi group with Agastya as the eighth. Yet this Upaniṣadic passage next continues by enumerating each of these Ṛṣis, in a manner which can only be described as self-contradictory and confused. The passage would seem to be intended as a visual and tactual exposition of the Saptarṣis as the Prāṇas, as demonstrated by the teacher to his pupil:

(8) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 14.5.2.6 = Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad 2.2.3-4.

(9) Atharvaveda 10.8.9.

"tad eṣa śloko bhavati arvāgbilāś cemaśa ūrdhvaḥ budhmas tasmīn  
 yaśo nihitam viśvarūpaṃ tasyāsata ṛṣayah sapta tīre vāg aṣṭamī  
 brāhmaṇā samvidānety .... idam tac chireḥ .... prāṇo vā ṛṣayah  
 .... || imāv eva gotamabharadvājāv ayam eva gotamo 'yaṃ bharadvāja  
 imāv eva viśvāmitrajamadagnī ayam eva viśvāmitro 'yaṃ jamadagnir  
 imāv eva vasiṣṭhakaśyapāv ayam eva vasiṣṭho 'yaṃ kaśyapo vāg  
 evātrir vacā hy annam adyate 'ttir ha vai nāmaitad yad atrir iti" || (10)

It can readily be seen that, although the passage commences by saying that there are seven Ṛsis and that Voice is the eighth, nevertheless in practice Voice is here accounted the seventh while the eighth appears to be missing. It may be supposed that the text has been subsequently altered and reworked by a later commentator, so that the list of Ṛsis now includes Atri - as the Voice - among the seven, thus bringing this list of seven Ṛsis in line with the standard enumeration as given in the Sūtra and other texts. It may further be inferred that this has taken place at the expense of Agastya, who by the Sūtras has come to be termed the eighth Ṛsi, and who - as in the passage referred to above from the Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa - is deemed even in the Brāhmaṇa texts to be something of an outsider to the other group of Ṛsis who come to constitute the Saptarṣi group.

It may therefore be suggested in general terms that the actual composition of membership of the Saptarṣi group was still in the process of formulation during the period covered by the Brāhmaṇa texts: and that it reached its more or less standardised form only during the period of the Sūtra texts, as evidenced by the extant references and textual material.

20.

(c) The Vedic Samhitās.

While the actual composition of individual membership of the Saptar̥ṣi group was well in the process of formulation in the Brāhmaṇa texts, it would seem that the individual identity of each of the members of the Saptar̥ṣi group remained largely unformulated -- and was certainly largely unexpressed -- by the composers of the Vedic hymns and texts. That is not to say that the group itself was unknown during this early period: on the contrary, there occur many references to the Saptar̥ṣi group throughout the Vedic Samhitās which will be examined in this and the following sections. But it is to say that the individual members of the Saptar̥ṣi group were neither fully specified nor fully enumerated in the Vedic Samhitās.

The Vedic hymns do, however, on occasions provide a prototype which is then expanded upon in later texts to give an enumeration of the Saptar̥ṣi group. One such example of this has already been noted in the case of a passage in the Atharvaveda, which speaks of the Saptar̥ṣis as sitting on the edges of a bowl (the head) of which they are the keepers ( the Prānas). As has been noted, the Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad adds a supplement to this verse, and then gives an enumeration of each of the Saptar̥ṣis. (11)

One passage in a R̥gvedic hymn -- which appears also in the Atharvaveda -- may similarly be seen to act as a prototype for several of the traditions of the Saptar̥ṣi group: even though it does not mention any of the R̥ṣis individually by name. The passage declares that, of the R̥ṣis who were born together, six are called twins and God-born R̥ṣis, while the seventh is said to be born alone:

"sākamjānām̐ septatham̐ āhur̐ ekajam̐ saṁ idyamā̐ r̥ṣayo devajā̐ iti" | (12)

The variant form of this verse in the Atharvaveda contains similar information, relating that six are twins and one born alone:

(11) Atharvaveda 10.8.9 : Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad 2.2.3-4.

(12) R̥gveda 1.164.15 : Atharvaveda 9.9.16.

"idaṃ savitar vijānīhi sad yama eka ekajaḥ" | (13)

In a further R̥gvedic hymn, Viśvāmitra is moreover referred to as being one who is devaja:

"mahā<sup>u</sup> ṛsir devajā devajūto 'stabhnāt sindhum arṇavam nṛcakṣāḥ |  
viśvāmitro yad avahat sudāsam apriyāyata kuśikebhīr indrah" || (14)

Hence within the R̥gveda itself it is said that, of the seven Ṛsis who were born together, six are devaja -- and one of them is Viśvāmitra. In this respect it might be suggested that the inclusion of Viśvāmitra within the Saptar̥si group is already implied in this R̥gvedic passage.

The idea of six Ṛsis as twins and one as born alone may be seen to apply to the Saptar̥si group in two separate ways. One the one hand, the idea may be seen to be expressed through the concept of the Saptar̥sis as the Prāṇas in the body. As has already been seen, the enumeration in the Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad of the Saptar̥sis as the Prāṇas speaks in terms of six Ṛsis who are paired together: namely Gotama and Bharadvāja, Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni, Vasistha and Kaśyapa: and it then speaks of one Ṛsi as being a "loner", identifying this Ṛsi with the Voice and with Atri. Thus, as applied to the concept of the Saptar̥sis as the Prāṇas, "six twins and one loner" may be interpreted as the two ears, the two eyes, the two nostrils, and the mouth or voice.

On the other hand, the idea may be seen to be expressed through the concept of the Saptar̥sis as stars in the sky, namely as the constellation Ursa Major (see next section, and chapter 5). The stars of Ursa Major may be divided latitudinally into three pair-groups: namely Dubhe and Megrez ( $\alpha$  and  $\delta$ ), Merak and Phedka ( $\beta$  and  $\gamma$ ), Mizar and Alkaid ( $\zeta$  and  $\eta$ ): thus leaving Alioth ( $\epsilon$ ) as a lone or unpaired star. Since the above quotation from the R̥gveda continues by saying that "he who has eyes sees this -- not he

(13) Atharvaveda 10.8.5.

(14) R̥gveda 3.53.9.

who is blind" (paśyad aksanvān na vi cetad andhaḥ - see discussion in chapter 5 section 1), it would accordingly seem likely that some such visual observation is primarily intended by this passage: hence that the reference is primarily directed towards the Saptar̥sis in the sky. It may be noted that the star ε Ursa Major - the unpaired star - is the fifth of these seven stars: while the R̥gvedic passage speaks of the seventh as being the unpaired R̥si. But it may be suggested that the term santatham refers primarily not to the seventh in order of enumeration, but rather to the seventh in the sense of the one which is beyond the six paired ones: thus the expression "six are twins, the seventh is born alone" overcomes the ambiguity inherent in saying "six are twins, the fifth is born alone", while also conveying the information that there is a total of seven R̥sis to which reference is being made. Similarly the variant form of the verse in the Atharvaveda omits the term santatham, saying merely that six are twins and one born alone: and it may be inferred that this has been done once again in order to overcome a possible misunderstanding or misinterpretation of the term saptatham as designating the seventh in order of enumeration, rather than the seventh in the sense of being beyond or set apart from the other six "twins".

It may accordingly be inferred that the eka ekajah corresponds in one respect - with reference to the Saptar̥sis in the sky - to the "lone" or unpaired star ε Ursa Major. It will be noted that this star is the fifth in order of enumeration of the stars of Ursa Major: and it may thus be said to correspond to the fifth R̥si in order of enumeration of the Saptar̥si group. As has been seen in the examination of the Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra texts, the standard enumerations of the Saptar̥si group in those texts list the R̥si Atri as the fifth in order of enumeration. Hence it may be concluded that the santatham ekajam or eka ekajah is here to be taken as the

---



R̥si Atri, both in respect of the Saptars̥is in the body (as the Prānas) and also in respect of the Saptars̥is in the sky. Thus once again the above passages in the R̥g and AtharvaVedas may be seen to provide a model or prototype for the Saptars̥i group, while not yet providing individual identifications of each of the R̥sis who compose that group: and that the Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra texts provide such individual identifications which are fully and consistently in accord with the Vedic passages referring to the group as a whole. Hence, while the Vedic texts consider one of the Saptars̥is to be a loner or born alone, such references are taken to apply to the mouth (in the body) and to the fifth star of Ursa Major (in the sky), and are accordingly applied in subsequent texts to the R̥si Atri, who becomes the fifth R̥si in the enumeration of the group of seven.

In the cases of all of the above passages, it may be inferred that while the Saptars̥i group was well-known during Vedic times - as stars in the sky, as the Prānas in the body, as speakers of R̥ks and as the Pitr̥s of the Ārya peoples (see next section) - nevertheless the individual identities of the members of that group were not yet fully formulated in the Vedic Samhitās, and became expressed and firmly established only from the Brāhmaṇa texts onwards.

---

Section 3 : Further Designations of the Saptarsi Group.

(a) Vipras.

The Saptarsi group, and the individual members of that group, are referred to from the R̥gveda onwards by a number of different terms, in addition to the term R̥si. One of these terms is Vipra: a word derived from the root vip meaning to tremble, shake or vibrate, whose meaning may thus be associated with the idea of being inwardly excited or inspired - the noun therefore corresponding in meaning to a seer, a sage or a shaman.

Since the term Vipra is associated with the idea of inward movement and inspiration, it is not surprising to find the seven Vipras being referred to in connection with the inspiration of the Soma cult and with singing the praises of Indra and other Gods. One R̥gvedic hymn speaks of the seven R̥sis or Vipras as having approached king Soma as he sits on the sacrificial camus-vessels:

"sīdan hotava sadane cam̐sūpem agman r̥sayah̐ sapta viprāḥ" || (15)

The seven Vipras are similarly urged to hasten to the sacrifice:

"vīlau satir̐ abhi dhīrā at̐r̐ndan̐ pr̐cāhinvan̐ manasā sapta viprāḥ" || (16)

Elsewhere the seven Vipras are said to have sung the praises of Indra, and to have thereby invigorated him:

"tan u nah̐ pūrve pitaro navagvāḥ sapta viprāso abhi vājeyantah̐" | (17)

"sa sustubhā sa stubhā sapta viprah̐ svarenādrim̐ svaryo navagvaih̐ |  
saranyubhiḥ phaligam̐ indra śakra valan̐ ravena d̐areyo d̐asagvaih̐" || (18)

One hymn speaks of the seven Vipras as holding dear the path laid down for the bird, and as going to the east for their pleasure:

"adhvaryubhiḥ pañcabhiḥ sapta viprāḥ priyam̐ rakṣante nihitam̐ padam̐ voh̐ |  
pr̐anco madanty̐ ukṣano ajuryā devā devānām̐ anu hi vrataḥ̐ guh̐" || (19)

(15) R̥gveda 9.92.3.

(18) R̥gveda 1.62.4.

(16) R̥gveda 3.31.5.

(19) R̥gveda 3.7.7.

(17) R̥gveda 6.22.2.

The "bird" in this passage might be taken to refer to Agni, to whom the hymn as a whole is addressed: while the reference to the seven Vipras as travelling to the east for their enjoyment might be interpreted as the eastwards motion of the Saptarṣis in the sky towards their wives the Kṛttikās, who are said to belong to Agni (20) (see further on this and on the designation uksena in the following sub-section and in chapters 3 and 5).

A further hymn speaks of the seven Vipras as being born from mother Usas or dawn as the first virtuous or creative ones (vedhas):

"adha mātur usasah sapta viprā jāyemahi prathamā vedhaso nṛṇ" | (21)

Other contexts speak of individual Rsis as Vipras. Thus for example it is related in one hymn that the Aśvins came to the help of the Vipra Bharadvāja:

"yābhir vipraṃ pra bharadvājam āvataṃ tābhir ū su ūtibhir aśvinā gataṃ" || (22)

The term Vipra is similarly applied to the Saptarṣi group, and more especially to the individual members of that group, throughout the subsequent literature: and in many contexts the two terms Rsi and Vipra would appear to alternate indiscriminately. Similarly the terms Viprarṣi and Brahmarṣi would appear to be interchangeable and synonymous in the subsequent literature, and particularly in the Epic texts. Thus for example Viśvāmitra is usually spoken of as attaining the status of a Brahmarṣi or of a Brāhmaṇa: but he is also said to have attained Vipratvam:

"divyaṃ varṣasahasraṃ hi viśvāmitrena dhīmatā |  
ksāntam ekena bhaktena tena vipratvam āgataḥ" || (23)

So too in the Mahābhārata Bharadvāja is said in one passage to be a Tapasvin, but to have gained knowledge of the Vedas through the tanus of his son Yavakṛita - whereafter he is no longer despised by the

(20) cf. e.g. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 2.1.2.1-5.

(21) Rgveda 4.2.15.

(22) Rgveda 1.112.13.

(23) Mahābhārata 13.109.65.

Vipras:

"yavakriṇḥ pitaraṃ dr̥stvā tapasvinam asatkṛtaṃ |  
dr̥stvā ca satkṛtaṃ viprai raibhyaṃ putraiḥ sahānagha" || (24)

The myth equates the status of a Vipra with that of a Brahmin, both of which are said to rely upon knowledge of the Vedas. The story itself would seem to be somewhat in contrast to the earlier Vedic passages which speak of Bharadvāja as being a Vipra: similarly to further passages in the Epic literature which speak of Bharedvāja as being a Viprarsi, as for example in the following:

"bharadvājasya viprarseḥ skannam reto mahātmanah |  
dr̥stvāpsarasam āyāntīm ghr̥tācīm pr̥thulocanām" || (25)

The term Vipra is similarly applied in the later literature to other members of the Saptarsi group - as for example to Atri:

"etaḍ dadāni te vipra sarvajñas tvam hi me mataḥ ||  
etaḍ atrir nyāyataḥ sarvaṃ pratigrhya mahāmanah" || (26)

A similar interchange of the terms Vipra, R̥si and Brāhmaṇa may be seen especially in the myths of both Vasistha<sup>(27)</sup> and Viśvāmitra.<sup>(28)</sup>

It may be inferred that, by the later texts, these three terms had become so interchangeable as to be virtually synonymous with one another: and that the term Vipra, which in the R̥gveda retains its essential meaning of inward movement and inspiration, has by the later texts come to be synonymous with knowledge of the Vedas.

(24) Mahābhārata 3.135.15.

(25) Mahābhārata 9.47.57.

(26) Mahābhārata 3.183.30-31.

(27) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.167.1-21: 1.168.1-25.

(28) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.17.30ff.

(b) Rksas.

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa contains a passage which relates that the seven Ṛsis were in former times called Rksas. The passage clearly indicates that it is the Saptarṣis in the sky to whom reference is being made: since it also speaks of the Saptarṣis as rising in the north, while the Kṛttikās - their wives - rise in the east:

"kṛttikāsv agnī ādadhīta | etā vā agninaḥsatram .... ||  
 etā ha vai prācyai diśo na cyavante | sarvāni ha vā anyāni  
 nakṣatrāṇi prācyai diśaś cyavante .... ||  
 rksāṇām ha vā etā agre patnya āsuh saptarṣīn u ha sma vai purā  
 rksā ity ācakṣate tā mithunena vyārdhyantāmī hy uttarāhi  
 saptarṣaya udyanti pura etā" || (29)

Similarly a reference in a Rgvedic hymn may also be interpreted as referring to the Saptarṣis in the sky, through mention of the Rksas in the sky which are seen by night but disappear somewhere else by day:

"amī ya rksā nihitāsa uccā naktam dadṛśre kuha cid diveyuh" | (30)

These two passages raise two separate but closely related topics: namely on the one hand the connection between the Ṛsis and the Rksas, and on the other hand the more general idea of the Saptarṣis as stars in the sky. The first of these topics will be examined in the present context, while the second will be pursued in a separate chapter (chapter 5).

The passage just quoted from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa implies that the Saptarṣis in the sky were referred to as the seven Rksas at a period prior to the composition of this text, through the use of the term purā (formerly, previously, in former times). The term Rksa is generally taken to denote a bear: and in later times it also has the general meaning of a star or shining object, as is to be

(29) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 2.1.2.1-5.

(30) Rgveda 1.24.10.

found more especially in the Epic and Purāṇic texts.<sup>(31)</sup> The latter meaning may be taken as a secondary or derivative meaning, arising through the association of this term with the stars of the Saptarsi constellation, namely Ursa Major or the Great Bear.

Since the idea of the Saptarsi constellation as a bear, or as seven bears, is one which is not limited to India, reference may here be made to certain extra-Indian ideas of the constellation. The idea of the constellation as a bear occurs in Greek sources: thus Homer for example refers to it as ὁ ἄρκτος (the bear), while also using the term ἡ ἅμαξα (the chariot or wain) as a name of the constellation:

" Ἀρκτον θ' ἦν καὶ Ἄμαξαν ἐπέκλησιν καλέουσιν " (32)

The term ἅμαξα or chariot would seem to have been assimilated from Babylonian usage, where the constellation was known as MAR.GID.DA meaning the wagon or chariot:<sup>(33)</sup> and such later writers as Democritus,<sup>(34)</sup> in describing the Babylonian system of astronomy, notice this possible origin of the Greek concept. In explanation of the term ἄρκτος or bear there is related - for example by Hyginus and Apollodorus - the myth of Callisto, one of the companions of Artemis. When Zeus one day seduced Callisto, Artemis noticed that she was with child, and in jealousy turned her into a bear and set a pack of hounds upon her: Callisto would have been hunted to death (and in some versions she is killed), but Zeus took her up into the sky and set her image among the stars.<sup>(35)</sup> In Roman astronomy Callisto was accordingly known as the Ursa Major or Great Bear, and the above myth was further related by such writers as Ovid.<sup>(36)</sup>

(31) e.g. Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.23.52: 1.2.24.91-92: 1.2.24.131: etc.

(32) cf. Homer - Iliad 18.487; Odyssey 5.273.

(33) cf. F.X. Kugler - Sternkunde und Sterndienst in Babel, book 2 pp.249-251.

(34) Democritus - Vitruvius 9.4.1 - 9.5.3.

(35) cf. Hyginus - Poetica Astronomica 2.1 : Apollodorus - Bibliotheca 3.8.2 : R. Graves - The Greek Myths, vol.1 section 22.

(36) e.g. Ovid - Metamorphoses 2.450ff.

The idea of this constellation as a bear is again to be found among many Finno-Ugrian, Central Asian, Siberian, and North American Indian tribes and peoples.<sup>(37)</sup> Some view the constellation as a bear: others conceive of four of the stars as a bear, and the other three stars as hunters in pursuit of the bear: while others again see it as seven wolves - an idea comparable to the Western Aryan notion of *λυκος* or Wolf as a name of the constellation (see below).

It is of interest to note here that among many peoples in both Asia and North America the bear is regarded as a sacred animal, and is closely connected with the phenomenon of Shamanism. Thus for example among many North American Indian tribes every natural object is deemed to possess its own inua or "indweller", that of the bear being especially potent: and if the inua of a bear becomes the tornak or "helper" of a man, then the man is symbolically eaten by the bear and vomited up again - whereupon he becomes an Angakok or Shaman.<sup>(38)</sup> This close connection between the bear and the phenomenon of Shamanism has interesting similarities with the Indian connection between the Rksa and the Rsi: which might possibly help to explain in conceptual terms how the ideas of the Bear and the Seer came to be connected with each other. In historical terms, however, such a similarity may merely be noted in the present context without further comment: for no firm conclusions can be drawn as to possible cultural connections or diffusions of ideas, due to the fact that such Asian and North American Indian accounts cannot be dated with any certainty prior to their first documentation around the early second millenium A.D.

By way of contrast with these ideas of the constellation as being in some way connected with a bear, it may be noted that Ursa Major was known as the Hippopotamus in ancient Egypt - a name which

---

(37) cf. U. Holmberg - Finno-Ugric and Siberian Mythology, pp.83ff, 425ff. : H.B. Alexander - North American Mythology, pp.9, 26, 96ff, 278.

(38) cf. Alexander - op.cit. p.5.

it retains there to the present day: (39) while in China from at least the eighth century B.C. in the Odes it was known as Pei Tou - the northern dipper or ladle. (40) It may thus be inferred overall that the ideas of the constellation as a bear derive - on the basis of their appearance especially in both Greece and India - from a cultural milieu of what may for convenience be termed fundamentally Indo-European character: and that such ideas are quite clearly distinct from the further ideas which are to be found in Babylonian, Chinese and Egyptian contexts.

It may further be noted in connection with the question of cultural affiliations that in India the Saptarsis are consistently associated with the northern region - a quite natural association, in view of the fact that this constellation is closest to the "centre of the sky" or the northern celestial pole (see further discussion on this in chapter 3). Similarly, the designation for "The North" in the Latin languages is "The Seven Oxen" (for example Latin Septentriones): and this usage may be seen as parallel to the Indian designation of the Saptarsis as the Seven Oxen or Uksanas who travel to the east for their enjoyment:

"adhvaryubhiḥ pañcabhiḥ sapta viprah̐ priyam raksante nihitam padam veh̐  
prāṇco madanty uksano ajuryā devā devānām anu hi vrataḥ guh̐" || (41)

As has already been noted, this passage may also be connected with that quoted earlier from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa which speaks of the Saptarsis as rising in the north while their wives the Kṛttikās - with whom they have enjoyment - live in the east.

It may accordingly be inferred at this stage that the term Rkṣa as applied to the constellation of the Saptarsis or Ursa Major originally belongs to and derives from a cultural milieu of fundamentally Indo-European character, as does also their consequent association with the northern region and their designation as

(39) e.g. W. Peek - Constellations, pp.1ff.

(40) cf. H. Chatley - Ancient Chinese Astronomy, in Asiatic Review 1933 : W.F. Meyers - Chinese Reader's Manual, p.352.

(41) Rgveda 3.7.7.



Uksanas or oxen: and that it is from such a context that the idea is derived of their representing a bear or seven bears. It is equally clear that, by the time of the composition of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa around the ninth century B.C., such a designation had been replaced by the term Saptar̥sis, and was regarded as a thing of the past. Reasons for this change may now be sought.

It has been noted that the term R̥ksa denotes both a bear and also - especially in later texts - a star or shining object. The later Purāṇic texts additionally refer to the designation Saptar̥cis or seven shining ones as an alternative designation of the Saptar̥sis.<sup>(42)</sup> This term, like the term R̥ksa, is derived from a Vedic root - arc - with a dual meaning: on the one hand it means to shine, while on the other hand it means also to praise. Both of these functions may indeed be seen to apply to the R̥sis, who both praise the Gods and also shine in the sky. During the nineteenth century it was suggested by several scholars<sup>(43)</sup> that the Seven Bears were originally called the Seven Shiners: and that the term λευκος or shining was subsequently replaced - at least among the Western Aryans - by the term λυκος or wolf, which came to be viewed as synonymous with the term δρκτος or bear - whereafter the Seven Stars were converted into Seven Bears. However, with reference to the Indian sources, such an explanation in effect gives no real reason for the change from Arcis to R̥ksa, nor from R̥ksa to R̥si: on the contrary, it implies that the term Arcis or shining one was the original term, whereas in the Indian sources this term does not appear as a designation of the constellation until the Purāṇic texts. It similarly implies that the term R̥ksa developed from the term R̥si: whereas again, in the Indian sources, the opposite would seem to be the case. Thus such an explanation for the derivation of these

(42) e.g. Brahmandā Purāṇa 2.3.11.29-30 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.12.20-22 : see further in chapter 5.

(43) e.g. G.W. Cox - Aryan Mythology, book 2 ch.2 section 4 pp.226-227; cf. A. Lang - introd. to Grimm's Household Tales, p.xxxiv.

various terms would not seem to be valid in the case of the Indian material. It would similarly seem unlikely that the term Rkṣa was replaced by the term Rṣi due to any lack of bears in India: since at least one species of bear - the black bear - is indigenous to India. Keith<sup>(44)</sup> suggested that the change had occurred "Doubtless for no better reason than the similarity of Rṣi, seer, and Rkṣa, bear". Presumably by the word "similarity" in this context Keith had in mind a linguistic similarity. Yet such fundamental changes, not merely of words but of the symbols, myths and ideas embodied in such words, cannot be adequately accounted for solely on the basis of linguistic or phonetic similarity: and it might in any case be suggested that there were many other phonetically similar words which might have been chosen in preference to the term Rṣi as replacements of the term Rkṣa. Reasons for the change must accordingly be sought elsewhere.

It has been suggested and argued with reasonable certainty by several scholars that the Indian Nakṣatra system - like the Chinese Sieou and the Arabic Manāzil - is fundamentally independent of the Greek system of constellations, and probably antedates it.<sup>(45)</sup> Without entering upon a detailed discussion of this question, it may be inferred on this basis that, whatever the precise origins of the Nakṣatra system, it is unlikely to be derived from a specifically Indo-European cultural context. On the other hand, it is clear that by the time of the first mention of the Nakṣatra system in the rituals of the Yajurveda,<sup>(46)</sup> this system had been fully accepted by and integrated within the Indo-Aryan cult. Since the designation Rkṣas for Ursa Major has been seen to derive

(44) A.B. Keith - Indian Mythology, p.102.

(45) cf. W.D. Whitney - Jacobi and Tilak on the Age of the Veda, in JAOS 16 pp.82ff : A. Weber - Nakṣatra, in AKAWB 1861 pp.267ff : L. de Saussure - Origines de l'Astronomie Chinoise, in T'oung Pao series 2 vol.10 : H. Oldenberg - Nakṣatra und Sieou, in NKGWG 1909 pp.544ff : Macdonell & Keith - Vedic Index, vol.1 pp.428-430.

(46) e.g. Taittirīya Samhitā 1.5.1.4: 4.4.10.1-3 : Maitrāyaṇī Samhitā 1.7.2: 2.13.20 : Kāthaka Samhitā 8.15: 39.13 : cf. Atharvaveda 19.7.1: 19.8.1 : etc.

from a basically Indo-European cultural context, while the designation Rsis for Ursa Major does not have such Indo-European parallels, it may be suggested that the designation Rsis or Saptarsis for this constellation owes its origin - at least in part - to the same fundamentally non-Indo-European cultural context whence derives also the Naksatra system. It may accordingly be suggested that the replacement of the designation Rksas by the designation Rsis was in part due to the assimilation of the latter term from a basically non-Indo-European context into the Indo-Aryan cult.

It may at the same time be suggested that the change from Rksas to Esis occurred partly as a result of internal developments within the Vedic tradition itself: motivated both by the assimilation of outside groups and ideas and also by the increasingly important role played by the Rsi within the social or cultural group in which the Rsi traditions were formulated and propounded. Such an importance would derive especially from the role of the Rsi as one who uttered hymns of praise or Rks to the Gods, which were subsequently handed down and "formulated into a collection or Samhita, which was regarded as embodying the essence of sacred knowledge or Veda. Thus, if there were a "similarity" (as suggested by Keith) between the terms Rsi and Rksa, this would derive not so much from the linguistic term Rsi itself but rather in the first instance from the function of the Rsi in praising the Gods, and only in the second instance from the identity of the roots rc and arc meaning both to praise and to shine. In this respect, therefore, while the basic concept of the constellation Ursa Major as "Wise Men" or Rsis - whether under this or further equivalent designations - would have been derived largely from a basically non-Indo-European source, the associations of the constellation with the Saptarsis of the Vedic tradition would have been motivated in large measure by the important role and status of those Rsis as revealers of

---

Sacred knowledge - whence the "illumination" associated with such hymns or Rks in which that knowledge was revealed was in turn reflected in the concept of the "illumination" or shining nature of those who revealed such Rks. This same idea of the Rsi as one who in some sense "shines" through the illumination of sacred knowledge or through spiritual "enlightenment" is also to be found in several subsequent contexts. A passage in the Taittirīya Samhitā, for example, relates that the Gods went to Suvargaloka or the sky by means of Agni or Fire, and became the Kṛttikās; and it then adds that any man might also become a brilliant and shining object in the sky through worshipping the Gods and through performing sacrifice:

"yasyaitā upadhīyante suvargam eva lokam eti gacchati prakāśam  
citram eva bhavati" | (47)

A similar idea may be seen to underlie the Rgvedic statements that the Saptarṣis attained an exalted status through practising and uttering Rta, and through performing tapas and vrata.<sup>(48)</sup> Accordingly, the most exalted status to which they might aspire would be that closest to the centre of the sky or the northern celestial pole, the "Dhruva" or fixed point of the sky: and since, during the third and second millennia B.C. the northern celestial pole is known to have been closest to the star α Draconis,<sup>(49)</sup> then the constellation of the Saptarṣis or Ursa Major would have been closest to this symbolic "centre" of the sky (see further discussion of this point in chapter 3). The Āpastamba Dharma Sūtra again visualises the stars as being the bodies of Rsis who have been transferred to the sky because of their good deeds:

(47) Taittirīya Samhitā 5.3.9.

(48) e.g. Rgveda 3.4.7: 3.7.7: 4.1.12-13: 10.109.1-7.

(49) cf. Macdonell & Keith - Vedic Index vol.1 p.406 + refs. :  
P. Moore - Atlas of the Universe, with forward by Prof. Sir  
B. Lovell, p.216.

"prajāpater ṛṣiṇām iti sargo 'yam ||

tatra ye puṇyakṛtas teṣāṃ prakṛtayah purā jvalantya upalabhyante" || (50)

Similarly one passage in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates that when Arjuna travelled through the sky, he observed that what were seen from the earth as stars were in fact the self-illuminated bodies of Ṛsis and others of good deeds:

"tatra rājarsayah siddhā vīrāś ca nihatā yudhi |

....

ete sukrtinah pārtha svesu dhisnyesv avasthitāḥ |  
yān dr̥ṣṭavān asi vibho tārārūpāni bhūtale" || (51)

Further such references will be noted in chapter 5, in connection with the more general idea of the Sap̥tarsiṣ as stars in the sky. It may however be noted in the present context from the above references that the idea of stars as being the brilliant and shining bodies of Ṛsis and others is one which is present from the R̥gveda through to the later texts.

It may be concluded that the designation Sap̥tarsayah for the constellation Ursa Major in the Indian literary traditions arose most probably from a specifically Indian - as opposed to Indo-European - context: due partly to the influence and assimilation within the Indo-Aryan cult of ideas which derived from a fundamentally non-Indo-European source - and conceivably from the same non-Indo-European source whence derived also the Nakṣatra system - and partly also to the role and function of the Ṛsi within the social context of the Vedic tradition. When speaking of such an essentially non-Indo-European source, which - as has been seen - differed also from both the Babylonian and Chinese traditions, one obvious place to look for such a source of ideas is to the Indus Valley Civilisation: particularly in view of the fact that several Indus seals depict seven individuals standing before a figure (?deity) in a Pīpal tree

(50) Āpastamba Dharma Sūtra 2.9.24.12-13.

(51) Mahābhārata 3.43.29-35.

to whom offerings are being made: (51a) a scene which might conceivably be interpreted with reference to the Saptar̥sis. While it might thus be suggested that the Indus Valley Civilisation is the most likely source for such ideas, it must at the same time be acknowledged that such a suggestion can be neither proved nor disproved in the current state of knowledge of the culture of that civilisation. Thus while the suggestion of likelihood may be made, the question is one which will not be further pursued in the present context. It may however be further concluded here that the replacement of the term R̥ksa by the term R̥si in respect of the constellation Ursa Major is one for which reasons must be sought not merely on grounds of linguistic similarity, but more significantly in relation to the increasingly important role which the R̥si was coming to occupy within Indian society: a role which is reflected especially in his revelation of R̥ks or Vedic hymns of praise to the Gods, and a role which by the Brāhmana texts had secured for him a position of paramount importance - both within the social context, and also, in reflection of his enhanced status, in the sky. The latter is a topic which will be further pursued in Chapter 5.

---

(51a) see J. Marshall - Mohenjo Daro & the Indus Civilisation, pl.XII no.18, pl.CXVIII no.7 (London 1931) : E.J. Mackay - Further Excavations at Mohenjo Daro, pl.XCIV no.430 (Delhi 1933).

(c) Prāṇas.

While the concept of the Saptar̥sis as R̥ksas focuses attention primarily upon the stars in the sky and away from men on the earth, the concept of the Saptar̥sis as Prāṇas on the other hand concentrates attention upon man himself, and upon the nature and constitution of man. This concept is to be found from the Vedic Samhitās onwards: and the term prāṇa as it occurs in these texts may be variously rendered as either (particularly when used in the singular) vital essence, breath, vitality, life: or (particularly when used in the plural, as in the case of the identification with the R̥sis) the vital organs or organs of sense-perception - especially the eyes, ears, nostrils and mouth, as will be seen from the quotations in this sub-section.

A passage in the Vājasaneyi Samhitā relates that the Saptar̥sis are established in the body, and act constantly as the guardians of it:

"sapta r̥sayah pratihitāḥ śarīre sapta rakṣanti sadam apramādam" | (52)

More specifically, the Taittirīya Samhitā in one passage implies that the Saptar̥sis are established in the head - an identification which is pursued in subsequent contexts - while entreating that the Soma which has been drunk might rise up to the Saptar̥sis, and not fall below the navel:

"śivo me sapta r̥sīn upatisthasva mā me 'vāñ mābhīm ati gāh |  
apāma somam amṛtā abhūmādarāma jyotir avidāma devān" | (53)

A passage in the Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa makes a similar request:

"ūrdhvas sapta r̥sīn upatisthasvendrapīto vācaspace saptartvijo  
'bhy ucchrayasva juṣasva lokam māvañ avagāh" || (54)

In other words, what Caland - in commenting upon this passage -

(52) Vājasaneyi Samhitā 34.55.

(53) Taittirīya Samhitā 3.2.5 : cf. Vaitāna Sūtra 19.18.

(54) Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 1.5.5 : Jaiminīya Śrauta Sūtra 14.14-16.

described as an injunction against diarrhoea might equally be described as an entreaty that the Soma which has been drunk might produce its effect upon the head rather than upon the stomach. In such contexts it would seem reasonably clear that the Saptarsis are to be understood as being established within the body.

At this point it is convenient to draw a distinction between the ideas of the Rgveda on the one hand, and those of the Yajurveda and similar texts on the other hand, concerning this idea of the Saptarsis as being established within the body. As has already been noted earlier, several Rgvedic hymns refer to the Seven Rsis or Vipras in connection with the Soma cult. One hymn for example relates that the Rsis approached king Soma as he sat on the sacrificial camus-vessels: <sup>(55)</sup> while another tells that the voices of the Saptarsis cried out to Soma. <sup>(56)</sup> In further hymns the Seven Vipras are urged to hasten to the festival, <sup>(57)</sup> and they are said to be generated here on earth while Soma is being pressed. <sup>(58)</sup> In other words, in the Rgveda the Saptarsis are generally thought of as being brought from heaven to earth in order to be present beside those who partake in either offering or actually drinking Soma. In the Yajurveda passages quoted above, however, the Saptarsis are no longer thought of as being separate from men: they do not need to be called from heaven to earth, since they are now conceived of as residing within men - and within the head in particular. Here in a sense the macrocosm has come to be identified with the microcosm: and the Saptarsis, who were formerly conceived of primarily as stars in the sky, are now in addition conceived of as residing within man himself. Thus the head comes to be viewed as a universe in miniature, containing as it were the entire

---

(55) Rgveda 9.92.2.

(56) Rgveda 9.103.3.

(57) Rgveda 3.31.5.

(58) Rgveda 4.16.3.



creation in essence and in embryonic form: and this is indeed an idea which is to be found in the Atharvaveda. One passage in that work, for example, relates that the head of Atharvan is a vessel of the Gods: it is that within which Brahman resides, and it is that from which Pavamāna-Soma sends forth the entire creation:

"mūrdhnam asya samsīvyātharvā hṛdayam ca yat |  
 mastiskād ūrdhvah prairayat pavamāno 'dhi śīrsataḥ ||  
 tad vā atharvanah śīro devakośah samubjitaḥ |  
 tat prāno abhirakṣati śīro annam atho manah ||  
 ....  
 puram yo brahmano veda yasyāḥ purusa ucyate ||  
 ....  
 prabhrājamānam harinīm yaśasā samperīvṛtām |  
 puram hiranyayīm brahmā viveśāparājitām" || (59)

Thus Brahman is here considered as residing in the centre of the head: while Prāna guards this Brahman within the head. A further passage in the Atharvaveda similarly relates that the Saptarṣis sit together in a bowl with its opening at the side and with its bottom upwards (namely the head) in which is deposited the glory of all forms, and that they become the guardians of that great one:

"tiryagbilaś camasa ūrdhvabudhnaś tasmin yaśo nihitam viśvarūpam |  
 tad āsata ṛsayah sapta sākam ye asya gopā mahato bahūvuh" || (60)

The Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad<sup>(61)</sup> quotes this same verse, making several minor changes and making explicit the identifications both of the cup with the head (idam tac chiraḥ) and also of the Ṛsis with the Prānas (prānā vā ṛsayah): and it thereafter identifies each of these Ṛsis, in a form which has been previously quoted and commented upon. In this context the idea of two eyes, two ears, two nostrils and one mouth recalls again the Rgvedic hymn which speaks of six Ṛsis as twins and one as a loner:

(59) Atharvaveda 10.2.26-33 : cf. Atharvaśiras Upaniṣad 6.

(60) Atharvaveda 10.8.9 : cf. Nirukta 12.38.

(61) Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad 2.2.3-4.

"sūkṣmāṇāṃ saptaṭṭham āhur ekajam saḥ idyāṃ ṛsaya devajā iti" (62)

and similarly the corresponding verse in the Atharvaveda:

"idam savitar vijānīhi saḥ yamā eka ekajam |  
tasmin hāpītvam icchante ya eṣāṃ eka ekajam" || (63)

In this latter passage, it may be said that a measure of abandonment or escape is sought - by those seeking Brahman - through the one who is alone of the seven: or in other words, in respect of the body, through the mouth or through voice or food:

"vāg evātrir vācā hy annam adyate 'ttir ha vai nāmatad yad atrir iti" (64)

In this context there should be kept in mind references particularly in the Vedic Saṃhitās and the Brāhmanas on the one hand to chanting hymns in order to attain the world of heaven (i.e. gaining heaven through the voice), and on the other hand Upaniṣadic speculation as to the nature of food and breath (Brahman is food, Brahman is breath): since it may be seen that the above verse might be interpreted as making reference to both of these means of gaining some form of release, abandonment or escape.

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa contains several references to the concept of the Saptarṣis as Prāṇas. One passage for example relates that, before the universe came into being, the Ṛsis who were the Prāṇas were kindled by Indra and created seven Puruṣas. They then decided to make these seven Puruṣas into one: and whatever glory (śrī) and vital essence (rasa) resided in those seven Puruṣas became the head (śiras) of that single Puruṣa, being called the head also because the Prāṇas resorted to (śri) it; and thereafter that Puruṣa became Prajāpati, who is Agni:

(62) Rgveda 1.164.15.

(63) Atharvaveda 10.8.5.

(64) Brhadāranyaka Upaniṣad 2.2.4.

"prāṇa vā ṛṣayas te yat purāsmāt sarvasmād idam icchantah  
 śramena tapasāriṣams tasmād ṛṣayah || .... esa evendras tān esa  
 prāṇān madhyata indriyenainddha .... ta iddhāḥ sapta nānā puruṣān  
 asṛjanta || .... ta etān sapta puruṣān ekam puruṣam akurvan .... ||  
 atha yaiteṣāṃ saptānāṃ puruṣānāṃ śrīḥ | yo rasa āsit tam ūrdhvaṃ  
 samudauham tad asya śīro 'bhavad .... tasmīn etasmīn prāṇā  
 āśrayanta tasmād evaitac chiro .... || sa eva puruṣah prajāpatir  
 abhavat | .... sa yo 'yam agniś cīyate" (65)

The mention in this passage of the śrī or glory residing in the head recalls the "glory of all forms" which is said in the Atharvaveda to be placed in the head of Atharvan. Further, just as the Ṛsis -- as the Prāṇas -- are here said to resort to the head of the Puruṣa who is Agni, so too they are elsewhere said to constitute and gain a share in Agni:

"etad vai yatraitam prāṇā ṛṣayo 'gre 'gnim samaskurvams tad asmin  
 etam purastād bhāgam akurvata tasmāt purastād bhāgās tad yad  
 abhijuhoti ya evāsmims te prāṇā ṛṣayah purastād bhāgam akurvata" | (66)

Several further passages in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa again identify the Ṛsis with the Prāṇas, calling them also the first-born of Brahman. (67)

A passage in the Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa connects the Saptarṣis with the seven Prāṇas, and identifies them with the seven Indriyas or organs of sense-perception in the head -- in other words, the two eyes, two ears, two nostrils and mouth:

"sapta ṛṣaya etenārdhmuvams tenarddhis tasmād etena yajanta rddhyā eva ||  
 sapta śīrasi prāṇāḥ prāṇā indriyāṇāṃ indriyāṇy evaitenāpnoti" || (68)

In a similar manner Yaska comments upon the passage quoted earlier from the Vājasaneyi Samhitā by adding that the Saptarṣis are to be identified with the six Indriyas -- which he does not list or identify --

(65) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 6.1.1.1-5.

(66) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 7.2.3.5: cf. 9.1.2.21.

(67) e.g. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 6.5.3.11: 8.4.1.5: 8.4.3.7: 8.6.1.5: 8.7.4.18-21.

(68) Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 22.4.2-3.

together with Vidyā or knowledge as the seventh, thus recalling again the concept of "six twins and one alone":

"sapta ṛṣayaḥ pratihitāḥ śarīre sad indriyāṇi vidyā septamya ātmani" (69)

Yaska also adds that the Saptarṣis are similarly to be identified with the seven rays of the sun:

"sapta ṛṣayaḥ pratihitāḥ śarīre raśmaya āditye" |

A passage in the Taittirīya Āraṇyaka, in speaking of the seven suns, also relates that the seven Prāṇas in the head are to be identified with the seven suns, as also with the seven Rtvigs and seven Hotrs:

"sapta śīrsanyāḥ prāṇāḥ | sūryā ity ācāryāḥ || .... saptartvijah sūryā ity ācāryāḥ | .... sapta hotāra rtvijah" || (70)

In this Āraṇyaka passage the identification of macrocosm and microcosm is made explicit: that is to say, the Rṣis are by implication identified both with the suns in the sky and also with the Prāṇas in the body or head. The passage raises, however, a further question: since while speaking here of the seven suns -- identified with the seven Prāṇas, and thus by implication with the Saptarṣis -- it also speaks of Kaśyapa as the eighth sun who sustains and gives light to the other seven:

"ārogo bhrājah paṭarah pataṅgaḥ | svarṇaro jyotiṣīmān vibhāsaḥ |  
te asmai sarve divam ātapanti | .... kaśyapo 'stamah | ....  
yasmin sūryā arpitāḥ sapta sākaḥ || .... te asmai sarve kaśyapāḥ  
jyotir labhante" || (71)

It was noted in a previous sub-section that, in a passage in the Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad, mention is made of the Saptarṣis together with Voice as the eighth: although in that passage Atri is identified with the Voice, but nonetheless listed as one of the Saptarṣis. (72)

(69) Nirukta 12.37 (12.4.3).

(70) Taittirīya Āraṇyaka 1.7.2-6.

(71) Taittirīya Āraṇyaka 1.7.1-2.

(72) Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 2.2.3-4.

In this Āranyaka passage it would seem that Kaśyapa is accorded a status which raises him above the other (seven) Ṛsis: and such a status is indeed accorded to Kaśyapa from a very early stage in the literature. In the Taittirīya Samhitā he is said to have been born alongside Indra and Agni from the golden waters: (73) while already in the Atharvaveda he is referred to in one passage as the seventh sun to whom the other six make appeal (74) and in a further passage in that work as he in whom the seven suns are set together, a concept which clearly prefigures that in the above Āranyaka passage:

"yat te candram kaśyapa rocanāvad yat samhitam puṣkalam citrabhānu |  
yasmin sūrya ārpitah sapta sākam" || (75)

The Gopatha Brāhmaṇa -- which belongs to the Atharvaveda -- once again emphasises the status of Kaśyapa, referring to him as holding the waters of immortality on his head for a thousand years of Brahmā: a reference which might be seen to act as a prototype for such later Śaiva exploits as the descent of the Gaṅgā through the hair of Śiva, particularly since Kaśyapa is in this passage referred to as being Śiva, and which might therefore deserve detailed consideration in further contexts in connection with the origins and development of Śaiva mythology:

"kaśyapah kaśyapatuṅge 'bhyatapat .... dvitīyam varṣasahasram  
mūrdhany evāmr̥tesya dhārān adhārayed brāhmāny astācatvāriṁśatam  
varṣasahasrāni salilasya pr̥sthe śivo 'bhyatapat" | (76)

Again with reference to the exalted status of Kaśyapa, in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa Kaśyapa (= tortoise) is identified with the Kūrma or world-tortoise who sustains the earth and who is said to create (kr̥) beings, thereby being identified with Prajāpati -- because of which it is said that all beings are descended from

(73) Taittirīya Samhitā 5.6.1.

(74) Atharvaveda 8.9.7.

(75) Atharvaveda 13.3.10 : cf. Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa 2.7.15.1-3 :  
Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra 22.28.10.

(76) Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.2.8.

"sa yat kūrmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṁ kṛtvā prajāpatiḥ prajā  
asṛjata yad asṛjatakarot tad yad akarot tasmāt kūrmaḥ kaśyapo  
vai kūrmas tasmād āhuh sarvāḥ prajāḥ kaśyapya iti" || (77)

Similarly both in the Brāhmanas and also in such later texts as the Mahābhārata, Kaśyapa is said to have rescued the earth from the waters.<sup>(78)</sup> Just as he is in the above passage said to be the father of all creatures, so too in the Epic and Purāṇic texts Kaśyapa is famed as father of all Gods, Demons and Men<sup>(79)</sup> - and perhaps most notably as the father of Viṣṇu, in for example the Yamuna and Kṛṣṇa Avatāras.<sup>(80)</sup> Thus in the context of the passage quoted previously from the Taittirīya Āraṇyaka, it may be suggested that the apparent confusion there between Kaśyapa as one of the Saptarṣis on the one hand, and Kaśyapa as the eighth sun in whom the other seven suns - who are by implication to be identified with the Saptarṣis as the Prāṇas - are set together on the other hand, is due in part to the then-increasing status of Kaśyapa: so that while he should properly appear in that passage as one of the seven Prāṇas, nevertheless he does not appear as one of the seven suns because he has already been raised to the rank of an eighth sun who sustains the other seven - a development foreshadowed indeed in the Atharvaveda itself. It may nonetheless be noted that in many later contexts - such as in the Sūtra texts and in the Epic and Purāṇic texts - Kaśyapa is included as one of the Saptarṣis in lists

(77) Śatapatha Brāhmana 7.5.1.1-7.

(78) e.g. Aitareya Brāhmana 8.21 : Śatapatha Brāhmana 13.7.1.14-15 : Śaṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra 16.13.3-4 : Mahābhārata 3.114.17-22: 12.49.56-64: 13.139.1-8: etc.

(79) e.g. Rāmāyana 3.13.6-32 : Mahābhārata 1.59.9-54: 1.60.33-35: 12.200.17-28: 12.201.8ff: 13.12.26: 13.65.21 : Harivarṇa 3.45-93: Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.3.35ff: 2.3.4.24ff : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.5.54ff: 2.6.43ff : Matsya Purāṇa 6.1-47: 146.18-39 : Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 104.1-10 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.15.1ff: 1.21.1ff: etc.

(80) e.g. Mahābhārata 12.200.17-28: 12.326.75 : Harivarṇa 45.20-45 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.3.117-118: 2.3.71.237-238 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.21.47: 2.5.131: 2.34.220ff: 2.36.90-93 : Matsya Purāṇa 47.8-10: 244.41-52: etc.

of the Saptarṣi group: thus suggesting that his appearance in this Āraṇyaka passage as the eighth sun-Prāṇa-Ṛṣi rather than as one of the seven is a relatively isolated phenomenon.

Note may here be made of further different traditions of the Ṛṣis and the Prāṇas: in which, while Ṛṣis are identified with Prāṇa or with the Prāṇas, the Prāṇas are more generally considered to be five rather than seven in number. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa for example contains a passage which identifies the five Ṛṣis Atri, Jamadagni, Viśvāmitra, Bharadvāja and Vasistha with the speech, eye, ear, mind and breath respectively.<sup>(81)</sup> In this context the identification of Atri with the speech or mouth is the same as that given in the Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad passage quoted previously: while the identification of Vasistha with breath or Prāṇa may be interpreted as an attempt to emphasise the superiority of Vasistha in relation to the other Ṛṣis. Such an interpretation is made explicit in the Chāndogya Upaniṣad, which relates a myth in which the five Prāṇas or organs of sense-perception dispute as to which is superior. Prajāpati instructs each to depart in turn, and accordingly the speech, eye, ear and mind each departs from and returns to the body: but when the breath starts to depart, it cannot leave the body without destroying it, and is thus shown to be superior.<sup>(82)</sup> A similar account is given also in the Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad:<sup>(83)</sup> and taking this account in parallel to the account in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, the passage as a whole may be said to be one in which Vasistha is proved superior to the Ṛṣis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja and Atri. It will be further noted in chapter 3 that myths emphasising the superiority of Vasistha are frequently encountered throughout these texts.

After the Sūtra texts, little attention would seem to be given to the concept of the Saptarṣis as the seven Prāṇas, in either

---

(81) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 8.1.1.6 - 8.1.2.6.

(82) Chāndogya Upaniṣad 5.1.6-14.

(83) Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 6.1.7-14.

the Epic or the early Purāṇic literature. That is not to say that the concept of the seven Prāṇas is unknown within these texts: and indeed, one passage in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates that in order to gain Mokṣa it is necessary to gain knowledge of both the Saptarṣis and also the seven Prāṇas or Vātas -- namely the "winds" or airs, which are here listed as prāṇa, anāṇa, śamāna, vyāna, and udāna, together with the avāk or downward-going and the pravaha or upward-going winds:

"prāṇāpanau samānaṁ ca vyānodānau ca tattvataḥ ||  
avāk caivānilaṁ jñatvā pravahaṁ cānilaṁ punaḥ |  
sapta vātāṁs tathā śeṣān saptadhā vidhivat punaḥ ||  
prajāpatīn ṛṣīṁs caiva mārgāṁs ca subahūn varān |  
saptarṣīṁs ca bahūn jñatvā rājarsīṁs ca paramatapaḥ" || (84)

Yet, even though this passage mentions both the Saptarṣis and the seven Prāṇas almost side by side, it does not seem inclined to equate or identify the two with one another in any way. Part of the reason for this lack of explicit identification may possibly arise from the fact that the Epic and early Purāṇic texts tend to recognise a different group of Ṛṣis as constituting the Saptarṣi group (see chapter 2): and thus since the Ṛṣis who are identified with the Prāṇas throughout the earlier texts are those whom the later texts -- including the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata -- no longer recognise as constituting the main Saptarṣi group, then the authors of these later texts may have chosen to simply ignore the tradition identifying the Saptarṣis with the Prāṇas, in preference to identifying the Prāṇas with the seven Ṛṣis whom they recognise as constituting the Saptarṣi group (namely Marīci and others). The Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas again make reference on occasions to the concept of the seven Prāṇas, without connecting these with the Saptarṣis: (85) and when in one passage these texts do refer to the Ṛṣis in connection with the Prāṇas, the Ṛṣis are then those of the

(84) Mahābhārata 12.290.26-29: cf. 14.22.1-14.23.20: etc.

(85) e.g. Vāyu Purāṇa 1.57.69 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.29.75-76.



second main enumeration of the Saptarṣi group -- but they are listed together with five other figures, and the Prāṇas are thus not seven but twelve in number:

"tato 'srjāt punar brahmā rudram roṣātmasambhavam |  
 samkalpaṃ caiva dharmam ca sarveṣāṃ eva parvatau ||  
 so 'srjād vyavasāyam tu brahmā bhūtaṃ sukṛtmaṃ kam |  
 samkalpāc caiva samkalpo jāñe so 'vyaktayoninaḥ ||  
 prāṇād dakṣo 'srjād vācam cakṣurbhyaṃ ca marīcinam |  
 bhṛguś ca hr̥dayāj jāñe ṛsiḥ salilayoninaḥ ||  
 śirasas cāṅgirēs caiva śrotrād atris tathaiḥ ca |  
 pulastyaś ca tathodānād vyānāt tu pulahaś tathā ||  
 samānato vasisthaś ca hy apānān nirmame kratum |  
 ity ete brahmanāḥ śreṣṭhāḥ putrā vai dvādaśa smṛtāḥ ||  
 ....  
 prāṇajāṃ tu sa dr̥ṣṭvā vai brahmā dvādaśa sāt̥tvikaṃ" | (86)

Thus although the Prāṇas are here connected with the Ṛsis -- inasmuch as certain Ṛsis are said to be born from Prāṇa (prāṇaja) -- the Prāṇas are not seven in number, nor are they identified either with the Saptarṣi group or with the Ṛsis named in the above passage.

It may moreover be noted that the Ṛsi-traditions which appear in the Epic and Purāṇic texts are concerned primarily with relating the deeds of the Ṛsis, rather than with teaching a fundamentally metaphysical concept of the Ṛsis within men -- as is to be found especially in the Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic texts. Thus it may be suggested that the very character of these texts -- in respect of the Ṛsi-traditions contained therein -- tends in general to preclude such speculative metaphysical trends as occur in other contexts. It may at the same time be observed, however, that in later contexts where one might have expected a continuation of the Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic speculation identifying the Saptarṣis with the seven Prāṇas -- as most notably in the Tantric texts -- the Prāṇas are more generally considered to be five rather than seven in number --

namely prāṇa, apāṇa, vyāṇa, udāṇa, and samāṇa,<sup>(87)</sup> Such Tantric speculation may be seen in part as a continuation of the type of speculation noted above in certain Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic contexts<sup>(88)</sup> which, in identifying individual R̥sis with the Prāṇas, speaks of only five rather than seven R̥sis and Prāṇas: and in this respect it may be suggested that such early passages already demonstrate a trend to formalise the number of Prāṇas as five rather than seven, and thus to undermine the very concept of the Saptar̥sis as the seven Prāṇas - as occurs especially in the later Tantric texts.

Thus it may be concluded that the tradition which identifies the Saptar̥sis with the seven Prāṇas is one which is generally limited - in the literary sources presently under consideration - to the Vedic Samhitās, the Brāhmaṇas and the Upaniṣads. In certain later Epic and Purāṇic contexts the R̥sis are on occasions connected with or said to be born from the Prāṇas: but in such contexts neither the R̥sis nor the Prāṇas are considered any longer to be seven in number. In the later traditions of the Tantric texts, the number of Prāṇas is most frequently given as five: thus continuing certain Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic speculations on the five Prāṇas - wherein those Prāṇas are identified with individual R̥sis - but no longer connecting the Prāṇas with the R̥sis, and in effect undermining and contradicting the earlier tradition which identifies the Saptar̥sis with the seven Prāṇas.

---

(87) e.g. J. Woodroffe - Introduction to Tantra Shastra, pp.30, 43.

(88) e.g. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 8.1.1.6-8.1.2.6 : Chāndogya Upaniṣad 5.1.6-15 : Brhadāraṇyaka Upaniṣad 6.1.7-14.

(d) Other Designations.

The earlier texts contain a number of additional terms which are used to designate the Saptarṣi group. One such term is the "Seven Praisers" or Kārus - a term fully consistent with the role of the Ṛsis as praisers of the Gods, as noted in previous sub-sections; and in one hymn the speaker seeks to generate the seven Kārus on earth as the libation is being drunk at the sacrifice:

"kavir na ninyam vidathāni sādhan vrsā yat sekam vipipāno arcāt |  
diva itthā jījanat sapta kārūn eṇā ciccakrur vayanā gṛnantah" || (89)

A further term which would appear to be used of the Saptarṣis in connection with the sacrificial cult is the seven Hotṛs, as is to be found in several different contexts. Thus for example, while the seven Vipras are elsewhere urged to hasten to the sacrifice, (91) one hymn urges the seven Hotṛs in similar manner to take their place for the sacrifice:

"ā no barhiḥ sadhamāde brhaddivi devām īle sādāyā sapta hotṛān" | (92)

A further hymn refers to the seven Hotṛs as they through whom Manu kindled Agni and offered the first invocation:

"yebhyo hotṛān prathamam āyeje manuḥ saniddhāgnir manasū sapta  
hotṛbhiḥ" | (93)

While these references may be interpreted in respect of the seven Hotṛs or Ṛsis in the sky, who are thus requested to come from the sky to attend the sacrifice, a further passage speaks of the Saptarṣis as the seven Rtvigs - another association with the rituals

(89) Rgveda 4.16.3.

(91) e.g. Rgveda 3.31.5.

(92) Rgveda 10.35.10.

(93) Rgveda 10.63.7.

of the sacrificial cult - and refers to them as such as being in the body. In this passage, the Soma which has been drunk is entreated to go upwards (in the body) to the seven Ṛsis or seven Rtvigs (in the head):

"ūrdhvas sapta ṛsīn upatisthasvendrapīto vācas pate saptartvijo  
'bhy ucchrayasva juṣasva lokam māvañ avagāh" || (94)

The passage has already been commented upon in a previous sub-section.

In the Taittirīya Āraṇyaka the identification of the terms seven Hotṛs, seven Rtvigs, seven Sūryas or suns, and seven Prāṇas is explicitly made:

"prāṇo jīvañīndriyajīvañi | sapta śīrsanyāḥ prāṇāḥ | sūryā  
ity ācāryāḥ || .... saptartvijāḥ sūryā ity ācāryāḥ || .... sapta  
hotāra rtvijāḥ | devā ādityā ye sapta | tebhīḥ somābhirakṣaṇa  
iti" || (95)

It will be noted in this passage that the Saptarṣis, as the seven Suns, are also identified as Gods. Further instances of this identification are to be found in the R̥gveda, and will be noted below.

The term Pitr - in the sense of father or ancestor - is another term which is in places associated with the Saptarṣis. One R̥gvedic hymn relates that the Saptarṣis, "Our Fathers", were present when Daugaha was being bound:

"asmākam atra pitaras ta āsan sapta ṛsayo daurgahe badhyamāne" || (96)

Another hymn relates that in former times "Our Fathers", the Navagvas and the Saptarṣis, invigorated Indra through their song:

"tam u nah pūrve pitaro navagvāḥ sapta viprāso abhi vājayantāḥ" || (97)

A passage in the Atharvaveda names the Ṛsis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Vasistha, Bharadvāja, Gotama and Vamadeva as Pitr̥s:

(94) Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 1.5.5.

(95) Taittirīya Āraṇyaka 1.7.2-5.

(96) R̥gveda 4.42.8.

(97) R̥gveda 6.22.2.

"viśvānitra jamadagne vasistha bharadvāja gotama vāmadeva |

śardir no atrir agrabhīn nemobhīh susamśāsah pitaro mṛdataḥ nah" || (98)

Other passages draw a distinction between human and divine R̥sis. A R̥gvedic hymn for example relates that the human (manuṣya) R̥sis, "Our Fathers of old", gained success when sacrifice was first created: and that the seven heavenly (daivya) R̥sis returned with stomas, metres and rules of conduct for the sacrifice:

"cākṛpre tona ṛsayo manuṣyā yajñe jāte pitaro nah parāṇe |

....

sahastomāḥ sahaicchandasa avṛtaḥ sahapramā ṛsayah sapta daivyaḥ" || (99)

The sense of cākṛpre tona might perhaps best be interpreted as meaning that the human R̥sis either shared in, succeeded through, invented or set in order the sacrifice (to which reference has been made in the preceding verses of this hymn, particularly in respect of the originating of the sacrifice): and consequently that it was through the performance of sacrifice that these first R̥sis became daivya, thereafter returning to give to men the rules for the conduct of sacrifice. Such an interpretation would be fully in accord with a great many further passages: which speak, for example, of the R̥sis (and the Gods) as having gained the world of heaven (Svargaloka and similar) through the performance of sacrifice, as instructing men in the proper performance of rituals, and as being daivya or divasutras.<sup>(100)</sup> Thus the passage may be interpreted as relating the means - namely sacrifice - by which the first seven human R̥sis attained the status of being seven daivya or heavenly R̥sis:

(98) Atharvaveda 18.3.16.

(99) R̥gveda 10.130.6-7 : Vājasaneyi Saṃhitā 34.49.

(100) e.g. R̥gveda 3.53.7: 4.2.15: 10.62.4 : Taittirīya Saṃhitā 2.6.3.2-4: 5.2.8.4-5: 5.3.9: 5.4.2: 6.2.6: 6.3.4: 7.1.4 : Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 1.16: 4.17: 6.34-35: Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa 1.224: 2.115-117: 2.122-124: 3.187-188: 3.216 : Kauṣītaki Brāhmaṇa 30.6 : Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 16.12.1-4: 25.16.2 : Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa 3.9.21.1 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.6.2.1-4: 3.5.1.13-23: etc.

hence also as providing an explanation for the status of the Rsis as both human Pitrs and also divine figures in the sky. The term daivya may be taken to denote "Sons of the Devas" or "Sons of Heaven": and in line with such a divine origin there may be cited a Rgvedic verse which relates that the seven Vipras were born from mother Usas:

"adhā mātūr usasah sapta viprā jāyemahi prathamā vedhaso nṛṇa" | (101)

It will be noted that this passage also speaks of the seven Vipras as being the first virtuous or creative ones among men - that is to say, the first men who became vedhas, a term which may be taken in the sense of "fully accomplished". Another hymn relates that the seven priyas or Friends were born from Agni: and it then tells of how these human ones, "Our Fathers", strove for Rta:

"sparho yuvā vapuṣyo vibhāvā sapta priyāso 'janayanta vṛsne ||  
asmāham atra pitaro manuṣyā abhi pra sedur rtaṁ āsu ānāh" | (102)

Other contexts further relate that Agni possesses seven Rsis and seven Hotrs, just as he possesses seven tongues and similar:

"sapta te agne samidhah sapta jihvāḥ sapta rsayah sapta dhōma priyāni |  
sapta hotrā saptadhā tvā yajanti sapta yonirā pṛṇasvā ghr̥tana" || (103)

Once again with reference to divine birth, Viśvāmitra is in one hymn referred to as devaja or born of the Gods:

"mahā<sup>v</sup> rsir devajā devajūto 'stabhnāt sindhum arṇavam nṛcakṣāḥ |  
viśvāmitro yad avahat sudāsam apriyāyata kuśikebhir indrah" || (104)

Similar references to the Rsis as being born of the Gods have been noted in several earlier contexts, in the case of the Rgvedic verse - and its Atharvaveda variant - speaking of six Rsis as devaja twins and one as ekaja:

(101) Rgveda 4.2.15.

(102) Rgveda 4.1.12-13.

(103) e.g. Taittiriya Samhitā 1.5.3 : Vājasaneyi Samhitā 17.79 :  
Maitrāyaṇī Samhitā 1.6.2.

(104) Rgveda 3.53.9.

"sākaṃjānām saptatham āhur ekajam saḥ idyamā rsayo devajā iti" (105)

While such passages speak of the R̥sis as being born of the Gods, in certain further passages the Saptar̥sis would themselves appear to be termed Devas or Gods. One R̥gvedic hymn for example relates that:

"adhvaryabhiḥ pañcabhiḥ sapta viprāḥ priyam rakṣante nīhitam padam veh  
prāṇco madanty uksano ajuryā devā devānām amu hi vrataḥ guh" || (106)

The interpretation of this passage has been discussed already in sub-sections (a) and (b) above: and it may additionally be noted in this context that the meaning of "the Gods observe the vratas of the Gods" may be interpreted as "those Gods (or heavenly ones, namely the seven Vipras just mentioned) observe the vratas ordained by the Gods". A further hymn again appears to speak of the Saptar̥sis as Devas, in relating that in former times they sat down in tapas to discuss the question of whether Soma should return the wife of Brhaspati to him:

"devā etasyām avadanta pūrve sapta rsayas tapase ye niśeduh" (107)

It is again possible that a similar interpretation is to be made in the case of a hymn in the Atharvaveda, which relates that in former times the R̥sis sat in attendance upon (una-niśeduh) dīksā and found the world of heaven (Svar): and which then adds the wish that the Gods - or those Gods, namely the R̥sis - might together incline that same goal towards the speaker:

"bhadram icchantā rsayaḥ svar vidas tapo dīksām upaniśedur agre |  
tato rāstram balam ojaś ca jātam tad asmai devā upasamnamantu" || (108)

A corresponding variant verse is to be found also in the Taittirīya Samhitā:

(105) R̥gveda 1.164.15 : Atharvaveda 9.9.16 : cp. Atharvaveda 10.8.5.

(106) R̥gveda 3.7.7.

(107) R̥gveda 10.109.1-7.

(108) Atharvaveda 19.41 (= complete hymn).

"bhadrāṃ paśyanta upasēdur agre tapo dīkṣāṃ ṛṣayaḥ suvar vidah |  
tataḥ kṣatram balam ojaś ca jātam tad asmai devā abhisannantu" || (109)

In contrast again to these passages which speak of the divine status of the Ṛsis, a further hymn refers to Atri and Bharadvāja as human Ṛsis whom Agni helped:

"agnir devo devānāṃ abhavat purohito 'gnim manuṣyaṃ ṛṣayaḥ sanīdhire |  
....  
agnir atriṃ bharadvajāṃ gaviṣṭhiraṃ prāvannah kaṇvaṃ trasadasyum  
āhava" | (110)

Taking these references as a whole, there may be observed certain differences of ideas expressed in these early passages as to whether the Saptarṣis should be accorded a human or a divine status. This is indeed a question which remains a topic of some importance throughout the literary traditions of the Saptarṣis. Thus on the one hand they are viewed as men who perform various deeds upon the earth, who act as Purohitas to various kings, who are seduced by cōtesans and Apsarasas; while on the other hand they are viewed firstly as men who attain the world of the Gods through the performance of sacrifice, through the chanting of hymns, or through tapas and other ascetic practices - and secondly as being transformed into stars in the sky, into the essential essence of all living things (Prāṇa), and as the creators and orderers of the universe. It may accordingly be noted in the present context that this dual role of the Saptarṣis as both human and divine figures is present from the very earliest literary sources, namely from the R̥gveda itself.

One further term which is used to designate the Saptarṣis in these earlier texts is Bhūtakṛts, meaning literally "Makers of Being". The term Bhūtakṛt may be regarded as a precursor of the term Prajāpati or "Lord of Beings" as applied to the Saptarṣis in the later literature. The term Prajāpati is used in the early texts

(109) Taittirīya Saṃhitā 5.7.4.3 : Taittirīya Āraṇyaka 3.11.9.

(110) R̥gveda 10.150.4-5.



to designate primarily a single creator-figure, as opposed to the group of seven Rsis: and the notion of there being more than one Prajāpati is an idea which is somewhat alien to the early texts, and which fully evolves only in the later texts -- namely in the Epics and Purāṇas. Nonetheless the underlying idea of the Saptarṣis as Bhūtakṛts, which makes its appearance in the Atharvaveda but is then set aside in the subsequent texts until the Epics, would seem to find its continuity in the closely-allied idea of the Saptarṣis as Prajāpatis or Lords of Creation (see further in chapter 2). As Bhūtakṛts, the Saptarṣis are said to churn Agni:

"agne jāyasvāditir nāthiteyam brahmaudanam pacati putrakāmā |  
sapta ṛṣayo bhūtakṛtas te tvā manthantu prajāyā saheha ||

....

sapta ṛṣayo bhūtakṛtas te tvājījanann asyaī rayiṃ sarvavīraṇ ni yaccha" ||  
(111)

A second verse calls them also makers of the sacrificial ladle

(sruc):

"aditer hastāṃ srucam etāṃ dvitīyāṃ sapta ṛṣayo bhūtakṛto yāṃ akr̥nvan" ||  
(112)

Another passage relates that in former times the seven Bhūtakṛt Rsis sang out for cattle, and performed sattra, yañña and tapas:

"yasyām pūrve bhūtakṛtarsayo gā udārcuḥ |  
sapta sattreṇa vedhaso yajñena tapasā saha" || (113)

It will be noted that the same term Vedhas is used here for the Saptarṣis as has been noted in previous passages -- as for example where the seven Vipras, as Vedhasas, are said to be born from mother Usas. (114)

The term Bhutakṛt is not to be found associated with the Saptarṣis in the Brāhmaṇa and subsequent texts: nor are the Saptarṣis termed Prajāpatis until the Epic and Purāṇic texts. Several passages

(111) Atharvaveda 11.1.1-3.

(112) Atharvaveda 11.1.24.

(113) Atharvaveda 12.1.39.

(114) R̥gveda 4.2.15.

in the Brāhmanas relate that individual Ṛsis were born from Prajāpati -- as for example Bhṛgu and Āṅgiras, who are said to have been born when the seed of Prajāpati fell into the sacrificial fire.<sup>(115)</sup> In such passages the Ṛsis are clearly distinguished and set apart from Prajāpati. Similarly a passage in the Taittirīya Samhitā relates that when Prajāpati beheld the Virāj, he created both past and future with it and then hid it from the Ṛsis: but Jamadagni discovered it through tapas, and created various desires (prśnīn kāmān).<sup>(116)</sup> Here again there is a clear distinction evident between Prajāpati and the Ṛsis. In the Brāhmaṇa texts various sāmāns and praūgas are identified with Prajāpati, or are said to have been revealed by Prajāpati to the Ṛsis: and subsequently, two Brāhmaṇa passages speak of one of the Ṛsis as being Prajāpati. The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, in speaking of the Aśvamedha, instructs that the horse should be appeased with verses or hymns by Jamadagni: since by doing so, the Aśvamedha sacrifice is supplied with its own deity -- both Jamadagni and the Aśvamedha being Prajāpati.<sup>(117)</sup> The Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa similarly instructs at one point that the praūga of Vasistha should be recited: since Vasistha is Prajāpati, and it is in Prajāpati that one attains all desires.<sup>(118)</sup> These two passages might accordingly be interpreted as an attempt to identify one or another of the Ṛsis with Prajāpati. Yet it must be noted that they are relatively isolated examples: and that they make no attempt to identify all seven Ṛsis as Prajāpati, or as Prajāpatis. A similar process is evident in the case of the Ṛsi Kaśyapa. The Atharvaveda, which refers to the Saptarṣis as Bhūtakṛts, also speaks of both Kaśyapa and Prajāpati in such close proximity that it is possible to interpret the two as being identical or synonymous with

(115) e.g. Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 3.34 : Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 3.263 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 4.5.1.1-8.

(116) Taittirīya Samhitā 3.3.5.

(117) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 13.2.2.14.

(118) Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa 25.2: 26.15.

one another. In one passage the speaker is said to be covered with Prajāpati's brahman, with Kaśyapa's light and splendour:

"prajāpater āvrto brahmaṇā varmanāhaṁ kaśyapasya jyotiṣā varcasā ca" | (119)

Another passage relates that Time creates Prajāpati and Kaśyapa:

"kālah prajā asṛjata kālō 'gre prajāpatim |  
svayambhūh kaśyapah kālāt tapah kālād ajāyata" || (120)

It will be noted that in the latter of these passages both Prajāpati and Kaśyapa -- or Prajāpati as Kaśyapa -- are allotted a common birth, namely from Time: and there is no question of Kaśyapa being born from Prajāpati. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa it is said moreover that Prajāpati took the form of a tortoise -- kūrma -- and thereby created -- akarot -- offspring: and since Kaśyapa (= tortoise) is identical with the kūrma, therefore all offspring are said to be descended from Kaśyapa, who is thus by implication identified with Prajāpati:

"sa yat kūrmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṁ kṛtvā prajāpatih prajā  
asṛjata yad asṛjataḥkarot tad yad akarot tasmāt kūrmaḥ kaśyapo  
vai kūrmas tasmād āhuḥ sarvēḥ prajāḥ kaśyapya iti" || (121)

The idea of Kaśyapa as father of all creation is prominent in the Epic and Purāṇic literature: where he appears as father of all Gods, Demons and Men, as has already been commented upon in the last sub-section. Yet such an idea is not prominent in the Brāhmaṇa and other earlier texts: and the idea of Kaśyapa as (a or the) Prajāpati is not an idea which is generally mentioned in these texts.

One further passage in the earlier texts which ascribed the term Prajāpati to one of the Saptarṣis occurs in the Maitri Upaniṣad, which contains a lengthy account of the teachings given by Kratu Prajāpati to the Valakhilyas.<sup>(122)</sup> It will be noted that

(119) Atharvaveda 17.1.27.

(120) Atharvaveda 19.53.10.

(121) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 7.5.1.1-6.

(122) Maitri Upaniṣad 2.3 - 4.6.

in this context the term Prajāpati is applied to one of the Rsis who appears only in the second or later main enumeration of the Saptarsi group (see Chapter 2): and who in the earlier literature is not generally represented in personified form. This in itself would tend to suggest that the Upaniṣad is of a relatively late date in comparison with the other Upaniṣads: and the same conclusion may be reached through further considerations, notably since the Upaniṣad shows evidence of both Buddhist and Sāṃkhya influence.<sup>(123)</sup> Thus the ascription of the term Prajāpati to the Rsi Kratu cannot be taken as an instance of the ascription of this term to one of the Rsis within the earlier texts and prior to the Epic and Purāṇic literature.

It may accordingly be concluded that the term Prajāpati in the earlier literature is used to denote only a single creator-figure: that the term is generally not used to designate one of the Saptarsis, except on relatively isolated occasions: and that the term is not used to designate all of the Saptarsis, which would thus imply the existence of seven Prajāpatis - as occurs in the Epic and Purāṇic texts.

It has been suggested that the term Bhūtakṛt as used of the Saptarsis in the Atharvaveda may be interpreted as expressing the same concept or idea as is conveyed by the use of the term Prajāpati for the Saptarsis in the Epic and Purāṇic texts: namely the idea of their being "Creators of Being" and "Lords of Creation". The reason for the apparent fall from favour of the idea of the Saptarsis as "Makers of Being" in the Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra texts, and for its subsequent reappearance in the Epic and Purāṇic texts, may possibly be traced to a fundamental difference of theological and metaphysical outlook between these various classes of literature, as represented particularly in the different meanings ascribed by

---

(123) see e.g. discussion in A.B. Keith - History of Sanskrit Literature, pp.194-196.

each to the term Prajāpati. The Brāhmaṇa texts hold that there is but a single creator-figure or Prajāpati, who is the originator of all being: hence while an individual Ṛṣi might on occasions be declared to be identical with - or to be an incarnated form of - this single figure, it would nonetheless be theologically incorrect for these texts to declare that there might be more than one Prajāpati. This could only be effected when the term Prajāpati no longer retained the exclusive connotation of designating the sole ultimate source of all being: and the Ṛṣis as a group - who are never held to be those who create the universe ex nihilo, but rather those who complete the work of creation which has been set in motion by Brahmā - might only be termed Prajāpatis when this term was no longer applied exclusively to he who creates the universe ex nihilo. Thus the theological outlook of the Brāhmaṇa and similar texts presupposes that there is but one Prajāpati: while it is generally only in the later literature that the task of completing creation is ascribed to the Ṛṣis, as a result of which they are then themselves collectively termed Prajāpatis. It may therefore be suggested that the Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra texts do not refer to the Ṛṣis collectively as (seven) Prajāpatis since to do so would have been theologically alien to the outlook of those texts: while the designations of Bhūtakṛts and Prajāpatis as applied collectively to the Saptarṣi group in the Atharvaveda and then in the Epic and Purāṇic texts represent a type of theological outlook which is somewhat at variance with that of the Brāhmaṇas and Sūtras. It may further be suggested that the use of the terms Bhūtakṛt and Prajāpati as applied collectively to the Saptarṣi group may be taken to denote a degree of continuity in the idea of the Saptarṣis as "Lords of Creation": a continuity which was maintained from the authors of the Atharvaveda to those of the Epic and Purāṇic texts, among groups and in cultural circles which did not share in the type of theological outlook which is presented in the Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra texts.

#### Section 4 : Alternative Names of Individual Rsis.

Before proceeding to examine the lists and traditions of the Saptarṣi group in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts, it is useful to look briefly at some of the more common variant names for individual Rsis in the Saptarṣi group which occur in both the early and the later texts, and which must be taken into account when one examines the lists and traditions of the Saptarṣis.

##### (a) Kaśyapa.

The Rsi Kaśyapa is said in certain contexts to be known also by the name Ariṣṭanemi - as is related for example by a passage in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata:

"marīceḥ kaśyapah putras tasya dve nāmanī śrute |  
arīṣṭanemir ity ekaṃ kaśyapety aparaṃ viduḥ" || (124)

Elsewhere, however, Ariṣṭanemi is termed a son of Kaśyapa. For example, while Garuḍa or Tārksya is considered as and usually termed a son of Kaśyapa, <sup>(125)</sup> a passage in the Vana Parvan implies that certain Haihaya princes went to the Āśrama of Tārksya who is also called Ariṣṭanemi:

"jagruś cāriṣṭanemes te tārksyasyāśramam añjasa" || (126)

A passage in the Ādi Parvan similarly relates that both Tārksya and Ariṣṭanemi were among the sons born to Kaśyapa by Vinatā:

"tārksyaś cāriṣṭanemiś ca tathaiva garuḍarunau" || (127)

A passage in the Rāmāyaṇa also lists both Kaśyapa and Ariṣṭanemi separately in a list of Prajāpatīs: <sup>(128)</sup> and a similar separation of the two names is to be found again in a passage in the Brahmandā.

(124) Mahābhārata 12.201.8.

(125) see e.g. chapters 1-60 of the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata.

(126) Mahābhārata 3.182.8.

(127) Mahābhārata 1.59.39.

(128) Rāmāyaṇa 3.13.6-32.

Purāṇa. (129) A passage in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa further relates that Kaśyapa, who became the son of Marīci, is also to be known as Kāśyapa (literally "son" or "descendant" of Kaśyapa):

"kaśyapas tasya putro 'bhūt kāśyapo nāma nāmataḥ" || (130)

Despite the inconsistencies between these and other texts, it is evident that the three terms Kaśyapa, Kāśyapa and Ariṣṭanemi have by the Mahābhārata come to be associated in some measure with one another: even though the name Ariṣṭanemi is not associated or identified with Kaśyapa in the earlier texts, as might otherwise have been expected in for example the Gotra and Pravara sections of the Śrauta Sūtra texts. Hence each of these alternative names must be taken into account - in both the early and the later texts - when one examines the traditions of the Rṣi Kaśyapa.

(b) Vasistha.

Vasistha is in certain contexts said to be called also by the name Āpava: as is related for example in a passage in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata:

"vasiṣṭho nāma sa munih khyāta āpava ity uta" || (131)

The same passage is repeated also in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas. (132) Another variant form of the name Vasistha is to be found especially in the later texts, and rarely occurs prior to the Epic literature. This is the form Vaśiṣṭha: and a passage in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas offers an explanation through the derivation of the name Vaśiṣṭha from the noun vaśin, denoting one who has mastery over his passions:

(129) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.53-54.

(130) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 104.3.

(131) Mahābhārata 1.93.5.

(132) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.32.43-44 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.69.44.

"vasumadhyāt samutpanno vaśī ca vasumān svayam |  
vaśiṣṭha iti tattvajñāṇiḥ procyate brahmavādibhiḥ" || (134)

Although the explanation -- rather like certain comparable Brāhmaṇa etymologies -- might appear somewhat improbable, it is reasonably evident even from simply contrasting the earlier and later textual material that the form Vasīṣṭha is the earlier of the two forms, while the form Vaśiṣṭha is a later -- especially Epic and Purāṇic -- variant.

(c) Atri.

The Rṣi Atri is also referred to by the name of Saptavedhri, particularly in connection with one myth -- which first occurs in the R̥gveda -- wherein he is rescued from a pit or a fire by the Aśvins.<sup>(135)</sup> He would also appear to be referred to by the name of Guṇḍu, in a passage in the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa which was discussed in the first section of this chapter.<sup>(136)</sup>

(d) Bharadvāja.

In the Brhaddevatā, Bharadvāja is said to be known also by the name of Vidathin:<sup>(137)</sup> and he is also called Vitatha in a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa:

"tatas tu vitatho nāma bharadvājo nr̥po 'bhavat" || (138)

On the other hand the Harivamśa relates that the name Vitatha refers rather to a son of Bharadvāja.<sup>(139)</sup> It is nonetheless evident that this name must be taken into account in examining the traditions of the Rṣi Bharadvāja.

(134) Brāhmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.46 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.46-47.

(135) R̥gveda 10.39.9: 5.73.6 : Brhaddevatā 5.82-86.

(136) Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.2.8.

(137) Brhaddevatā 5.102-103.

(138) Matsya Purāṇa 40.32-35.

(139) Harivamśa 23.49-53.



(c) Gotama.

While the early texts on all but a few occasions refer to this Rṣi by the name Gotama, certain late-Brāhmaṇa and subsequent texts -- as for example the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa -- alternate between the forms Gotama and Gautama: the latter properly denoting a "son" or "descendant" of Gotama. Several of the later texts, as for example the Mahābhārata, make it clear that a certain Gautama Śaradvat is intended by this designation as the Rṣi who occupies a place in one main list of the Saptaṛṣi group.<sup>(140)</sup> A myth in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata introduces a further complication by speaking of Medhātithi -- who in earlier Vedic and subsequent texts is a figure distinct from Gotama and classified as a descendant of Kanva -- as identical with Gautama the husband of Ahalyā: the two terms Gautama and Medhātithi alternating within the myth.<sup>(141)</sup> A still further complication is introduced by the fact that Dīrghatamas -- who in several contexts appears as the father of Gautama<sup>(142)</sup> -- is himself in places referred to as Gautama.<sup>(143)</sup> A passage in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates that Dīrghatamas begot Gautama and other sons: and that then, after journeying down the Gaṅgā to the realm of king Bali, he begot Kākṣīvat and other sons.<sup>(144)</sup> Yet a passage in the Sabhā Parvan relates that it was "Gautama" who begot Kākṣīvat and other sons:

"Sūdrāyaṃ gautamo yatra mahātmaṃ samśritavrataḥ |  
auśīnaryam ajanayat kākṣīvādīn sutaṃ ṛṣiḥ" || (145)

A further passage in the Śānti Parvan offers an explanation, by saying that Dīrghatamas "became" Gautama upon being cured of his blindness after repeating the name Keśava over and over again:

(140) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.57.88-90: 1.120.2-21: 5.54.47-48: 5.163.20-21.

(141) Mahābhārata 12.258.1-59.

(142) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.93.17-33.

(143) e.g. ibid : Brhaddevatā 4.11-25 : Matsya Purāṇa 48.32-39 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.33-37 : Brāhmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.74.33-94.

(144) Mahābhārata 1.98.6-33.

(145) Mahābhārata 2.19.5.

"ānupūrvyena vidhinā keśaveti punah punah |

sa cakṣusmān samabhavat gautamaś cābhavat punah" || (146)

The Matsya, Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas all similarly relate that Dīrghatamas became known as Gautama after being cured of his blindness:

"gobhyāhate tamasi vai gautamas tu tato 'bhavat" | (147)

"gavā dīrghatamaḥ so 'tha gautamaḥ samapadyata" || (148)

The Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas further demonstrate acceptance of this identification, and also connect it with the designation Śaradvat: terming the Rṣi who appears as one of the Saptarṣis in the Manvantara lists for the Vaivasvata Manvantara "Autathya Gautama Śaradvat".<sup>(149)</sup> The term "Autathya" - "son of Utathya" - refers to the birth of Dīrghatamas from the union of Brhaspati and Manatā the wife of Utathya: whence Dīrghatamas is himself referred to in certain contexts as Autathya or Aucathya.<sup>(150)</sup> It may thus be seen that the three further terms Śaradvat, Medhātithi and Dīrghatamas must be taken into account in examining the traditions of the Rṣi Gautama: while it may also be recognised that, while the form Gotama is the original designation of this Rṣi, this is largely replaced from the Epics onwards by the form Gautama.

#### (f) Other Alternative Names.

Alternative names for the other Rṣis in each of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group are not commonly found: although variant forms of such names are on occasions met with, as for example in the common variant Agasti for Agastya which may be found especially in the Brāhmana and Sūtra texts, notably in the Gotra and Pravara

(146) Mahābhārata 12.328.50.

(147) Matsya Purāṇa 48.84.

(148) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.92 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.74.94.

(149) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.3.24-28 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.33.23.

(150) e.g. Brhaddevatā 3.142-150 : Mahābhārata 1.98.6-16.

sections of the Śrauta Sūtras. It should also be recognised that certain Rsis are on occasions referred to merely by a family or Gotra name. Such occurs for example in the case of Viśvāmitra, who is frequently termed simply Kauśika or Gādhija; similarly in the case of Jamadagni, who is often termed simply Bhārgava or Rciikaputra. Bharadvāja is sometimes termed simply Āṅgirasa -- a designation more usually applied to Brhaspati; while Kaśyapa is very frequently referred to as simply Mārīca. On a slightly different level, but still with reference to parentage in giving an alternative name, Wasistha is on occasions referred to merely by the designation Maitrāvaruṇa -- a designation, referring to the myth of his birth from the seed of Mitra-Varuṇa, which he also shares with the Rsi Agastya.<sup>(151)</sup>

Thus it may be seen that all such alternative names and variant forms of names must be fully taken into account when one examines the traditions of these Rsis and the lists of various Rsis.

---

(151) cf. Rgveda 7.33.10-11 : Nirukta 5.13-14 : Brhaddevatā 5.143-160 : Rāmāyaṇa 7.55.19-7.57.21 : Mahābhārata 12.291.7ff: 13.143.18 : Matsya Purāṇa 61.18-53 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.5.1ff : etc.

## CHAPTER 2 : The Later Lists of the Saptarsi Group.

### Section 1 : Introduction.

#### (a) The Two Main Lists of the Saptarsi Group.

The Epic and early Purāṇic texts know in general of two main lists or enumerations of the Saptarsi group: and before examining such lists in detail, it is first useful to give a general outline of the difference between the two main lists of the group.

The first main list of the Saptarsi group is that which has already been noted in examining the earlier texts in Chapter 1: namely that consisting of the Ṛsis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa. It will be noted that in the later texts the earlier form Gotama is consistently superseded by the form Gautama - meaning literally "son" or "descendent" of Gotama. This is a change which is already in evidence in certain of the earlier texts, and which was commented upon at the end of the last Chapter.

The second main list of the Saptarsi group contains certain Ṛsis who are unknown to - or at least unmentioned by - the authors of the earlier literature: and yet who in the Epic and Purāṇic texts have assumed an importance far greater than that held by the Ṛsis in the first main list of the group. This second main list of the Saptarsi group consists of the Ṛsis Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha: and it may thus be seen that Atri and Vasistha are the only Ṛsis who appear in both of the main lists of the group.

One more or less constant feature with both lists is the actual order in which the individual Ṛsis appear in relation to one another within the groups. This is particularly the case in respect of the second of these lists, where - apart from an occasional change in position between Atri and Aṅgiras, the above

order is most frequently followed. In respect of the first list, the Rsi-members do on occasions appear in a different order: yet they frequently nonetheless retain a "pair-formation", comparable to the "twin" formation already noted in the earlier literature. Thus Viśvāmitra appears alongside Jamadagni, Bharadvāja alongside Gautama: while Vasistha appears alongside either Kaśyapa or Atri - leaving either Kaśyapa or Atri as the "lone" or unpaired Rsi.<sup>(1)</sup>

---

(1) e.g. Mahābhārata 7.164.86-89: 12.201.27ff: 13.94.2ff.

(b) Further Designations of the Saptarsi Group.

The Epic and early Purāṇic texts in places list the same group of Ṛsis who constitute the Saptarsi group under different appellations or designations. These come under two main headings: namely the Prajāpatīs and the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā.

The Prajāpatīs are usually six or seven in number, and occasionally also nine or ten: and they then invariably consist of the same group of Ṛsis as the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. There additionally occur further groups of seventeen and twenty-one Prajāpatīs, which include the six or seven just mentioned.

The Mind-born Sons of Brahmā - a phrase which is intended to render such terms as brahmano manasāḥ sutaḥ, manasā jātāḥ, brahmanah putra manasāḥ, santa manasāḥ, santa brahmanah and similar forms - are sometimes six but more often seven in number: while this number is also increased on occasions to eight, nine and ten, particularly in the early Purāṇic texts. The group consists primarily of most or all of those Ṛsis who appear in the second main list of the Saptarsi group: namely that consisting of the Ṛsis Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha.

The terms Seven Ṛsis, Seven Prajāpatīs, and Seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā are most frequently intended to denote the same group of Ṛsis in different contexts: that is to say, they are intended to denote the Ṛsis of the Saptarsi group commencing with Marīci. The terms Seven Prajāpatīs and Seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā - which are not applied to the Saptarsi group in the earlier literature - are not used except on very rare occasions in the later texts to denote the group of seven Ṛsis commencing with Viśvāmitra. This identification of the various terms is frequently made explicit - as may be seen for example from the following passages:

"prajāpatīnāṃ sannāṃ tu caturtho yaḥ prajāpatih |  
mānaso brahmanah putrah pulastya iti viśrutah" || (2)

("This Prajāpati is the fourth of the six Prajāpatis, a Mind-born Son of Brahmā, famed as Pulastya").

"brahmanah sapta putrā vai mahātmanah svayambhuvah ||  
marīcir atyaṅgirasau pulastyah pulahah kratuh |  
vasisthaś ca mahābhāgaḥ sadṛśā vai svayambhuvā ||  
sapta brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayam gatāḥ |  
ata ūrdhvaṃ pravakṣyāmi sarvān eva prajāpatīn" || (3)

("These are called the seven Sons of Brahmā .... I shall next describe all the Prajāpatis" - ff. description of Marīci, Atri, etc.).

"marīcir atrir bhagavān aṅgirah pulahah kratuh |  
pulastyaś ca vasisthaś ca saptaite brahmanah sutāḥ ||  
uttarasyāṃ diśi tathā rājan saptarṣayah sthitāḥ" | (4)

(".... these are the seven Sons of Brahmā: they are established in the northern region as the Saptarṣis").

"(births of Marīci, Kratu, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Vasistha:)  
ity ete brahmanah putrā mānasāḥ saṃ maharṣayah" || (5)

("These are the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, the six Maharṣis").

Thus it may be seen that each of these further designations of the group must be taken into account when one examines the composition and development of the various lists of Ṛsis who are either termed or identified with the Saptarṣis: and they will accordingly be examined during the course of the following sections.

(2) Rāmāyana 5.21.4-7.

(3) Mahābhārata 12.201.3-5.

note: in the first half of śloka 5, the above form is given in 31 MSS out of a total of 36 MSS used for the BORI Critical Edition. The remaining 5 MSS contain the variant reading 'esa' in place of 'ete' (= Śāradā + 3 Kashmiri + 1 Devanāgarī); while 4 of these also contain the variant 'niścayo gataḥ' (= Śāradā + 3 Kashmiri). The editors of the BORI CE incorporate the readings 'esa' and 'niścayo gataḥ' in their text; yet the form cited above would appear to be better attested, and is accordingly adopted here; see also pp.102-3 and 127 below on parallel passages in the Harivaṃśa and in the early Purāṇic texts.

(4) Harivaṃśa 7.7-8.

(5) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.47 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.47.

Section 2 : Enumerations of the Saptarsi Group.

(a) The Rāmāyana.

In presenting enumerations of the Rsis, the Rāmāyana draws a clear distinction between the Saptarsis on the one hand - a title which it reserves for that group of Rsis, commencing with Viśvāmitra, who are termed the Saptarsis in the earlier texts - and the Prajāpatīs and Mind-born Sons of Brahmā on the other hand. The latter groups consist of the Rsis in the list commencing with Marīci: and these are not referred to in this work as the Saptarsis. Thus for example in the Uttara Kāṇḍa - a relatively late part of the work - there is given a list of those Munis who come to honour Rāma after he has defeated the Rākṣasas and regained his kingdom, among whom are listed the Rsis of the first main group:

"vasisthaḥ kaśyapo 'thātrir viśvāmitroḥ sagautamaḥ ||  
jamaḍagnir bharadvājas te 'pi saptarsayas tathā" | (6)

Distinct from these Saptarsis, a passage in the Sundara Kāṇḍa mentions that Pulastya is the fourth of the six Prajāpatīs, and a Mind-born Son of Brahmā:

"prajāpatīnāṃ saṁnāṁ tu caturtho yaḥ prajāpatih |  
mānaso brahmanah putrah pulastya iti viśrutah" || (7)

The passage suggests that the six Prajāpatīs are identical with the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: while it also draws a clear distinction between these and the seven Rsis. The passage further suggests that the order of enumeration of these six Rsis had already become formalised in a fairly definitive manner, with Pulastya as the fourth in the group of six - thus according with the form in which the group is usually listed in subsequent contexts, namely as Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu: with Vasistha as the seventh in the subsequently-developed form of the group in

(6) Rāmāyana 7.1.1-6.

(7) Rāmāyana 5.21.4-7.



the Mahābhārata and the early Purāṇic texts (see below).

The Rāmāyaṇa contains several further more general lists of Ṛsis - as most notably a larger group of sixteen Prajāpatis, including the six just mentioned: but it does not give further lists of the Saptarṣis as a group, wherein such Ṛsis are actually termed the Saptarṣis. The more general lists of Ṛsis will be examined in Section 3.

(b) The Mahābhārata.

i. The Ṛsis of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group -- namely those commencing with Viśvāmitra, as in the earlier texts -- are well-known in the Mahābhārata. A passage in the Ādi Parvan relates that, at the birth of Arjuna, the seven Maharṣis assembled to pay homage to him -- namely the seven of the first main list: and the passage then lists certain other Ṛsis who came to pay homage, including Marīci, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu -- thus in effect listing all twelve of the Ṛsis who appear in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group, but reserving the title of Saptarṣis for those of the first main list:

"prajānāṃ patayah sarve sapta caiva maharṣayah ||  
 bharadvājah kaśyapo gautamaś ca viśvāmitro jamadagnir vasisthah |  
 yaś codito bhāskare 'bhūt prajāste so 'py atrātrir bhagavān ājagāma ||  
 marīcir aṅgirāś caiva pulastyah pulahah kratuh |  
 dakṣah prajāpatiś caiva gandharvāpsarasas tathā" || (8)

So too in the Drona Parvan it is related that, when Drona was on the point of committing Adharma by exterminating all the Kṣatriyas, the Ṛsis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gautama, Vasistha, Kaśyapa and Atri come to discourse with him and to take him to Brahmaloka -- accompanied by the Bhṛguś, the Aṅgirases, the Vālakhilyas and other groups.<sup>(9)</sup> Thus here again the group of seven Ṛsis commencing with Viśvāmitra is distinguished from any other group of Ṛsis. In a similar manner the Anuśāsana Parvan contains in one passage a myth of Vṛṣādarbhi and the Saptarṣis: wherein the Saptarṣis are once again those of the first main list, and are enumerated in order of appearance as Kaśyapa, Atri, Vasistha, Bharadvāja, Gautama, Viśvāmitra, and Jamadagni.<sup>(10)</sup>

A passage in the Āśvamedhika Parvan relates that a certain

(8) Mahābhārata 1.114.40-42.

(9) Mahābhārata 7.164.86-89.

(10) Mahābhārata 13.94.2ff.

group of Ṛsis went with Brhaspati to the abode of Brahmā in order to question him - these Ṛsis being Bharadvāja, Gautama, Bhārgava, Vasistha, Kāśyapa, Viśvāmitra, and Atri:

"upaganyarsayah pūrvam jighāsantah parasparam |  
brhaspatibharadvājau gautamo bhārgavas tathā ||  
vasisthah kaśyapaś caiva viśvāmitro 'trir eva ca |  
mārgān sarvān parikramya pariśrāntāḥ svakarmabhiḥ ||  
ṛsim āṅgirasam vṛddham puraskṛtya tu te dvijāḥ |  
dadṛśur brahmanbhavane brahmānam vītakalmasam" || (11)

In this passage the term Bhārgava may almost certainly be taken to denote Jamadagni Bhārgava: a usage of the Gotra name which is frequently employed in further contexts.<sup>(12)</sup> It may thus be seen that the list of Ṛsis in this passage is once again that which constitutes the first main list of the Saptarṣi group, together with Brhaspati Āṅgirasa who acts as spokesman for the seven.

Thus certain parts of the Mahābhārata - as indicated by the above passages - clearly recognise the Saptarṣi group as consisting of those Ṛsis - commencing with Viśvāmitra - who constitute the Saptarṣi group in the earlier texts, as seen in Chapter 1.

ii. The Śānti Parvan, however, appears to draw a clear distinction between this group of Ṛsis on the one hand, and the formalised Saptarṣi group on the other hand which it in one passage identifies with the group of seven Prajāpatīs and Mind-born Sons of Brahmā commencing with Marīci - the former of whom are said to dwell in the north, and the latter in the east:

(11) Mahābhārata 14.35.15ff.

(12) e.g. Mahābhārata 3.115.9-30; 12.49.1ff; 13.4.1ff; etc.  
cf. also references to Rāma as Jāmadagnya or simply Bhārgava.

"brahmanah sapta putra vai mahātmanah svayambhuvah ||  
marīcī atryaṅgirasau pulastyah pulahah kratuh |  
vasisthas ca mahābhāgah sadṛśā vai svayambhuva ||  
sapta brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṁ gatāḥ |  
ata ūrdhvaṁ pravakṣyāmi sarvaṁ eva prajāpatin ||

....

trailokyabhāvanās tāta prācyāṁ saptarṣeṣas tathā ||

....

ātreyaś ca vasisthas ca kaśyapaś ca mahān ṛṣiḥ |  
gautamaḥ sabharadvājo viśvāmitro 'tha kauśikah ||  
tathaiva putro bhagavān ṛcīkasya mahātmanah |  
jamaḍagnīś ca saptaite udīcīm diśam āśritāḥ" || (14)

The regional association of the various groups of Ṛsis is a topic which will be discussed in Chapter 3. It is evident from the above passage that the author - while listing the Saptarṣis as those in the group commencing with Marīci, who are said to live in the east - does not wish to ascribe the appellation of Saptarṣis to that group of seven who are subsequently referred to as living in the north: namely the group of seven commencing with Viśvāmitra, who in the earlier texts are referred to as the Saptarṣi group.

A similar clear distinction between the two groups of Ṛsis is drawn within the Vana Parvan, in the version given there of the myth in which the Saptarṣis reject their wives after suspecting them of having been seduced by Agni. In the myth, Svāhā impersonates in turn each of the six wives of the seven Ṛsis - excluding the chaste Arundhatī - and in that guise makes love to Agni: and the first wife whom she impersonates is Śivā the wife of Aṅgiras:

"Śivā bhāryā tv aṅgirasah śīlarūpeṇānvitā |  
tasyāḥ sū prathamam rūpaṁ kṛtvā devī janādhipa" || (15)

By implication, therefore, the Saptarṣis whose wives are impersonated by Svāhā must include as one of their members the Ṛsi Aṅgiras: and it may thus be inferred that the Saptarṣi group which is referred to

(14) Mahābhārata 12.201.2ff.

(15) Mahābhārata 3.214.1ff.

in this myth must be that consisting of the Rsis Marīci, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Vasistha - as opposed to the group commencing with Viśvāmitra. Such an inference would indeed appear to be confirmed within the myth itself: since it is subsequently said that Viśvāmitra witnessed the impersonations of Svāhā and knew the wives of the Saptarṣis to be innocent, whereupon he attempted to mediate between the Saptarṣis and their wives - yet nonetheless the Saptarṣis abandoned their wives:

"atha saptarṣayah śrutvā jātaṁ putraṁ mahaujasam |  
 tatyajuh sat tadā patnīr vinā devīm arundhatīm ||  
 sadbhir eva tadā jātaṁ āhus tadvanavāsinaḥ |  
 saptarṣīn āha ca svāhā mama putro 'yaṁ ity uta |  
 ahaṁ jāne naitad evaṁ iti rājan punaḥ punaḥ ||  
 viśvāmitras tu kṛtvestīm saptarṣīṇāṁ mahāmuniḥ |  
 pāvakam kamasantaptam adṛstāḥ prsthato 'nvagāt |  
 tat tena nikhilam sarvaṁ avebuddham yathātatham ||  
 viśvāmitras tu prathamam kuṁḍaram śaraṇam gataḥ |  
 ....  
 anvajānāc ca svāhāyā rūpānyatvam mahāmuniḥ |  
 abrovīc ca munīn sarvān nāparādhyanti vai striyaḥ |  
 śrutvā tu tattvatas tasmāt te patnīḥ sarvato 'tyajan" || (16)

Thus Viśvāmitra in this passage acts as an outsider to the group of Saptarṣis who abandon their wives: and there is clearly no question of the wife of Viśvāmitra being one of those who is abandoned, since it is Viśvāmitra himself who protests the innocence of the wives. It may accordingly be concluded that the Saptarṣi group referred to in this myth does not consist of the Rsis commencing with Viśvāmitra, but consists rather of the Rsis commencing with Marīci.

iii. Before turning to examine in greater detail the further references in the Mahābhārata to this Saptarṣi group, it is first

instructive to examine certain references to the six Rsis who are listed in various contexts as being identical with the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. For it would seem that this group of six Rsis was in fact the predecessor of the subsequent group of seven Rsis commencing with Marīci: and that this same group becomes still further expanded in the early Purāṇic texts to include nine and ten Rsis.

Comparable to the previously-noted tradition in the Rāmāyana - wherein it is said that there are six Prajāpatis who are called Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, of whom Pulastya is the fourth - the Ādi Parvan gives two separate lists of the six Rsis who are known as Mind-born Sons of Brahmā:

"brahmano mānasāḥ putrā viditāḥ saṁ maharṣayah |  
marīciḥ atryaṅgirasau pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh" || (17)

"marīciḥ aṅgirā atriḥ pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
sad ete brahmanāḥ putrā vīryavanto maharṣayah" || (18)

The second of these passages proceeds to relate that Dakṣa was born from the right toe of Brahmā, and Dakṣa's wife from the left toe of Brahmā: and that Manu was another son of Brahmā. Such references are noteworthy particularly insofar as both Dakṣa and Manu subsequently appear in certain contexts within the group of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. A further passage in the Vana Parvan again speaks of the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, adding that Dakṣa is the seventh member of this group:

"yaṁ ākur brahmanāḥ putrān mānasān daksasaptarīṇā |  
teṣāṁ api mahāmeruḥ sthānam śivam anāmayaṁ ||  
atraiva pratitisthanti punar atredayanti ca |  
sapta devaṛṣayaḥ tāta vasisthapramukhāḥ sadā" || (19)

Although the passage does not list the other Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, it may be inferred that these are the six previously mentioned

(17) Mahābhārata 1.59.10.

(18) Mahābhārata 1.60.4.

(19) Mahābhārata 3.160.14-15.

above -- namely Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu -- to whom Dakṣa is here added as the seventh. Thus, by drawing an apparent distinction between this group of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā on the one hand and the group of seven Devarṣis headed by Vasistha on the other hand, the passage provides evidence that, at the time of the composition of this text, the two groups of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā and Saptarṣis has not yet come to be fully identified with one another. Nevertheless there is evidently an attempt being made in this passage to increase the number of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā from six to seven: and thereby to bring the group in line with the group of Saptarṣis -- which is effected in this passage through the addition of Dakṣa, but in other passages, as will be seen below, through the addition of Vasistha.

One further passage in this same Vana Parvan refers to the Ṛsi Aṅgiras as "brahmano yas tṛtīyas tu putrah"<sup>(20)</sup> -- just as the Rāmāyana referred to Pulastya as the fourth son of Brahmā. This once again suggests that, by the time of the composition of this text, the members of this group of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā constituted a definitively formulated and ordered enumeration: namely in the order Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu.

A further passage -- this time in the Anuśāsana Parvan -- similarly draws a distinction between this group of six Ṛsis on the one hand, and further Ṛsis -- including Vasistha, Bhṛgu and Dakṣa -- on the other hand: in relating that, standing before Mahādeva, Viṣṇu observed the Ṛsis:

"marīcīr aṅgīrē atriḥ pulastyah pulahah krataḥ ||  
manavaḥ sapta somaś ca atharvā sabṛhaspatiḥ |  
bhṛgur dakṣaḥ kaśyapaś ca vasisthaḥ kāśya eva ca" || (21)

Thus in this passage the same six Ṛsis are again grouped together --

(20) Mahābhārata 3.203.1.

(21) Mahābhārata 13.15.20-21.

with this time a change in the ordering of Atri and Aṅgiras within the group - and are associated with - but nonetheless separated from - certain other Ṛsis, notably Vasistha, Bhṛgu and Dakṣa.

iv. It is in the Śānti Parvan that the Saptarṣis come to be explicitly equated with the (now) seven Mind-born Sons of Brahṃā. One passage, recalling that previously quoted from the Vana Parvan, relates the birth of six Mind-born Sons together with Dakṣa as the seventh:

"brahmā tu sasarje putrān mānasān dakṣasaptamān |  
marīcim atryaṅgirasau pulastyaṃ pulahaṃ kṛatū" || (22)

Yet it then continues to relate the birth of Dakṣa from the toe of Brahṃā:

"aṅguṣṭhād asrjad brahmā marīcer api pūrvejam |  
so 'bhavad bharataśreṣṭha dakṣo nāma prajāpatiḥ" || (23)

There would thus seem to be some confusion as to whether Dakṣa is born from the mind or the toe of Brahṃā. However, the very next chapter of this Parvan gives a list of seven Ṛsis - who are called both Prajāpatīs and Mind-born Sons of Brahṃā - which excludes Dakṣa and replaces him with Vasistha:

"prajānāṃ patayo ye sma dikṣu pratyekaśaḥ smṛtāḥ ||  
....  
brahmanāḥ sapta putrā vai mānātmanāḥ svayambhuvāḥ ||  
marīcir atryaṅgirasau pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kṛatuh |  
vasisthaś ca mahābhāgah sadṛśā vai svayambhuvā ||  
sapta brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṃ gataḥ" || (24)

Thus in this context the number of Mind-born Sons of Brahṃā has been increased from six to seven: and Vasistha now appears as the seventh member of the group.

A further passage in this Parvan refers to the seven Mind-born

(22) Mahābhārata 12.290.17.

(23) Mahābhārata 12.290.19.

(24) Mahābhārata 12.201.2ff.



Sons who were created for the purpose of propagation:

"marīcir aṅgīrāś cātrīḥ pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
vasiṣṭha iti saptaite mōṇasā nirmīṭā hi vai ||  
ete vedavidō mukhyaḥ vedācāryāś ca kalpitāḥ |  
pravṛttidharmināś caiva prajāpatyena kalpitāḥ" || (25)

Here once again the order of Atri and Aṅgīras has been reversed from that in which they more usually appear (with Aṅgīras as brahmano yas trtiyas tu putrah (26)): yet the identity of the seven is clearly established in a form which subsequently remains constant in the early Purāṇic literature.

Two further passages from the Śānti Parvan may be referred to in the present context. These are of interest for two separate reasons: firstly because they implicitly accept Vasiṣṭha as a member of the group of seven: and secondly because they already demonstrate a tendency to increase the number of the group from seven to eight, through including Manu as the eighth member. The first of these passages further implies that this group of seven Rsis - who are called here the Prakṛti elements - are also to be identified as the Saptarṣis:

"ye hi te munayaḥ khyātāḥ sapta citraśikhandīnāḥ |  
tair ekamatibhir bhūtvā yat proktaṁ śāstram uttamam ||  
marīcir atriyaṅgīrasau pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
vasiṣṭhaś ca mahātejā ete citraśikhandīnāḥ ||  
sapta prakṛtayo hy etāś tathā svāyambhuvo 'stamah" || (27)

The second passage again reverses the order of Atri and Aṅgīras, but otherwise retains the same implications as that just quoted:

"marīcir aṅgīrāś cātrīḥ pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
vasiṣṭhaś ca mahātmā vai manuh svāyambhuvas tathā |  
jñeyaḥ prakṛtayo 'stau tā yāsu lokāḥ pratīṣṭhitāḥ" || (28)

(25) Mahābhārata 12.327.61-62.

(26) Mahābhārata 3.208.1.

(27) Mahābhārata 12.322.26-28.

(28) Mahābhārata 12.327.20.

v. It may thus be concluded that the Mahābhārata itself bears witness to an amalgamation of various traditions in respect of the lists of Ṛsis. In particular, the Saptarṣi group of the earlier literature - namely that group commencing with Viśvāmitra - is acknowledged as the Saptarṣi group especially in the (chronologically) earlier Parvans of the Mahābhārata (in accordance with the general Chronology of the Textual Material given in the Introduction): but in the later Parvans - and especially in the Śānti Parvan - that group of seven Ṛsis comes gradually to be superseded by a different group of Ṛsis. This latter group of Ṛsis is at first termed the six Prajāpatīs and the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, and is first encountered in the Rāmāyaṇa as a definitive group: the number of Ṛsis in the group is subsequently expanded to seven, and as such these Ṛsis come to be identified as the Saptarṣis, and to take the place of that group of Ṛsis who are termed the Saptarṣis throughout the earlier literature. The later Parvans of the Mahābhārata - especially the Śānti Parvan - also demonstrate a tendency to expand this group still further, through the addition of an eighth Ṛsi: and this is a tendency which is more fully pursued in the early Purāṇic texts, as may next be examined.

i. It is scarcely an exaggeration to say that, in the Harivamśa and in the early Purāṇic texts, the group of Ṛsis listed in the earlier texts as constituting the Saptarṣi group - namely the group commencing with Viśvāmitra - occupy a minor if not altogether insignificant role as the Saptarṣi group in comparison with the group of Ṛsis commencing with Marīci. The appearance of the former group of seven Ṛsis - namely that commencing with Viśvāmitra - under the actual designation of the Saptarṣis is attested only in connection with the Manvantara lists, where they invariably appear as the Saptarṣis of the seventh or Vaivasvata Manvantara - an occurrence which will be examined in detail in Chapter 4. But as far as the Purāṇic authors are concerned, the Saptarṣis are essentially those of the second main list previously examined - namely Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, together with Vasistha as the seventh. Once again - as was noted in the case of the Mahābhārata - they are most frequently listed in that same order: and a passage in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa confirms this order, in referring to Atri as the second son of Brahmā in the group of seven:

"tataḥ kāle bahutithe dvitīyo brahmanah sutaḥ |  
svabhāryam bhagavān atrir anasūyam apaśyate." || (29)

Just as in the Mahābhārata the Ṛsis Atri and Aṅgiras are on certain occasions listed in that order, and on other occasions in the reverse order - the positions of both within the group being nonetheless consistently second and third - so too, while the above passage regards Atri as the second son of Brahmā (and hence by implication Aṅgiras as the third), a rival passage in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas relates that Atri is the third in the list of

Prajāpatī:

"atrer vamaṣaṁ pravakṣyāmi tṛtīyasya prajāpateḥ" | (30)

Thus Aṅgiras is by implication considered here as the second Prajāpati and son of Brahmā, and Atri as the third: an order which has been seen to occur also in several contexts in the Mahābhārata.

ii. The Harivaṁśa explicitly equates the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā with the Saptarṣis in several contexts, as for example in the following:

"pūrvam yatra tu brahmarṣīn utpannān sapta mānasān |  
putratve kalpayāmāsa svayam eva pitamahāḥ" || (31)

The actual list of these seven Mind-born (Brahma-)Rsis is given in a number of different passages, and is generally in the same order as is found elsewhere:

"marīcin atryaṅgirasau pulastyaṁ pulahaṁ kratum |  
vasiṣṭhaṁ ca mahātejāḥ so 'srjat sapta mānasān ||  
sapta brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṁ gataḥ" | (32)

This particular passage is of considerable importance for establishing a relative chronology between these various texts.

It has already been seen that a similar list - with slight variations - is given also in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata: where the final śloka is also quoted as above:

"sapta brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṁ gataḥ" | (33)

Subsequent Purāṇic texts, however, expand this group of Mind-born sons of Brahmā through the addition of Bhṛgu and Dakṣa: and thus, since the group now contains nine members, this final śloka now reads:

- (30) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.9.67 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.8.73.  
(31) Harivaṁśa 3.96.  
(32) Harivaṁśa 1.29-30.  
(33) Mahābhārata 12.201.2ff.

"nava brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṃ gataḥ" |

This alteration is to be found - within the texts presently being considered - in the Vāyu,<sup>(34)</sup> Brahmāṇḍa,<sup>(35)</sup> Mārkaṇḍeya,<sup>(36)</sup> and Viṣṇu<sup>(37)</sup> Purāṇas: the Matsya Purāṇa expands the group to ten members, with the further addition of Manu, and does not quote this śloka.<sup>(38)</sup> The implications of the expansion of this group from seven to nine and ten members will be considered in Section 3.

Another passage in the Harivaṃśa again emphasises the identity of the (seven) Mind-born Sons of Brahmā with the Saptarṣis: locating this group of Ṛsis in the northern region (the implications of which will be examined in Chapter 3), and also placing the Ṛsis in a different order, with Pulastya placed sixth rather than fourth:

"marīcīr atrir bhagavān aṅgirāḥ pulahāḥ kratuh |  
pulastyaś ca vasisthaś ca saptaite brahmaṇah sutaḥ ||  
uttarasyāṃ diśi tathā rājan saptarṣayah sthitāḥ" | (39)

Another variant ordering occurs in a further passage, in which Sanatkumāra is speaking to Mārkaṇḍeya and tells him of his seven younger brothers who are sons of Brahmā:

"ye tv anye brahmaṇah putrā yaviyāṃsas tu te mama |  
bhrātaraḥ sapta dardharsā yeśāṃ vaṃśāḥ pratisthitāḥ ||  
kratur vasisthaḥ pulahāḥ pulastyo 'tris tathāṅgirāḥ |  
trīḥ lokān dhārayantīman devadānavapūjitāḥ" || (40)

The passage as it is quoted here is that given in the reconstituted text of the Critical Edition (BORI). Yet it would seem to be clearly defective: for the text itself speaks explicitly of the seven Sons of Brahmā, while the version presented by the compilers of the Critical Edition lists only six Ṛsis. On the basis of the previously-examined lists, it might be suggested that if this were

(34) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.9.63.

(35) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.1.5.71: 1.2.9.19.

(36) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 50.6.

(37) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.7.6.

(38) Matsya Purāṇa 145.90-91.

(39) Harivaṃśa 7.7-8.

(40) Harivaṃśa 12.13-14.

indeed to be a group of only six Sons of Brahmā -- as appears also in certain Epic contexts -- then it should include Marīci, and exclude Vasistha: in accordance with the other groups of six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā previously examined. The fact that this is not the case suggests, therefore, that there is a discrepancy in the reconstituted text of the Critical Edition.

The Critical Edition lists two textual variants to the above passage. The first of these replaces the second part of the second śloka ("trīṇ lokān ....") by the following:

"marīcis tu tathā vidvān devagandharvasevitāḥ" || (41)

The second variant replaces the second of the ślokas given in the above passage by the following:

"marīcir atrir bhagavān pulastyah pulahah kratuh |  
aṅgirāś ca vasisthaś ca saptaite brahmanah sutāḥ" || (42)

This second variant appears in three Southern Grantha recensions, all undated, and in one Southern Telugu version dated 1839. It would not, therefore, appear to be well-attested. The first variant is considerably better attested: it appears in the only extant Śāradā version ("seems to be at least 500 years old"): in two allied Devanāgarī versions, one dated 1625, the other undated: in the Devanāgarī versions of Nīlakanṭha, dated 1733 and 1757: and in three further Devanāgarī versions, two of which are undated while the third is dated 1550. There are two earlier manuscripts referred to by the compilers of the Critical Edition (and presumably followed by them in the above passage): one dated 1445 (Ñ3), the other dated 1446 (D1). Yet if one accepts their own assessment of the Śāradā version as being at least 500 years old (c.1450?), then it would seem that the evidence for both readings is equally well attested. Yet since the text itself would appear

(41) \*240, to Harivamśa 12.13-14.

(42) \*239, to Harivamśa 12.13-14.

to demand that seven - rather than six - Ṛsis should be listed, then it may be suggested that the "variant" passage \*240 should be accepted as an integral part of the original text, rather than be relegated to a variant footnote as has been done in the Critical Edition. Thus the passage as a whole should preferably read:

"ye tv anye brahmanah putrā yaviyāmsas tu te mama |  
 bhrātaraḥ sapta durdharsā yeṣāṃ vamsāḥ pratisthitāḥ ||  
 kratur vasisthaḥ pulahaḥ pulastyo 'tris tathāṅgirāḥ |  
 marīcis tu tathā vidvān devagandharvascvitāḥ" ||

Accordingly these seven Ṛsis are once again the six who are listed in Epic contexts as the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, together with Vasistha as the seventh.

(d) The Early Purāṇic Texts.

The early Purāṇic texts - a phrase which is intended to denote those texts whose date of composition may be ascribed most probably to within the first half of the first millenium A.D., as discussed in the Introduction - exhibit in places a marked inconsistency in listing either the Saptarṣis or the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: and they frequently give clear evidence of variant textual traditions. Thus for example one passage which appears in both the Vāyu and the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas gives a list of seven Ṛsis, in which Bhṛgu has apparently been added to the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, but has been listed conjointly with Aṅgiras to give the appearance of denoting a single Ṛsi "Bhṛgvaṅgiras" - thereby retaining the number of Ṛsis as seven:

"bhṛgvaṅgirā marīciś ca pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
atris caiva vasiṣṭhaś ca sapta svāyambhuve 'ntare" || (43)

However, a further passage in the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa gives this same list of Ṛsis, but this time states that they are eight in number - thus distinguishing between Bhṛgu and Aṅgiras:

"bhṛgvaṅgirā marīciś ca pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
atris caiva vasiṣṭhaś ca hy aṣṭau te brahmaṇah sutaḥ" || (44)

Such passages may be taken to indicate an attempt to incorporate Bhṛgu within the Saptarṣi group: which results in the latter context with the acknowledgement that eight separate Ṛsis are listed - and thus with the expansion of the group of Ṛsis from seven to eight members. It may be noted that the latter of these passages has in fact been speaking in preceding ślokas of the Saptarṣis, and of the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: and thus the passage, when read as a whole, demonstrates an explicitly ambiguous and self-contradictory character which may be taken as an indication

(43) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.31.16-17 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.13.103.

(44) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.21.



that Bhṛgu has in effect been added to the group of Saptarṣis and seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, probably at a stage subsequent to the composition of the first part of the passage:

"svāyambhuve 'ntare pūrvam saptāsan ye maharṣayah |  
caksuṣasyāntare 'tīte prāpte vaivasvate punaḥ ||

....

bhūyah saptarṣayas tv evam utpannāḥ sapta mānasāḥ |

(the question is then asked:

katham saptarṣayah pūrvam utpannāḥ sapta mānasāḥ |

and in the course of reply it is said:)

ṛsayo jajñire dīrghe dvitīyam iti naḥ śrutam ||

bhṛgvaṅgīrā marīciś ca pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |

atṛiś caiva vasisthaś ca hy aṣṭau te brahmanāḥ sutaḥ" || (45)

Several texts of the Vāyu Purāṇa give in this passage the form Bhṛguraṅgīrā in place of Bhṛgvaṅgīrā: thus clearly demonstrating that, although the passage has been speaking of the seven Ṛsis and the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, in the actual enumeration it lists eight Ṛsis - this time acknowledging the fact that it has listed eight, and thereby formulating a new group of eight Mind-born Sons of Brahmā with the addition of Bhṛgu to the other seven.

A similar type of variant tradition occurs again in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, where Dakṣa replies to the request of his daughter Satī that she be allowed to marry Śiva:

"brahmīṣṭhaś ca tapīṣṭhaś ca mahāyogāḥ sudharmikāḥ |  
guṇaiś caivādhikāḥ ślāghyāḥ sarve te tryambakāt sati ||  
vasistho 'trih pulastyaś ca hy aṅgīrāḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
bhṛgur marīciś ca tathā śreṣṭhā jāmātaro mama" || (46)

Since in other contexts it is the Saptarṣis who act as go-betweens in arranging the marriage of Śiva and Pārvatī-Satī,<sup>(47)</sup> it would appear that in this context Bhṛgu has once again been added to the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, thereby

(45) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.1-21 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.8-22.

(46) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.30.47-48 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.13.52-54.

(47) e.g. Matsya Purāṇa 154.311-425 : Kālidāsa - Kumārasambhava 6.3-95.

giving once again a total of eight Ṛsis.

The Vāyu Purāṇa gives in one passage a totally variant tradition in listing the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā:

"bhṛguḥ aṅgīrasaḥ dakṣaḥ pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuḥ |  
vasiṣṭhaḥ ca mahātejāḥ saṁsṛje sapta mānasān" || (48)

The addition of both Bhṛgu and Dakṣa in this context - and their inclusion within the group of seven, replacing Marīci and Atri - witnesses to an increasing tendency both to associate these Ṛsis with the original group of seven and also to include them under the heading of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: even though, as has been noted in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata, Dakṣa is more commonly said to be born from the toe rather than from the mind of Brahmā. It will be seen in Section 3 that in further context Bhṛgu and Dakṣa are on occasions listed in addition to the other seven Ṛsis, thereby creating groups of nine or ten Mind-born Sons of Brahmā.

In a section common to the Vāyu,<sup>(49)</sup> Brahmānda,<sup>(50)</sup> Mārkaṇḍeya,<sup>(51)</sup> and Viṣṇu<sup>(52)</sup> Purāṇas the Vamśas or lists of descendants of various Ṛsis are expounded at some length. These will be further discussed in Chapter 3: but it may be noted here that the Ṛsis concerned whose Vamśas are enumerated are eight in number - and in order of enumeration they are Bhṛgu, Marīci, Aṅgīras, Vasiṣṭha, Atri, Pulaha, Pulastya, and Kratu. Thus in this context the Ṛsi Bhṛgu has once again been added to the list of seven Ṛsis, who otherwise appear elsewhere as the group of Saptarṣis and seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā.

A passage which appears in both the Vāyu and Brahmānda Purāṇas again lists the Gaṇas or groups of descendants of various

(48) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.25.30.

(49) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.23.1-30.

(50) Brahmānda Purāṇa 1.2.11.1-36.

(51) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 52.14-26.

(52) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.10.6-14.

Ṛsis: and the Ṛsis to whom reference is here made are -- in order of listing -- Marīci, Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Vasistha, and Atri:

"utpādītā ṛṣigaṇāḥ sapta lokesu viśrutāḥ ||

(note: Brahmāṇḍa reads ajeyāś ca gaṇāḥ sapta sapta lokesu viśrutāḥ) ||

marīcā bhārgavāś caiva tathaiivāṅgirasō 'pare |

pulastyāḥ paulahaś caiva vāsisthāś caiva viśrutāḥ |

ātreyaś ca gaṇāḥ proktā pitṛṇāṃ lokaviśrutāḥ" || (53)

In this passage it would thus appear that Bhṛgu has now been assimilated within the group of seven: and that, in doing so, he has taken the place of Kratu who is omitted from the list. It is elsewhere said of Kratu that his offspring -- namely the sixty thousand Vālakhilyas -- had no wives or offspring, but remained ūrdhvaratas or ascetic:

"kratoḥ kratusamān putrān vijajñe sammatih śubhān |

tesām na bhāryā putre vā sarve te ūrdhvaretasah ||

tāni saṣṭisahasrāṇi vālakhilyā iti śrutāḥ" | (54)

This would accordingly seem a plausible explanation for why the Gana of Kratu should be omitted from the above list of the Ganas of the various Ṛsis -- thereby allowing that of Bhṛgu, previously an outsider to the group of seven, to take its place. Comparable to these passages, the Matsya Purāṇa contains an account of the births of seven Ṛsis from Brahmā: these seven Ṛsis being listed as Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Atri, Marīci, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Vasistha. (55) Here once again Bhṛgu would appear to have usurped the place of Kratu: since in other contexts, as was seen earlier, Kratu is most usually included in the lists of sons begotten by Brahmā.

(53) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.49-50 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.49-51.

(54) e.g. Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.11.36-37 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.28.30 : cf. Mahābhārata 1.60.9 etc.

(55) Matsya Purāṇa 125.8-11.

By way of contrast, the Vāyu and Brahṁāṇḍa Purāṇas give an account of the births of the Ṛsis Dhṛu, Śukra and Aṅgiras; and they then subsequently recount the births of the Ṛsis Merīci, Kratu, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Vasistha. In this context, Atri is termed the third in this latter group of six Ṛsis:

"aḥam tṛtīya ity arthas tasmād atriḥ sa kīrtyate" |

and the six Ṛsis are called Maharṣis and Mind-born Sons of Brahṁā:

"ity ete brahmanah putra mānasāḥ saṁ maharṣayah" || (57)

This list of six is clearly at variance with the earlier groups of six Ṛsis and Mind-born Sons of Brahṁā noted previously in the Epic texts: wherein Aṅgiras is included among, and Vasistha excluded from, the six. The above passage would seem to presuppose the inclusion of Vasistha in the group of Mind-born Sons: at the same time attempting to harmonise this inclusion with certain further traditions, deriving especially from the Brāhmaṇa texts, which relate the births of certain Ṛsis - including Aṅgiras - from the fire into which the seed of Prajāpati-Brahṁā is poured, rather than from the mind of Brahṁā. Thus for example certain Brāhmaṇa texts relate the birth of Aṅgiras: (58) others relate that of Dhṛu: (59) and others relate the births of both of these Ṛsis, with on occasions the addition of a third Ṛsi - sometimes Atri, (60) sometimes Brihaspati, (61) or sometimes Atharvan. (62) In a similar manner the Anuśāsana Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates in one passage the births of first Dhṛu, Aṅgiras and Kavi-Śukra from the sacrificial fire:

(57) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.34-48 : Brahṁāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.34-48.

(58) e.g. Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 3.263 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 4.5.1.8.

(59) e.g. Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 18.9.1-2.

(60) e.g. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.4.5.13 : Brhaddevatā 5.97-101 : Nirukta 3.17.

(61) e.g. Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 3.34.

(62) e.g. Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.1.1-9.

"bhṛḡity eva bhṛḡuḥ pūrvam aṅgīrebhya 'ṅgīrābhavat |  
aṅgīrasamśrayāc caiva kavir ity aparo 'bhavat" || (63)

The passage then continues to relate the births of subsequent Ṛsis -- namely Marīci, the Vālakhilyas (usually considered as sons of Kratu), and Atri. The first three Ṛsis are then singled out: and it is related that Bhṛḡu was adopted by Varuṇa, Aṅgiras by Agni, and Kavi-Śukra by Brahmā.<sup>(64)</sup> It may accordingly be inferred that the passage quoted previously from the Vāyu and Brahmānda Purāṇas continues this same tradition -- found from the Brāhmaṇa texts onwards -- of recounting the exalted births of the Ṛsis Aṅgiras, Bhṛḡu, and also Śukra-Kavi, from the sacrificial fire into which the seed of Prajāpati-Brahmā has been poured: while the passage also attempts to combine this with a further tradition -- found from the Rāmāyana onwards -- of recounting the births of the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. Moreover, since the Ṛsi Aṅgiras -- who is usually termed one of the six Mind-born Sons -- has already been listed in the passage as one of the three Ṛsis born from the sacrificial fire, the passage therefore substitutes the Ṛsi Vasistha in his place in the list of Mind-born Sons: a Ṛsi who, as has been seen, becomes associated with this group of six Ṛsis from the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata, joining it as the seventh member.

Again by way of contrast with such traditions, a passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa recounts a version of the myth of Dhruva who -- after he has left the city in order to pursue a life of asceticism -- questions the Saptarṣis whom he meets in the forests. This passage retains the "original" or standard list of Saptarṣis, as was noted earlier especially in the later parts of the Mahābhārata and in certain Purāṇic passages (notably also in the Purāṇic Manvantara lists, which will be examined in Chapter 4): while the order of enumeration changes only in the cases of Pulaha and Kratu. Thus

(63) Mahābhārata 13.85.15ff.

(64) Mahābhārata 13.85.32-34.

the seven Ṛsis appear in order of enumeration as Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Kratu, Pulaha, and Vasistha.<sup>(65)</sup>

One further passage may be referred to in the present context in examining the various lists of the Saptarṣi group. This occurs in the Vāyu,<sup>(66)</sup> Brahmānda,<sup>(67)</sup> Matsya,<sup>(68)</sup> and Viṣṇu<sup>(69)</sup> Purāṇas: and it consists of a list of those Ṛsis who occupy the chariot of Sūrya during each of the twelve months of the year. The Viṣṇu Purāṇa alone enumerates each of the Ṛsis and months individually: while the other three Purāṇas list both the Ṛsis and the months in pairs. In order of appearance, these Ṛsis are: Pulastya and Pulaha; Atri and Vasistha; Aṅgiras and Bhṛgu; Bharadvāja and Gautama; Kaśyapa and Kratu; Jamadagni and Viśvāmitra. Slight variations occur between the texts: thus for example in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa the order of Bharadvāja and Gautama is reversed, and Kāśyapa Tārksya appears in place of Kaśyapa. It may be noted that the pair-formation which was commented upon previously continues to be followed in this passage: thus Viśvāmitra appears alongside Jamadagni, Bharadvāja alongside Gautama, Vasistha alongside Atri -- and also Aṅgiras alongside Bhṛgu, as occurs from the Vedic texts onwards. A further noteworthy point is that, with one exception, all twelve of the Ṛsis who appear in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group are enumerated in this context. The one exception is in the case of the Ṛsi Marīci, who does not appear in this passage: and it is again a further indication of the increasing importance of the Ṛsi Bhṛgu -- and of the possible textual manipulation of Bhargava redactors (see Chapter 3) -- that Marici has been replaced in this list by the Ṛsi Bhṛgu, as has been seen to occur also in further contexts.<sup>(70)</sup>

(65) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.11.29-56.

(66) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.52.2-20.

(67) Brahmānda Purāṇa 1.2.23.2-20.

(68) Matsya Purāṇa 126.3-24.

(69) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 2.10.1-22.

(70) e.g. Vāyu Purāṇa 1.25.80.

It may thus be concluded that, despite the several overt inconsistencies exhibited by these texts, the Purāṇic texts in general accept and recognise the basic list of the Saptarṣi group as that consisting of the six Ṛṣis Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu, together with the addition of Vasistha as the seventh Ṛṣi. It is also apparent that certain passages in these texts additionally demonstrate a tendency to assimilate certain other Ṛṣis - most notably the Ṛṣi Bhṛgu - within this group of seven. In doing so, these texts follow a trend which is already evident within the Mahābhārata to minimise the importance of the Saptarṣi group commencing with Viśvāmitra - who are termed the Saptarṣis throughout the earlier literature - and to emphasise that of the group of Ṛṣis commencing with Marīci. This latter group first appears in the Epic texts as a group of six Ṛṣis, who are called the Prajāpatis or the Mind-born Sons of Brahman: and their number is then expanded to seven, thus corresponding in number to the Saptarṣi group by which term they are thereafter designated. Subsequent attempts - in both the Epic and the early Purāṇic texts - to assimilate further Ṛṣis within this group lead on the one hand to relatively isolated variant lists of Saptarṣis,<sup>(71)</sup> and on the other hand to expanded versions of the group - which will be examined in the following section - which encompass eight, nine or ten members, who are then generally termed the Mind-born Sons of Brahman.

---

(71) e.g. Vāyu Purāṇa 1.25.80.

(c) The Astronomical Texts.

Further light is thrown upon the constitution of the Saptarṣi group by the astronomical texts which fall within the final centuries of the period presently being considered. Although neither the Sūrya Siddhānta nor the works of Āryabhaṭa contain any lists of the Saptarṣi group, such a list is given in the Brhatsamhitā of Varāhamihira. As would be expected, Varāhamihira deals with the Saptarṣis as being identified with the seven stars of Ursa Major: and in one passage he speaks both of the Saptarṣi group and also of the positions of the Saptarṣis relative to one another. Thus he enumerates each of the stars or Saptarṣis, commencing with Marīci at the eastern end, next to whom is Vasistha, followed in order by Aṅgiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu -- with Arundhatī next to Vasistha:

"saikāvalīva rājati sasitotpalamālinī sahāseva |  
 nāthavatiṣa ca dig yañ kauṇṭerī septabhir munibhiḥ ||  
 dhruvanāyākopadeśān narinarttīvottarā bhramadhiś ca |  
 yaś cāram ahaṃ teṣāṃ kathayisyē vrddhagargamatāt ||  
 ....  
 pūrve bhāge bhagavān marīcir apare sthito vasistho 'smāt |  
 tasyāṅgiras tato 'tris tasyāsannah pulastyaś ca ||  
 pulahaḥ kratuḥ iti bhagavān āsannā anulāmena pūrvādyāḥ |  
 tatra vasisthaṃ munivaram upāśritārundhatī sādhi" || (72)

It may be seen that this list of the Saptarṣis is the same as that noted already in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts which constitutes the second main list of the Saptarṣi group.

In astronomical terms, Arundhatī -- the wife of the Rṣi Vasistha -- is identified with Alcor, the small star (almost invisible to the naked eye) close beside δ Ursa Major. A passage in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata offers an explanation for her being sometimes visible and sometimes invisible, saying that this is because she once insulted her husband Vasistha:



"arundhatī paryośaṅkad vasistham r̥sisattanam ||  
 viśuddhabhāven atyantam sadā priyāhite ratam |  
 santarsimadhyagam vīram avamene ca tam munim ||  
 apadhyānena s̄a tena dhūnārūṇasamaprabhā |  
 lakṣyālakṣyā nābhirūpā nimittam iva lakṣyate" || (73)

It was similarly seen in the last Chapter that a passage in the Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra, which gives a list of the Saptar̥sis (of the first main list of the group), places Arundhatī between Vasistha and Kaśyapa<sup>(74)</sup>—thus corresponding to a position between Vasistha and Marīci in the above list of Varāhamihira. This is on the one hand an indication that Marīci in the second list has in a sense taken over the position formerly occupied by Kaśyapa in the first list: the latter of whom is throughout the Epic and Purāṇic texts termed the son of Marīci. It may also be observed that, in astronomical terms, Vasistha as the husband of Arundhatī must of necessity be identified with the star  $\zeta$  Ursa Major adjoining the star Alcor: and therefore that he must appear in a penultimate position within the group of seven R̥sis. In the first main list of the Saptar̥si group, Vasistha does indeed appear in such a penultimate position: the standard enumeration of that group being, as was seen in the last chapter, in the order Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa. Yet it has been noted that in the formulation of the second main list of the Saptar̥si group, Vasistha is a relative late-comer: he does not appear in the earlier group of six R̥sis, and when he is added to that group as the seventh R̥si he usually appears as the final member of that group. Thus the standard enumeration of the second group has been seen to be in the order Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha. Hence Varāhamihira has in the above passage been obliged to alter the otherwise standard order of enumeration of these seven R̥sis, in order to accord with their astronomical

(73) Mahābhārata 1.224.27-31.

(74) Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra 2.8.19.1-6.

significance - and to place Vasistha in a penultimate, rather than in a final position within the group. It may accordingly be inferred that the origins of this second main list of the Saptarsi group do not arise from an astronomical basis: and that the list does not owe its origin to any form of alternative or secondary tradition arising solely from astronomical considerations - namely from the identification of the Saptarsis with the seven stars of Ursa Major. Such a conclusion would in any case appear to be implied by the fact that this particular group of Rsis would seem to have been originally only six in number: while it is only at a later stage - notably in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata - that their number is expanded to seven, whereafter they are termed the Saptarsis.

(f) Conclusion.

It is possible to conclude at this stage that, between the Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra on the one hand - which, as indicated in the Introduction, may be ascribed in composition to perhaps c.300 B.B. - and the works of Varāhamihira on the other hand - around A.D. 550 - the standard enumeration of the Saptarṣi group was altered, insofar as its appearance in the literary sources is concerned. Whereas the group had formerly - before and within the former of these texts - been enumerated as consisting of the Ṛsis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa, by the latter of these texts it is standardly enumerated as consisting of the Ṛsis Marīci, Atri, Āṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha. Moreover, such an alteration may be said to have occurred most probably not later than the earliest sections of the Harivaṃśa and of the Purāṇic texts: since these texts take little notice of the first of these groups as constituting the Saptarṣi group, but recognise instead the second as being the Saptarṣi group. Such an alteration is also likely to have occurred prior to the writings of Kālidāsa, and hence probably prior to the Gupta period: for Kālidāsa mentions the Ṛsi Āṅgiras as a member of the Saptarṣi group,<sup>(75)</sup> and since Āṅgiras appears only in the second main list of the group, Kālidāsa thus by implication refers to the Ṛsis of the second main list as constituting the Saptarṣi group. On the other hand, such an alteration in the tradition of enumerating the group is likely to have occurred not earlier than the late Kāṇḍas of the Rāmāyaṇa: since it has been seen that these list only the first of these groups as constituting the Saptarṣi group, while nonetheless the latter group of six Ṛsis whose number becomes subsequently increased to seven and who then constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group. It may be acknowledged that the

---

(75) Kumārasambhava 6.65.

traditions presented in these various texts may have overlapped chronologically, with different traditions being presented contemporaneously in different texts. Yet it would nonetheless appear possible to discern a reasonably unitary developmental pattern evolving between each of these various texts, which would in itself suggest a chronological development of the traditions. In this respect the Mahābhārata would appear to span both of the main traditions of enumeration: inasmuch as it accepts the Rsis of both of the two main lists as representing the Saptarṣi group, although in especially the later Śānti Parvan it would appear to accept only the latter of the two groups as constituting the standard group of Saptarṣis. Thus in attempting to establish a relative textual chronology for the change between these two main lists of the Saptarṣi group, it may be said that the origins of the change are discernible in the Rāmāyaṇa: that the change is already under way in the Mahābhārata, and more especially in the later Parvas of that work; and that the change has been fully effected in the Harivaṃśa and in the early Purāṇic texts.

Relating this conclusion to the approximate chronology of these texts as discussed in the Introduction, the likelihood may at this stage be expressed that such a change between the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group occurs in the literary traditions during the post-Maurya and pre-Gupta period: and more specifically probably after c.100 B.C. (i.e. later than the late kāṇḍas of the Rāmāyaṇa), before c.A.D. 300 (i.e. before the late Parvas of the Mahābhārata, and before Kālidāsa), and most probably not later than c.A.D. 100-200 (i.e. not later than the earliest sections of the Harivaṃśa and the early Purāṇic texts). The question of the chronology of the change between the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group is one to which further reference will be made in subsequent Chapters.

Section 3 : Further Designations of the Saptarṣi Group.

This section is intended to examine those lists or enumerations of Ṛsis which include most or all of the Ṛsis who are elsewhere included in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group: particularly where such lists are not referred to as constituting lists of the Saptarṣi group, and also where they include further Ṛsis.

Certain expanded forms of the Saptarṣi group have already been noted in the previous Section. Thus for example the Ṛsi Bhṛgu has been seen to be added to the lists of the Saptarṣi group on several occasions - sometimes replacing a Ṛsi within the group, and sometimes appearing as an eighth Ṛsi. On other occasions further Ṛsis have been seen to be added to the lists of the Saptarṣi group, as in the case of two lists in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata which speak of the eight Prakṛti elements from which - or from whom - the universe arose: wherein Manu Svāyambhuva is added to the list of the seven Ṛsis of the second main enumeration of the Saptarṣi group.<sup>(76)</sup>

Further lists and groupings may be examined under two main headings: namely those of the Prajanātis and the Mind-born Sons of Brahman.

---

(76) Mahābhārata 12.322.26ff : 12.327.29ff.

(a) The Prajāpatīs.

As was indicated in the Introduction to this Chapter, the Prajāpatīs are most frequently listed as being either six or seven in number, synonymous and identical with the six or seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā -- who in turn come to be identified as the Saptarṣis. Although this group remains of central importance throughout the Epic and early Purāṇic texts, other lists of Prajāpatīs are also given in certain contexts. Thus for example a passage in the Aranya Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa gives a list of seventeen Prajāpatīs:

"pūrvakāle mahābāho ye prajāpatayo 'bhaven |  
 tān me nigadataḥ sarvān āditaḥ śṛṇu rāghava ||  
 kardamaḥ prathamaś teṣāṃ vikṛtaś tadānantaram |  
 śeṣaś ca saṁśrayaś caiva bahuputraś ca vīryavān ||  
 sṭhānur marīciś atriś ca kratuś caiva mahābalaḥ |  
 pulastyaś cāṅgīrāś caiva pracetāḥ pulahaś tathā ||  
 dakṣo vivasvān aparo 'riṣṭanemiś ca rāghava |  
 kaśyapaś ca mahātejāś teṣāṃ āśic ca paścimāḥ" || (77)

Apart from this general list of a number of Prajāpatīs -- which may be noted to include the six Ṛṣis who are elsewhere called also the six Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, but to exclude Vasistha -- a further passage in the Sundara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa mentions a definitive group of six Prajāpatīs -- called also Mind-born Sons of Brahmā -- the fourth of whom is Pulastya:

"prajāpatīnāṃ saṁnāṃ tu caturtho yaḥ prajāpatiḥ |  
 mānaso brahmaṇaḥ putraḥ pulastya iti viśrutaḥ" || (78)

It is evident that already in this context the (six) Prajāpatīs are associated with and identified with the (six) Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. Similarly in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata there occurs a list of a definitive group of seven Prajāpatīs, who are termed also the Saptarṣis and the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā:

(77) Rāmāyaṇa 3.13.6-9.

(78) Rāmāyaṇa 5.21.6.

"prajānām patayo ye sma dikṣu pratyekaśah smṛtāḥ ||

....

brahmanah sapta putrā vai mahātmanah svayambhuvah ||  
marīcīr atyaṅgīrasau pulastyah pulahaḥ kratuh |  
vasisthaś ca mahābhāgaḥ sadṛśā vai svayambhuvā ||  
sapta brahmāna ity ete purāṇe niścayaḥ gataḥ |  
ata ūrdhvaḥ pravakṣyāmi sarvān eva prajāpatīn" || (79)

Elsewhere in this same Parvan, however, there is also listed a definitive group of twenty-one Prajāpatīs -- including the seven who elsewhere constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group:

"brahmā sthānur manur dakṣo bhṛguḥ dharmas tapo damah |  
marīcīr aṅgirātriś ca pulastyah pulahaḥ kratuh ||  
vasisthaḥ paramesthī ca vivasvān soma eva ca |  
kardamaś cāpi yah proktaḥ krodho vikṛita eva ca ||  
ekaviṃśatir utpannās te prajāpatayah smṛtāḥ" | (80)

It may be seen that there exist a great many disparities between this lengthened list of Prajāpatīs and that quoted above from the Rāmāyaṇa. A passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa also contains an extended list of Prajāpatīs which, while listing certain of those who appear in one or both of the above-quoted extended lists (notably the seven who constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group), nevertheless differs considerably from both of the other extended lists in respect of the further figures included in the list as Prajāpatīs:

"prajāpatīn lokanamaskṛtāms tathā svayambhurudraprabhṛtīn mahēśvarān |  
bhṛguḥ marīciḥ paramesthinam manur rojas tamo dharmam athāpi kośyapam ||  
vasisthadakṣātripulastyakardamaḥ ruciḥ vivasvantam athāpi ca kratum |  
munin tathaivāṅgirasam prajāpatim praṇamya mūrddhna pulahaḥ ca bhāvataḥ" || (81)

The character of this passage is more in the manner of a mere collection of names than of a definitively ordered list: and there would appear to be no clearly established tradition of a definitive group of Prajāpatīs indicated by any of the above-quoted extended enumerations.

(79) Mahābhārata 12.201.2ff.

(80) Mahābhārata 12.321.33-35.

(81) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.3.2-3.

Two passages in both the Vāyu and the Brahṁāṇḍa Purāṇas do, however, contain a further list of Prajāpatīs which would appear to be a less isolated phenomenon than any of the preceding extended lists. The passages give a list of nine Prajāpatīs: and the second of the passages also speaks of them as having formerly been born as Mind-born Sons of Brahṁā, as having raised offspring, and as having then resorted to Janaloka - a reference to the Manvantara traditions of the Saptarṣis, which will be examined in Chapter 4. The nine Prajāpatīs who are listed are in effect the seven Ṛṣis who constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group: but with the replacement of Atri by Kaśyapa, and then with the addition of Bhṛgu and Dakṣa to the group:

"marīciḥ kaśyapo dakṣas tathā svāyambhuvo 'ṅgīrāḥ |  
bhṛguḥ pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratur ityevamādayaḥ ||  
prajānāṃ patayaḥ sarve vartante tatra taiḥ saha" | (82)

"marīciḥ kaśyapo dakṣo vasisthaś cāṅgīrā bhṛguḥ |  
pulastyaḥ pulahaś caiva kratur ityevamādayaḥ ||  
pūrvam te samprasūyante brahmaṇo mānasā iha |  
tataḥ prajāḥ pratisthāpya janam evāśrayanti te" || (83)

Comparing the two parallel passages, it would seem that the designation Svāyambhuva in the first passage represents an alternative designation for the Ṛṣi Vasistha in the second passage. This may be said to afford evidence of an attempt to emphasise the status of this Ṛṣi, by singling him out as a (special) son of Svayambhu-Brahṁā: and further examples of this type will be examined in Chapter 3. The above group of nine Prajāpatīs would thus appear to be a developed form of the groups of six and seven Prajāpatīs already noted. It will however be observed that, in such groups of six and seven Prajāpatīs, Atri is invariably included within those groups: and similarly a further passage in both the Vāyu and the Brahṁāṇḍa

(82) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.39.34-36 : Brahṁāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.2.32-34.

(83) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.39.49-51 : Brahṁāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.2.47-49.



Purāṇas gives a list of six Prajāpatīs, including Atri, who are also called Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. The passage first describes the births of the Ṛsis Marīci, Kratu, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha and Vasistha:

"marīciḥ prathamāḥ tatra marīcibhyaḥ samutthitāḥ |  
kratau tasmin suto jajñe yatas tasmāt sa vai kratuḥ ||  
aḥam tṛtīya ity arthas tasmād atriḥ sa kīrtyate |  
keśaiś ca niśitair bhūtaḥ pulastyaś tena sa smṛtaḥ ||  
keśair lambaiḥ samudbhūtaś tasmāt tu pulahaḥ smṛtaḥ |  
vasumadhyāt samutpanno vasuṃśan vasudhāśrayaḥ ||  
vasistha iti tattvajñaiḥ procyate brahmavādibhiḥ |  
ity ete brahmaṇaḥ putrā mānasāḥ saṃ maharṣayaḥ ||  
lokasya santānakarāś tair imā vardhitāḥ prajāḥ |  
prajāpataya ity evaṃ paṭhyante brahmaṇaḥ sutāḥ" || (84)

Just as Atri is in this passage called the third of the Prajāpatīs, so too in a further passage in both of these Purāṇas he is again referred to as the third Prajāpati:

"atrer vaṃśam pravakṣyāmi tṛtīyasya prajāpateḥ" | (85)

There would thus appear to be a firmly-established tradition of including Atri within the lists of Prajāpatīs - particularly as the third Prajāpati: and thus the exclusion of Atri from the previously-quoted list of nine Prajāpatīs would appear to be a relatively isolated occurrence.

A list of ten Prajāpatīs is also to be found in the Mānava Dharma Śāstra, wherein the Ṛsis are those of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group together with Pracetas, Bhṛgu and Nārada:

"aḥam prajāḥ sisṛkṣus tu tpeśaḥ taptvā suduṣṭcaram |  
patin prajānām aṣṭam maharṣin ādito daśa ||  
marīcin atryaṅgirasam pulastyaṃ pulahaṃ kratum |  
pracetasam vasisthaṃ ca bhṛguṃ nāradaṃ eva ca" || (86)

Although the Ṛsis in this passage are not called Mind-born Sons of

(84) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.43-48 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.43-48.

(85) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.9.67 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.8.73.

(86) Mānava Dharma Śāstra 1.34-35.

Brahmā, it will be noted in the next sub-section that this list of ten Ṛsis which includes Pracetas, Bhṛgu and Nārada in addition to the seven of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group - all of whom are here called Prajāpatis - corresponds to a further list of ten Mind-born Sons of Brahmā which is to be found in the Matsya Purāṇa<sup>(87)</sup> but not in any of the other early Purāṇic texts. The appearance of Pracetas and Nārada in such a list is a relatively rare occurrence: and the above correspondence might therefore be taken as affording possible evidence of a tradition which is common to both the Mānava Dharma Śāstra and the Matsya Purāṇa, but which is not shared by any of the other early Purāṇic texts. The list in the Matsya Purāṇa will be further examined in the following sub-section.

It may thus be seen that certain distinct groups of six, seven, nine and ten Ṛsis are in places listed as being Prajāpatis: and that these Prajāpatis are frequently also termed Mind-born Sons of Brahmā - a designation under which these lists of Ṛsis may next be examined.

---

(87) Matsya Purāṇa 3.5-8: 102.19.

(b) The Mind-born Sons of Brahmā.

i. The term "Mind-born Sons of Brahmā" is - as indicated in the Introduction to this Chapter - intended to render such terms as brahmano mānasāḥ sutaḥ, mānasā jātāḥ, brahmanah putrā mānasāḥ and similar forms. The concept of Ṛsis as being born of the Mind of Brahmā - as opposed to being born from parts of his body or from his seed - is one which is generally presented only from the Epic texts onwards. In the earlier texts, certain passages speak of individual Ṛsis as being born from Prajāpati-Brahmā: particularly in the case of the Ṛsis Bhṛgu and Angiras, whose birth takes place after the seed of Prajāpati has been sprinkled over the sacrificial fire.<sup>(88)</sup> Such passages frequently recur in a similar form in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts.<sup>(89)</sup> The Saptarṣis as a group are not however said in the earlier texts to have been born in this way: not are any of the Ṛsis in the Saptarṣi group called Mind-born Sons. A passage in the Viṣṇu Dharma Śāstra refers to the creation of the Saptarṣis by Brahmā:<sup>(90)</sup> and similarly a passage in the Mānava Dharma Śāstra - which was quoted at the end of the last sub-section - refers to the creation of ten Ṛsis or Prajāpatīs by Brahmā.<sup>(91)</sup> Yet neither of these passages speaks of the Ṛsis as being Mind-born Sons.

In the Rāmāyana, individual Ṛsis - such as Marīci<sup>(92)</sup> and Vasistha<sup>(93)</sup> - are on occasions referred to as being Sons of Brahmā, but not specifically as Mind-born Sons. Such does however occur in the case of the Ṛsi Pulastya, who - in addition to being called a son of Brahmā - is in one passage termed the fourth of the six

(88) e.g. Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 3.34 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.4.5.13: 4.5.1.8 : Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa 3.263 : Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 18.9.1-2 : Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.1.1-9 : Brhaddevatā 5.97-101 : Nirukta 3.17.

(89) e.g. Mahābhārata 13.85.15ff : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.34-46 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.34-47 : Matsya Purāṇa 195.8-16.

(90) Viṣṇu Dharma Śāstra 1.16.

(91) Mānava Dharma Śāstra 1.34-35.

(92) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.69.17ff: 2.102.3ff.

(93) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.53.7: 1.55.13: 7.55.18: 7.59.4ff.

Prajāpatī, and also a Mind-born Son of Brāhmā:

"prajāpatīnām saṁnām tu caturtho yaḥ prajāpatih |  
mānaso brahmanah putrah pulastya iti viśrutah" || (94)

Similarly in one passage in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata Pulastya is referred to as being the favourite Mind-born Son of Prajāpati Svayambhu:

"pitāmaho rāvaṇasya sāksād devaḥ prajāpatih |  
svayambhūḥ sarvalokānām prabhūḥ sraṣṭā mahātapaḥ ||  
pulastyo nāma tasyāsīn mānaso dayitah sutaḥ" | (95)

It might be inferred from such passages that since Pulastya - who is here referred to as being a Mind-born Son - appears only in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, therefore the Mind-born Sons as a whole might similarly be primarily those of the second main list: and such an inference does in fact turn out to be the case, as may be seen in examining the lists of those who are termed the Mind-born Sons of Brāhmā. It may also be noted that, in addition to such a group of Ṛsis being termed Mind-born Sons, individual Ṛsis are also on occasions given the same designation in the Mahābhārata and in the early Purāṇic texts - as in the case of Pulastya in the above passages, and as also for example in the case of Vasistha:

"yaṁ mānaśam vai pravadanti putraṁ pitāmahasyottamabuddhiyuktaṁ |  
vasiṣṭhaṁ agryaṁ tapaso nidhānaṁ yaś cāpi sūryaṁ vyatiricya bhāti" || (96)

ii. In the Mahābhārata and the early Purāṇic texts, the Mind-born Sons are variously listed as being either six, seven, eight, nine or ten in number. A reasonably clear developmental and evolutionary pattern would appear to emerge, wherein the number of Ṛsis who are included in the group of Mind-born Sons is first given as six - as

(94) Rāmāyana 5.21.6.

(95) Mahābhārata 3.258.11-12.

(96) Mahābhārata 12.337.47: cf. 1.164.1-14 etc.

in the Nānāyana passage quoted previously - and is then expanded to seven, and then again especially to nine and ten - the latter development appearing especially in the early Purāṇic texts. A clear illustration of such a process of development is provided by a passage which appears in the Mahābhārata, in the Harivaṃśa, and in the Vāyu, Brahmāṇḍa, Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas. In each of these texts a list of Mind-born Sons is given, followed by the statement that they are called the brahmāṇa "in the Purāṇa" - or according to ancient tradition - and that they have gone to niścayaṃ - namely to certainty, or to a fixed place. In the first two of these texts, these Mind-born Ṛsis are seven in number - identical with the Saptarṣis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group:

"(list of Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasistha:) sapta brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṃ gataḥ" | (97)

In all the early Purāṇic texts mentioned above, however, the Ṛsis are listed as being nine in number - namely the seven as before, together with Bhṛgu and Dakṣa; and following the enumeration of these nine Ṛsis there appears the half-śloka:

"nava brahmāṇa ity ete purāṇe niścayaṃ gataḥ" | (98)

In both sets of passages these Ṛsis are referred to as being Mind-born Sons. It would accordingly seem evident that the latter passage - which lists nine Ṛsis - represents a development of the tradition, and gives a list of Mind-born Sons which has been expanded from that found in the former passage.

A passage in the Bhīṣma Parvan of the Mahābhārata speaks of the Saptarṣis - as also of the four Manus - as being Mind-born Sons, without actually listing them:

(97) Mahābhārata 12.201.1ff : Harivaṃśa 1.28-30.

(98) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.9.61-63 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.1.5.69-71 : 1.2.9.18-19 : Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 50.1-7 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.7.3-6.

"maharsayah sapta pūrve catvāro manavas tathā |  
madbhavā mānasā jātā yeśāṃ loka imāḥ prajāḥ" || (99)

Two passages in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata -- which were quoted in the previous section -- give a list of six Ṛsis who are called Mind-born Sons of Brāhmā: wherein the Ṛsis are Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu.<sup>(100)</sup> A passage in the Vāyu and Brāhmāṇḍa Purāṇas -- also quoted previously -- similarly gives a list of six Ṛsis who are called Mind-born Sons: but this passage replaces Aṅgiras in the above list by Vasistha.<sup>(101)</sup> Both of these lists of Mind-born Sons may therefore be seen as variants of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group: which has been seen to include both Aṅgiras and Vasistha in order to make a total of seven Ṛsis. Such a list of seven Ṛsis is given for example in two passages in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata: wherein the Mind-born Sons are those who appear in and constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group.<sup>(102)</sup> This same identification of the seven Mind-born Sons with the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group is to be found again in three further passages in the Harivaṃśa.<sup>(103)</sup>

In other contexts, different identities are given to those who are called the Mind-born Sons. A further two passages in the Mahābhārata -- in the Vana and Śānti Parvans -- omit Vasistha from the group of seven, and insert Dakṣa in his place:<sup>(104)</sup> while a further passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa omits both Marīci and Atri, and inserts both Bhṛgu and Dakṣa in their place:

"bhṛgum aṅgirasam dakṣam pulastyaṃ pulahaṃ kratum |  
vasisthaṃ ca mahatejāḥ saptarṣe sapta mānasān" || (105)

(99) Mahābhārata 6.32.6.

(100) Mahābhārata 1.59.19-11 : 1.60.1-4.

(101) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.43-48 : Brāhmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.43-48.

(102) Mahābhārata 12.201.1ff : 12.327.61ff.

(103) Harivaṃśa 3.96 : 7.7-8 : 12.13-14.

(104) Mahābhārata 3.160.14-15 : 12.200.17ff.

(105) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.25.20.

One passage in the Matsya Purāṇa again gives a list of seven Sons of Brahmā, which this time excludes Kratu and inserts Bhṛgu in his place.<sup>(106)</sup> It may be noted that all of these passages speak of the Mind-born Sons as being seven in number: and that the latter implies that Bhṛgu is recognised as being one of the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. As was noted in the last section, a somewhat ambiguous passage in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas refers first to the Saptarṣis as being the seven Mind-born Sons, and then proceeds to list eight Ṛsis - namely the seven who constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, together once again with Bhṛgu - adding thereafter that they are the eight Sons of Brahmā:

"bhūyah saptarṣayas tv evam utpannāḥ sapta mānasāḥ |

....

ṛsayo jājñaire dīrghe dvitīyam iti nah śrutam ||  
 bhṛgvaṅgīrā marīciś ca pulastyah pulahaḥ kratuh |  
 atriś caiva vasiṣṭhaś ca hy aṣṭau te brahmaṇaḥ sutāḥ" || (107)

It may reasonably be inferred that this passage affords evidence of a development in the tradition of listing the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: whereby the group of Mind-born Sons becomes in such contexts expanded from seven to eight members, with the inclusion of Bhṛgu - just as these two texts, together with the Mārkaṇḍeya and Viṣṇu Purāṇas, have already been seen to list the Mind-born Sons in further contexts as being nine in number, with the inclusion of both Bhṛgu and Dakṣa.<sup>(108)</sup>

A passage in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa relates that the seven Mind-born Ṛsis of Brahmā took the Vedas from him, while his Mind-born Munis took the Purāṇas: and it then adds that Cyavana took the Purāṇa from Bhṛgu, and declared it to the Brahmins:

(106) Matsya Purāṇa 195.8-11.

(107) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.1-21 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.8-22.

(108) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.9.61-63 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.1.5.69-71 : 1.2.9.18-19 :  
 Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 50.1-7 Y Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.7.3-6 : also cf.  
 Vāyu Purāṇa 2.39.49-51 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.2.47-49.

"vedāṁ sap̣tarṣayaṣ tasmāj jag̣ṛhuṣ tasya mānasāḥ |  
 purāṇam jag̣ṛhuṣ cādyā munayaṣ tasya mānasāḥ ||  
 bhṛ̣goḥ sakāśāc̣ cyavanaṣ tenoktañ ca dvijanmanām" | (109)

Thus Bhṛ̣gu is evidently not thought of in this context as being one of the seven Mind-born Ṛsis: but he is nevertheless termed a Mind-born Muni, who received the Purāṇa rather than the Veda from Brahmā and handed it down to Cyavana and others.

The passages which have been noted so far contain lists of between six and nine Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. Further passages in the Matsya Purāṇa give three lists of ten Mind-born Sons. In one of these passages -- which appears also in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas -- the Ṛsis are the seven of the second main enumeration of the Sap̣tarsi group, together with Bhṛ̣gu, Dakṣa and Manu:

"bhṛ̣gur marīcīṛ atriś ca hy aṅgīrāḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
 manur dakṣo vasisthaś ca pulastyaś cāpi ta daśa ||  
 brahmaṇo mānasā hy ete utpannāḥ svayamīśvarāḥ" | (110)

The inclusion of Manu in such a group alongside the other Ṛsis is of infrequent occurrence in these texts: one context where this has been noted is in a passage in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata, which lists the eight Prakṛti elements as being identical with the Sap̣tarsis of the second main list of the group together with Manu -- but which does not refer to them as being Mind-born Sons of Brahmā.<sup>(111)</sup> The other two passages in the Matsya Purāṇa which list ten Mind-born Sons again include the seven Ṛsis of the second main enumeration of the Sap̣tarsi group, together this time with Bhṛ̣gu, Pracetas and Nārada:

"marīcīṛ abhavat pūrvam tato 'triṛ bhagavān ṛsiḥ |  
 aṅgīrāś cābhavat paścāt pulastyaṣ tadanantaram ||  
 tataḥ pulahaṇāmā vai tataḥ kratuḥ ajāyata |  
 pracetaś ca tataḥ putro vasisthaś cābhavat punaḥ ||

(109) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 45.23-24.

(110) Matsya Purāṇa 145.90-91 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.59.88 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2:32.96.

(111) Mahābhārata 12.327.29ff : cf. 12.322.26ff.



putro bhṛguṛ abhūt tadvan nārada 'py acirād abhūt |  
daśemān mānasān brahmā munīn putrān ajījanat" || (112)

The inclusion of Pracetas and Nārada in this context within the group of Mind-born Sons is again of infrequent occurrence among the texts being presently considered. As was seen in the last sub-section, the three Ṛsis Pracetas, Bhṛgu and Nārada are also listed in the Mānava Dharma Śāstra<sup>(113)</sup> together with the other seven Ṛsis as above - as constituting a group of ten Ṛsis and Prajāpatī: but these are not called Mind-born Sons in that context. By way of contrast, however, it may be seen that the inclusion of Bhṛgu both among the group of Mind-born Sons and also within the group of seven Ṛsis is a phenomenon of more frequent occurrence in these texts.

iii. It may thus be concluded that certain tendencies are observable within these texts in respect of the development of the tradition of listing the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. In the Rāmāyana, in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata, and in one passage in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, a group of six Ṛsis is listed as being the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā: and this number is then expanded to seven, when the Ṛsis are those who constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group. Both the Mahābhārata and the Harivaṃśa in general recognise no more than seven Ṛsis as constituting the group of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā. In the early Purāṇic texts, however, the number of Ṛsis who are termed Mind-born Sons is expanded to eight, nine and ten: and in such expanded lists of the group, seven of the Ṛsis are invariably the seven who constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group. The Ṛsis Dakṣa, Pracetas, Nārada and Manu also appear in certain of these expanded lists: while the Ṛsi Bhṛgu appears with great regularity in the majority of such lists.

(112) Matsya Purāṇa 3.5-8 : 102.19.

(113) Mānava Dharma Śāstra 1.34-35.

#### Section 4 : Conclusion.

Various conclusions have been drawn during the course of this Chapter -- notably in section 2(b)v., at the end of section 2(d), in section 2(f) and in section 3(b)iii. -- in respect of the changes and developments which occur in the lists of Ṛsis of the Saptarṣi group. For the purpose of later Chapters it is useful to summarise here in more general terms the main course of such changes and developments.

In the Rāmāyana and in certain Parvans of the Mahābhārata, that group of Ṛsis is alone called the Saptarṣis which constitutes the Saptarṣi group in the earlier literature of the Vedic Saṁhitās, the Brāhmaṇas and the Sūtras: namely the group consisting of the Ṛsis Viśvāmitra, Janadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa. However, in the Rāmāyana and in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata a further group of six Ṛsis -- who are there termed both the Prajāpatīs and the Mind-born Sons of Brahṁā -- makes its appearance: and in especially the Vana and Śānti Parvans of the Mahābhārata their number is increased to seven, and they are then termed the Saptarṣis -- thereby constituting the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, consisting of the Ṛsis Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha. Thereafter in subsequent texts -- as for example in the Harivaṁśe, in the early Purāṇic texts, and in the works of Kālidāsa and Varāhamihira -- it is this group alone which is generally referred to as the Saptarṣi group.

In both the Mahābhārata and the early Purāṇic texts, a further tendency is evident to associate certain other Ṛsis with -- and on occasions to incorporate such Ṛsis within -- the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group: the most notable instance being in the case of the Ṛsi Dhṛu. This in turn gives rise in the early Purāṇic texts to the listing of the Mind-born Sons of Brahṁā as being either eight, nine or ten in number: and in such lists,

the Rsi who is most frequently to be found added to the group of seven is once again the Rsi Bhrgu.

As has been suggested during the course of the Chapter - notably in section 2(f) - the main period of such a change within the literary sources between the two main lists of the Saptarsi group may be said to be post-Maurya and pre-Gupta: and it may most probably be ascribed in approximate terms to the period between c.100 B.C. and c.A.D. 200.

---

CHAPTER 3 : Gotra and Regional Factors operative in the Formulation  
of the Second Main List of the Saptarsi Group.

Section 1 : Introduction.

The main purpose of this Chapter is to attempt to discern some of the main factors which have had a bearing upon the change in the identities of the Rsis in the Saptarsi group which occurs between the two main lists of that group - namely on the one hand the list commencing with Viśvāmitra, and on the other hand the list commencing with Karīci, as examined in the preceding two Chapters. This will be done by examining two sets of factors which are apparent within the Saptarsi traditions. The first of these factors is that of Gotra influence: that is to say, the influences arising from and reflecting the interests and influence of a particular Brahmin group, as demonstrated especially in the formulation of the Gotra organisation and in the traditionally-outlined family or kinship relationships which are said to exist between individual Rsis who appear in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarsi group. The second of these factors is that of Regional association and influences: that is to say, the influences which may be seen to arise from the association of the Saptarsis - both individually and as a group - with a particular region or geographical locality.

By examining these two sets of factors, it is possible to discern certain causes which may be said to account in part for the change in the identities of the Rsis who are included in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarsi groups and thereby to throw further light upon the course of development of the Saptarsi traditions.

## Section 2 : Gotra Factors.

### (a) The General Nature of the Gotra Organisation.

General studies of the Gotra organisation have been undertaken by a number of previous writers, notably by Brough:<sup>(1)</sup> and while it is not the purpose of this thesis to enter upon a detailed examination of the nature of that organisation, it is nonetheless instructive to summarise some of the general characteristics which are relevant to the present investigation.

One of the main roles of the Saptar̥sis within the context of Indian social organisation is that whereby they are regarded as being the founders of the seven main Gotras or ancestral lineages of the Āryan people. The origins of the Gotra organisation have been discerned by Brough and others as being already present in embryonic form in the R̥gveda: wherein the "hymn-families" to whom composition of the hymns is attributed are not so much families as clans, and the direct ancestors of the main Gotras which are listed and set out in detail in especially the Sūtra texts.<sup>(2)</sup> The Gotra organisation - as it is presented particularly in the Śrauta Sūtra texts - is based upon the principle of tracing patrilineal descent back to a common R̥si ancestor: marriage is generally prohibited

---

(1) J. Brough - Early Brahmanical System of Gotra and Pravara: ibid - Early History of the Gotras, in JRAS 1946 pp.41ff.

(2) cf. Brough - Early Brahmanical System .... p.xiii.  
Brough and Benveniste have also suggested that the original meaning of the term ari denotes not so much "enemy" as "that part of the tribe into which a man can marry": whence the term arya would denote offspring of aris, or "descendants of legitimate marriage unions". According to this suggestion, therefore, the term Ārya would be seen as being closely related to the idea of purity of descent: the form of such descent being formally regulated, by the time of the Sūtra texts, through the tracing of descent from one of the Saptar̥sis. According to this suggestion, therefore, the concept of being an Ārya would have come to be synonymous with the idea of tracing descent from one of the Saptar̥sis. On individual R̥sis as fathers of the race, cf. e.g. R̥gveda 1.139.9; cf. Brough - Early Brahmanical System..., p.xiv : E. Benveniste - Study of Indo-European Vocabulary.

Within Gotras, and the organisation is further consolidated through the largely complementary Pravara organisation which sets forth lists of many additional Ṛsis who are also held to be the remote ancestors of families. The principal aim of both Gotra and Pravara lists is to limit the choice of marriage partners: and except in a few cases - notably in those of the Bṛghus and Āṅgirasas - it is laid down that a wife must come not only from a different Gotra from that of her husband, but that she must also have a Pravara which contains a minimal number of Ṛsi-names which coincide with those of her husband's Pravara. Although this organisation was intended to perform the function of regulating all marriage alliances, from the time of the Sūtra texts onwards it is laid down that the Kṣatriya and the Vaiśya should take the Gotra and Pravara of their Purohita - thus suggesting that by this stage the organisation was operated and directed primarily by Brahmins:

"kṣatriyāṇāṃ vaiśyāṇāṃ ca purohitapravaro bhavati" || (3)

"purohitapravaro vā syād ācāryapravaro vā rājanya |  
etenaiva tu pravareṇa vaiśyapravaro vyākhyātaḥ" || (4)

"purohitapravarāv eva rājanyavaiśyau syātām" || (5)

"sapurohitapravarās tv evaṃ nyāyena." || (6)

The Gotra organisation, which incorporated the Pravara lists, may in this respect be termed one of the defining characteristics of Brahmin society: inasmuch as all who regarded themselves as full members of that society would have sought to trace their ancestry and descent from one of the "original" seven main families, each of which was considered to have been founded by and to be descended from one of the Seven Ṛsis. Since almost all information concerning the Gotra organisation at this period is to be found in texts which were composed by - or

(3) Vaikhāṇasa Sūtra, pravarapraśna v.8.

(4) Mānava Śrauta Sūtra 11.8.10.12.

(5) Mānava Śrauta Sūtra 11.8.10.13ff.

(6) Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra 24.10.13ff.

whose composition was greatly influenced by -- Brahmins, these texts accordingly view the organisation from the standpoint of Brahmins: and it is consequently impossible to say with any certainty whether Ksatriyas or Vaiśyas in reality also claimed descent from particular family Gotras rather than from the Gotras of their family priests -- or indeed whether they were generally concerned to trace such descent in any manner.

Many Indian scholars have regarded the Rsis as being fundamentally historical individuals, who lived at a definite time in the past: while Western scholars have generally tended to take the opposite view, regarding them as fictional or mythological figures. From the standpoint of the present study, it is somewhat immaterial -- as Brough has also concluded <sup>(7)</sup> -- whether the Rsis named in the Gotra and Pravara lists were historical or fictional figures, or whether they were really the ancestors of the families who claimed descent from them. For the important point -- particularly in the present context -- is that, from at least the time of the Śrauta Sūtra texts, these Rsis were thought of as being the ancestors of such families: particularly by those who claimed to be descendants of one or another of the Seven "original" Rsis.

---

(7) cf. Brough -- Early Brahmanical System .... pp.20f.

(b) Lists of the Saptarsis as Founders of Lineages.

i. The Sūtra Texts.

This field has already been surveyed by Brough and others: and it is therefore only necessary to summarise the conclusions reached by him, and to draw further conclusions appropriate for the present context.

The earliest - and indeed the principal - expositions of the Gotra and Pravara organisations are to be found in the Sūtra texts: more specifically in the Āśvalāyana, Āpastamba, Hiranyakeśin, Baudhāyana, Mānava and Vaikhānasa Śrauta Sūtras.<sup>(8)</sup> An account is also to be found in the Pravara-pariśista of the White Yajurveda:<sup>(9)</sup> but Brough has characterised this as being a fairly recent plagiarism of the Mānava text with extensive interpolations,<sup>(10)</sup> and its value in the present context is therefore somewhat limited. It is not necessary to consider these lists in every detail in the present context: since the concern lies primarily at present not with the Rsi-descendants within each Gotra and Pravara list but rather with the seven Rsis who are regarded as being the founders of each of the seven main Gotras. This is a point on which all of these texts concur. In setting forth the lists for the different Gotras, each of these texts agrees in listing seven main Gotras: namely the Bhārgava, the Āṅgīrasa, the Ātreya, the Vaiśvāmītra or Kauśika, the Kāśyapa, the Vasiṣṭha, and the Āgastya Gotras. The only difference between these texts lies in the slightly different order in which each of these main Gotras is listed. The first two

(8) cf. Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra 12.1-15 : Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra 24.5-10 : Hiranyakeśin Śrauta Sūtra ASS 8.714ff : Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra, pariśista : Mānava Śrauta Sūtra 11.8.1-10 : Vaikhānasa Sūtra, pravarapraśna.

(9) cf. A. Weber - Die Handschriften und Verzeichnisse der Königl. Bibliothek zu Berlin, vol.1 no.271 (Weber 13.8).

(10) cf. Brough - Early Brahmanical System .... p.50.



of these seven main Gotras both contain major subdivisions. The Bhārgavas are subdivided into the Jāmadagnya-Bhārgavas and the Kevala-Bhārgavas ("just Bhārgavas", "Bhārgavas alone"): while the Āṅgirasas are subdivided into the Gautama-Āṅgirasas, the Bhāradvāja-Āṅgirasas, and the Kevala-Āṅgirasas. Thus, in the context of social organisation, the seven main Gotras are said to have been founded by Seven Ṛsis: but these Ṛsis are Bhṛgu, Āṅgiras, Atri, Viśvāmitra, Kaśyapa, Vasistha, and Agastya. The Gotra lists may therefore be said to constitute a variant list of the Saptarṣi group: wherein Bhṛgu and Agastya - although excluded from both of the main lists examined in the preceding two Chapters - are included within the group, while Jamadagni, Gautama and Bharadvāja - while still being represented within the group, just as they appear in the first main list of the Saptarṣi group - are excluded from the list of Seven Ṛsis in the Gotra organisation through being said to be descended from the Ṛsis Bhṛgu or Āṅgiras. This in itself would seem a somewhat artificial arrangement: indicating either that the (Kevala-) Bhārgavas and Āṅgirasas were subdivided into further clans at a time following that of the initial commencement of this organisation, or else that this is merely a reclassification of the organisation designed both to include these groups and also to include the Āgastyas by rearranging the Seven Ṛsis of the first or earlier list of the group (as in Chapter 1) so as to effectively "swallow-up" three of the perhaps smaller clans - namely the Jāmadagnyas, the Gautamas and the Bhāradvājas - by subordinating them to the further groups - namely to the Bhārgavas and the Āṅgirasas. It is noteworthy in this respect that in the Ṛgveda and in the Brāhmaṇa texts the Jāmadagnyas are not said to be descended from Bhṛgu: nor are the Gautamas or Bhāradvājas said to be descended from Āṅgiras. The idea of their descent from these Ṛsis would therefore appear to be one which arises only at this later stage of development in the literary texts -

---

namely in the Sūtra texts. It may be suggested that this idea is one which arises at least in part due to what the Brahmin authors of the Śrauta Sūtra texts sought to view and express as the increasing importance of the Bhārgavas and Āṅgīrasas, and the relatively decreasing importance of the Jāmadagnyas, Gautamas and Bhāradvājas: as is reflected in the ordering of these clans by the Brahmin authors of the Gotra and Pravara sections of these texts. It is again noteworthy that the second main list of the Saptarṣi group - as given especially in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts, and as discussed in Chapter 2 - omits the three Ṛsis Jāmadagni, Gautama and Bhāradvāja: while it includes Āṅgīras, together with three Ṛsis said in places to be related to or descended from Agastya (see below) - namely Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu - and it also demonstrates a tendency to attempt to include Bhṛgu within the Saptarṣi group. It may therefore be suggested that this phenomenon of the change between the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group is related in some measure to the change evident in the Śrauta Sūtra texts in the lists of the Saptarṣis who are held to be the founders of the seven main Gotras: and this in turn suggests that the change is due in part to considerations which arise from the sphere of inter-clan marriage and Brahmin lineages which is the principal concern of the Gotra organisation. In this respect the list of Saptarṣis regarded as the founders of the seven main Gotras in the Śrauta Sūtra texts may be regarded as an intermediary form between the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group which were examined in the preceding two Chapters: just as indeed the Śrauta Sūtra texts are generally accepted as being chronologically intermediate between the Vedic Saṃhitās and the Brāhmaṇas on the one hand, and the Epic and early Purāṇic texts on the other hand.

A curious inconsistency occurs within the Gotra lists in the Śrauta Sūtra texts. On the one hand the seven main Gotras are listed

---

as above - namely as having been founded by the Ṛsis Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Atri, Viśvāmitra, Kaśyapa, Vasistha, and Agastya. On the other hand; however, these same Gotra-sections of the Sūtra texts frequently contain the statement that the Saptarṣis are the seven of the first main list of the group - as examined in Chapter 1 - together with Agastya as the eighth:

"viśvāmitro jamadagnir bharadvāja 'tha gotamah |  
 atrir vasisthah kaśyapa ity ete sapta ṛsayah ||  
 tesāṃ saptarṣīṇāṃ agastyāstanānāṃ yad apatyam tad gotram ity ucyate" ||

(11)

This inconsistency is never adequately explained within these texts.

Yet it may be suggested that these texts attempt to retain that list of the Saptarṣi group which had gained general currency by the time of their composition - namely the list commencing with Viśvāmitra, as in the above quotation - while at the same time relating this list to the relative importance with which each clan or Gotra was viewed by the Brahmin promoters of the Gotra organisation at the time when these Śrauta Sūtra texts were composed, namely during the latter part of the first millenium B.C.: wherein the importance of the Bhārgava, Aṅgirasa and Āgastya Gotras was being emphasised by such Brahmin authors at the expense of the Jāmadagnya, Gautama and Dhāradvāja Gotras. Thus whatever the reasons for the formulation of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group, it may be suggested that the Brahmin authors of the Śrauta Sūtra texts attempted to bring this list more into line with what they sought to establish as the relative importance of each of the clans claiming descent from one or another of the Ṛsis. The changes thus brought about in the Śrauta Sūtra lists are then in turn reflected in the formulation in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group: such changes being brought about due partly to the influence of the Brahmin members of different Gotras who traced their own descent from a particular Ṛsi, and who

(11) e.g. Paṇiṣiṣṭa to Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra, to Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra 12.15, etc.

desired -- and were in a position to demand -- a greater recognition for their R̥si-ancestor. Examples of such influence on the part of Brahmins of particular Gotras within the R̥si traditions will be further examined in sub-section (d) below.

## ii. The Epic and Early Purāṇic Texts.

In his study of the Gotra organisation, Brough took into account the Gotra lists in the Matsya Purāṇa, but he would not appear to have noted a more general phenomenon which occurs in all the early Purāṇic texts: namely the listing of R̥si-Vamśas.

Two passages in the Mahābhārata may first be referred to, which seek to emphasise the importance of certain Gotras at the expense of others. In the first of these passages, it is said that only four Gotras originally came into being -- namely those of Aṅgiras, Kaśyapa, Vasistha, and Bhṛgu: the others having come into being subsequently due to the effects of Karma:

"mūlagotrāṇi catvāri samutpannāni pāṛthiva |  
aṅgirāḥ kaśyapaś caiva vasistho bhṛgur eva ca ||  
karmato 'nyāni gotrāṇi samutpannāni pāṛthiva |  
nāmadheyāni tapasō tēni ca grahaṇam satām" || (12)

The second passage relates that the most important Gotras are those of Bhṛgu and Aṅgiras, while the entire creation is always filled by the descendants of Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras and Kavi-Śukra:

"tadā sa vārunaḥ khyāto bhṛguḥ prasavakarmakṛt |  
āgneyas tv aṅgirāḥ śrīman kavir brāhma mahāyaśaḥ |  
bhārgavaṅgirasau loke lokasamtānalakṣaṇau ||  
ete vipravarāḥ sarve prajānām patayas trayah |  
sarvaṃ samtānam eteṣām idam ity upadhāraya" || (13)

Both of these passages may be seen in one respect as attempts to emphasise and reinforce the importance of these Gotras: such attempts

(12) Mahābhārata 12.285.17-18.

(13) Mahābhārata 13.85.34-36.

being made due at least in part to the influence of the Brahmin members of those particular Gotras. It should be kept in mind that the authors of these various texts would themselves have traced their own descent from one of the Seven Rsis: hence any such emphasis within these texts upon the importance of a particular Gotra or Rsi may be due in some measure to the desire of the authors of the text to emphasise the status of the Gotra represented by that Rsi. Explicit examples of such a process will be examined in sub-section (d) below.

On a more general level, both the Vāyu and Brahmānda Purāṇas relate in one passage that the worlds are entirely filled through the Rsi-Vaṁśas:

"rsivamśaprasaṅgena vyakulatvāt tathaiva ca" || (14)

These same two texts in a further passage single out the Kāśyapa, Vasiṣṭha, Bhārgava, Āṅgīrasa and Ātreya Gotras as containing Brahmavādin Rsis - while it is said that the Gotras of Dharma, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Kāśyapa and others are said in contrast to contain Devarsis:

"kaśyapesu vasiṣṭhesu tathā bhrgvaṅgiro 'trisu ||  
 pañcasy eteṣu jāyante gotresu brahmavādinah |  
 yasmād rsanti brahmāṇam tena brahmarsayah smṛtāḥ ||  
 dharmasyātha pulastyasya kratoś ca pulahasya ca |  
 pratyūṣasya prabhāṣasya kaśyapasya tathā punah ||  
 devarsayah sutas tesāṃ nāmatas tān nibodhata" || (15)

All of the early Purāṇic texts being considered in this study contain detailed accounts of the descendants of the main Rsis. There occur several notable similarities and divergences between each of these accounts: and as in the case of the Gotra lists in the Śrauta Sūtra texts, it is not necessary in the present context to examine the identities of every Rsi who is said to be descended

(14) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.57.38 : Brahmānda Purāṇa 1.2.29.43.

(15) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.61.81-83 : Brahmānda Purāṇa 1.2.35.90-93.

from one of the main Ṛsis, since the present concern rests rather with the identities of those who are said to be the main Ṛsis.

A passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa <sup>(16)</sup> lists the descendants of the Ṛsis Marīci, Aṅgiras, Atri, Pulastya (one of whose sons is said to be Agastya), Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha: thus this list of seven corresponds to the seven who appear in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group. A parallel passage in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa <sup>(17)</sup> - which is found also in a different form in both the Vāyu and the Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇas <sup>(18)</sup> - lists the descendants of these seven Ṛsis and also of Bhṛgu: thereby in effect attempting to add Bhṛgu to the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group. As was seen in Chapter 2, a similar process is evident also in the straightforward lists of the Saptarṣi group within these texts: where Bhṛgu is frequently listed alongside the other seven Ṛsis, sometimes conjointly with Aṅgiras in the form Bhṛgvaṅgiras. Another passage in both the Vāyu and the Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇas, however, again lists the descendants of seven Ṛsis: but these Ṛsis are Marīci, Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Vasistha, and Atri. <sup>(19)</sup> In this context, therefore, Bhṛgu has in effect been assimilated within the group of Seven Ṛsis, while Kratu has been excluded from the group. Yet another passage which appears in both the Vāyu and the Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇas <sup>(20)</sup> lists the descendants of Seven Ṛsis: where the Ṛsis are Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Kaśyapa, Atri, Vasistha, Viśvāmitra, and Agastya. It will be observed that these Seven Ṛsis are identical with the seven who are listed in the Śrauta Sūtra texts as being the founders of the seven main Gotras. The Matsya Purāṇa in two separate passages <sup>(21)</sup> lists the descendants of Seven Ṛsis: and in both of

(16) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.10.6-14.

(17) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 52.14-26.

(18) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.28.1ff : Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.11.1ff.

(19) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.47ff : Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.42ff.

(20) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.59.92-116 : Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.32.100-120.

(21) Matsya Purāṇa 145.81-118 : 195.1-202.14.

these, the Ṛsis are Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Kaśyapa, Atri, Vasistha, Viśvāmitra, and Agastya - namely once again the Seven Ṛsis listed in the Śrauta Sūtra texts as being the founders of the seven main Gotras. The second of these passages also explains that the Ṛsis Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu are known as Āgastyas - since they adopted sons of Agastya, whereafter their descendants came to be known as Āgastyas<sup>(22)</sup> (see next sub-section). It may further be noted that the Manvantara lists of Saptarṣis which are given in the Vāyu and Brahmandā Purāṇas<sup>(23)</sup> incorporate Gotra names for the members of each Saptarṣi group in the different Manvantaras: wherein the Seven Ṛsis from whom each of the Ṛsis in the different Saptarṣi groups are thought to be descended are Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Kaśyapa, Atri, Vasistha, Pulastya, and Pulaha.

It would appear possible to discern an approximate pattern of development in these lists of Ṛsi-Vamśas in the early Purāṇic texts. Those which are generally regarded as the earlier of these texts (see Introduction) - notably the Matsya Purāṇa, and also parts of the Vāyu and Brahmandā Purāṇas - list the Vamśas of those same Seven Ṛsis who are listed also in the Śrauta Sūtra texts as being the founders of the seven main Gotras - namely Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Kaśyapa, Atri, Vasistha, Viśvāmitra, and Agastya. The Vāyu and Brahmandā Purāṇas replace Viśvāmitra and Agastya in the above list by Pulastya and Pulaha in the context of the Manvantara lists of Saptarṣis: and in further contexts these two Purāṇas also list the Vamśas of the Seven Ṛsis who constitute the second main list of the Saptarṣi group - namely Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha: sometimes with, and sometimes without, the addition of Bhṛgu. The Mārkaṇḍeya and Viṣṇu Purāṇas list the Vamśas of only this second group of Ṛsis: the former text also adding Bhṛgu to the seven, the latter text omitting Bhṛgu from the seven.

(22) Matsya Purāṇa 202.7-14.

(23) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.1.15-66; 2.38.9-116 : Brahmandā Purāṇa 1.2.36.17-78; 3.4.1.9-114. See also Chapter 4.

This pattern of development in the formulation of the R̥si-Vam̐śas is thus very closely parallel to - and may indeed be said to constitute a further example of - the pattern of development which leads to the formulation of the second main list of the Saptar̥si group: wherein the list of the members of this group, which has already been seen to be in the process of alteration in the Śrauta Sūtra texts from the first main list of the group (as in Chapter 1), becomes completely transformed within these early Purāṇic texts into the second main list of the Saptar̥si group. Since this process of development occurs within the context of the listing of R̥si-Vam̐śas, and within the context of the Gotra organisation, it may reasonably be suggested that at least one major reason for the change between the two main lists of the Saptar̥si group arises from influences from within the Gotra organisation itself - namely from the influence of members of a particular Gotra seeking to emphasise the importance or status of one or another particular R̥si or R̥si-Gotra at the expense of others. It may once again be inferred that the list of Seven R̥sis who appear as the founders of lineages in the Śrauta Sūtra texts - as also in passages in the Matsya, Vāyu and Brahman̐ḍa Purāṇas - within the context of the Gotra organisation constitutes an intermediate list between the first main list of the Saptar̥si group on the one hand (as in Chapter 1) and the second main list of the Saptar̥si group on the other hand (as in Chapter 2).

This process of change and development in the identities of the individual R̥sis within the group of Saptar̥sis may also be examined at a slightly different level: through an investigation of those references which speak of the family and similar relationships which are said to exist between the various R̥sis whose status changes between the two main lists of the Saptar̥si group - most notably in the cases of those R̥sis who are included in one list but excluded from the other.



(c) Relationships between the Main Rsis.

i. Atri and Vasistha.

Atri and Vasistha are the only Rsis who appear in both of the main lists of the Saptarṣi group. Their Gotras are also listed independently of all the other Gptras.

In a similar manner, both Atri and Vasistha are quite independent of - and not said to be related in any way to - any of the other Rsis in either of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group. A slight qualification to this statement should be made in the case of Vasistha, who is said in certain contexts to share a common birth with the Rsi Agastya (who, as has already been seen, is closely connected with although not actually included within the Saptarṣi group) when the seed of Mitra-Varuna fell into a pot.<sup>(24)</sup> No instance is however given in which either Atri or Vasistha is said to be born from, or to give birth to, any of the other Rsis in either of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group.

ii. Bhṛgu - Jamadagni - Viśvāmitra.

As was seen earlier, in the Śrauta Sūtra texts the Jāmādagnya Gotra is listed as a sub-division of the Bhārgava Gotra, while the Vaiśvāmitra or Kauśika Gotra is listed independently of the other Gotras. Also, Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni appear only in the first of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group, while Bhṛgu appears on occasions in only the second of the two main lists.

In several Parvans of the Mahābhārata - and again in several of the early Purāṇic texts - there is related a myth which connects the births of both Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni with Bhṛgu. The myth may be summarised in the following form. R̥cika Bhārgava obtained as

(24) e.g. R̥gveda 7.33.10-13 : Nirukta 5.13-14 : Brhaddevatā 5.143-160 : Rāmāyaṇa 7.55.19 - 7.57.21 : Mahābhārata 12.291.7ff: 13.143.18 : Matsya Purāṇa 61.18-53: 201.1-39 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.5.1ff etc.

his wife Satyavatī the daughter of Gādhi Kauśika. Bhṛgu told Satyavatī that, in order to obtain a son, she and her mother should both take a bath, embrace respectively an Udumbara and an Aśvattha tree, and drink Camu containing respectively rice and milk, in order to obtain the desired types of son (a Brahmin for Satyavatī, a Kṣatriya for her mother). Satyavatī and her mother performed these ceremonies as instructed by her father-in-law Bhṛgu: but each embraced the wrong tree and drank from the wrong Camu vessel. When Bhṛgu returned, he told Satyavatī that there would be born to her a son who, though a Brahmin, would be fit to be a Kṣatriya: while her mother would bear a son who, though a Kṣatriya, would be fit to be a Brahmin. Upon entreaty, Satyavatī obtained the wish from Bhṛgu that this should occur to her grandson rather than to her son: and accordingly she bore Jamadagni, whose son was the warrior Paraśurāma -- while her mother gave birth to Viśvāmitra, who renounced his Kṣatriyahood and became a Brahmin.<sup>(25)</sup> This myth accordingly makes explicit the descent of Jamadagni from Bhṛgu -- a descent implied also by the appellation Bhārgava very frequently given to Paraśurāma. Jāmādagnya. The myth also suggests a close connection between Viśvāmitra and Bhṛgu: and one version of this myth explicitly states that it has been related in order to explain the connection between the Bhārgavas and the Kauśikas:

"etat te kathitam sarvaṁ aśeṣeṇa mayā nrpa |  
bhṛgūnām kuśikanām ca prati sambandhakāraṇam" || (26)

It may accordingly be inferred that the descent of Jamadagni from Bhṛgu, although not mentioned in the Vedic texts prior to the Sūtras, has become well-accepted in the Epic texts: hence that the status of the Rsi Jamadagni was regarded as being in some sense subordinate to that of Bhṛgu. It may further be inferred that a fairly close

(25) cf. Mahābhārata 3.115.9-13: 12.49.1ff: 13.4.1ff: 13.56.1ff: Harivamśa 23.82-94 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.66.35-77 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.29.64-99 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.7.1ff.

(26) Mahābhārata 13.56.19.

connection was thought to exist between the Bhārgava and Vaiśvāmītra Gotras, which in turn gave rise to the above mythical explanation of this connection: even though, once again, no such connection is mentioned in the earlier literature. It may be suggested that one of the reasons why neither Jamadagni nor Viśvāmītra appears in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group may be linked in part to the subordinate role within the Gotra system of these Ṛṣi-Gotras and of those who traced their descent from these Ṛṣis - in the view of the Brahmin proponents of the Gotra system - as compared with the role of Bhṛgu and of the Bhārgavas. In other words, it may be suggested that those claiming to be Gotra-descendants of Viśvāmītra and Jamadagni did not hold sufficient influence over the formulation of these traditions to continue to have their Ṛṣis included in the group of Saptarṣis: while the influence formerly held by the members of these Gotras had been appropriated in part by the members of the Bhārgava Gotra, who - as has been seen in the last sub-section and in Chapter 2 - were more successful in having their Ṛṣi-ancestor included in the group of Saptarṣis.

### iii. Aṅgiras - Gautama - Bharadvāja.

As was seen earlier, in the Śrauta Sūtra texts both the Gautamas and the Bhāradvājas are listed as sub-divisions of the Aṅgirasa Gotra. Also, while Gautama and Bharadvāja appear only in the first main list of the Saptarṣi group, Aṅgiras appears only in the second main list of the group.

In several contexts in both the Epic and the early Purāṇic texts it is related that Bharadvāja was the son of Brhaspati - who was in turn the son of Aṅgiras.<sup>(27)</sup> Similarly Gautama-Dīrghatamas (see Chapter 1 section 4(e)) is in places said to be the son of Brhaspati

---

(27) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.121.12-18: 3.209.1-9: 13.31.22ff : Harivamśa 23.49-53 : Matsya Purāṇa 49.14-35 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.19.1ff : Brhaddevata 5.102-103.

and Mamata, while Bharadvāja is said to be the half-brother of Gautama-Dīrghatamas.<sup>(28)</sup> Thus the subordination of both of these Rsis to the Rsi Āṅgiras within the context of the Gotra organisation may be said also to have become generally accepted by at least the Epic texts, as reflected in such mythical accounts. In this instance it may once again be suggested that the exclusion of Gautama and Bharadvāja from the second main list of the Saptarṣi group is in part related to the inclusion therein of Āṅgiras: due in part to the subordinate role occupied by the former two Gotras - in the view of the Brahmin proponents of the Gotra organisation - as compared with the increasingly important and influential role occupied by the members of the Āṅgirasa Gotra.

#### iv. Marīci - Kaśyapa.

As was seen earlier, in the Śrauta Sūtra texts the Kaśyapa Gotra is listed independently of any other: while Marīci is not mentioned in the Gotra lists. Also, while Kaśyapa appears in only the first main list of the Saptarṣi group, Marīci appears in only the second main list of the group.

Throughout the Epic and early Purāṇic texts, Kaśyapa is on innumerable occasions termed the son of Marīci.<sup>(29)</sup> As in the preceding instances, therefore, it may be suggested that the exclusion of Kaśyapa from the second main list of the Saptarṣi group is related in some measure to the inclusion therein of Marīci. It may also be noted in this connection that, in the most frequently-encountered forms of the lists of the Saptarṣi group, both Marīci and Kaśyapa

(28) e.g. Mahābhārata 12.328.44ff : Brahmandā Purāṇa 2.3.74.33-94 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.33-97 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.19.1ff : Matsya Purāṇa 48.32-88: 49.14-35.

(29) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.69.17: 2.102.3ff: 1.45.1ff : Mahābhārata 1.59.9ff: 1.60.33-35: 12.200.1-46: 12.201.8: 13.47.61: 13.85.15ff: 13.151.12 : Harivamśa 3.45-49: 31.100-109 : Brahmandā Purāṇa 1.2.13.78-80: 1.2.38.1: 2.3.1.113ff: 2.3.3.84-118: 2.3.4.34: 2.3.5.35: 2.3.7.463ff: 3.4.2.32-34 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.30.72-73: 2.3.1: 2.4.109ff: 2.5.101: 2.6.43-44: 2.6.76: 2.8.334ff : Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 104.1-9 : etc.

are placed in an ultimate position in each of the respective lists: Kaśyapa usually being enumerated last in the first main list of the Saptarṣi group, Marīci usually being enumerated first in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group. This again may be seen to suggest that the role of the one Ṛṣi in the one list has in some measure been replaced by that of the other Ṛṣi in the other list. It may further be suggested - as in the preceding instances - that this process may be taken to indicate in some measure the assimilation of influence of those regarding themselves as descendants of Kaśyapa - and as members of the Kāśyapa Gotra - by those regarding themselves as descendants of Marīci. This in turn raises a further point: since, unlike the Bhārgavas and the Āṅgīrasas - both of whom are met with already in the Ṛgveda and in subsequent texts - the Mārīcas appear within these texts only from the Rāmāyaṇa onwards. It must therefore be asked, who then were the Mārīcas whose importance may be inferred to be such that the Ṛṣi Marīci from whom they claimed descent came to be identified as the father of Kaśyapa - the latter of whom is himself famed throughout the Epic and early Purāṇic texts with the exalted status as father of all Gods, Demons and Men. This fame of the Ṛṣi Kaśyapa might otherwise be thought to have been sufficient to establish him as one of the foremost - if not indeed as the foremost - of the Ṛṣis: and it is therefore somewhat surprising in this respect to find that his place in the earlier list of the Saptarṣi group would appear to have been usurped by a Ṛṣi who is all but unknown to the authors of the earlier literature - resulting in the exclusion of Kaśyapa and the inclusion of Marīci in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group.

Both an individual Mārīca and the Mārīcas as a group are referred to in several manuscript versions of the Kiśkindha Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa as "the Sons of the Mahārṣi", and are said to act as helpers of Rāma and Sugrīva.<sup>(30)</sup> In addition, an individual Mārīca

(30) Rāmāyaṇa 4.41.1, 845\* : 4.41.3, 850\*.

companion and helper of Rāvana, who transforms himself into a deer in order to assist Rāvana in the abduction of Sītā, and who is slain by Rāma. (31) This Mārīca is most frequently referred to as being a Rākṣasa: but one passage in the Bāla Kāṇḍa also relates that he was originally born as a Yakṣa, and was only subsequently transformed into a Rākṣasa by the curse of Agastya:

"kasya cit tv atha kālasya yaksī putram vyajāyata |  
 māricam nāma durdharsam yah śāpād rākṣaso 'bhavat ||  
 sunde tu vihate rāma agastyam rsisattṣamam |  
 tātakā saha putrena pradharsayitum icchati ||  
 rākṣasatvam bhajasveti māricam vyājahāra sah |  
 agastyah paramakruddhas tātakam api śaptavān" || (32)

It must here be acknowledged that this Mārīca is therefore by implication associated not only with Agastya but also with Pulastya - who is himself on occasions referred to as the father of Agastya (see below): since Mārīca is cursed by Agastya, and since both the Yakṣas and the Rākṣasas are most frequently said to be descended from Pulastya (33) - although in a few primarily Purāṇic passages they are also said to be sons of Kośyapa. (34) Thus the identity of Mārīca - as indeed of Marīci and of his descendants the Mārīcas - may be further considered in connection with Pulastya.

#### v. Agastya - Pulastya - Pulaha - Kṛatu - Marīci.

As was seen earlier, in the Śrauta Sūtra texts the Āgastyas are listed independently of the other Gotras: while none of the other Rsis mentioned above are listed in the Gotra lists. Also, in the earlier list of the Saptarṣi group Agastya is most frequently said to be the eighth Rsi, associated with but rarely included within

(31) especially in the Aranya Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana.

(32) Rāmāyana 1.24.8-12.

(33) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.4.6: 1.19.15ff: 5.21.4-7: 6.49.9ff: 6.68.12: 7.4.4ff: Mahābhārata 1.60.1ff: 2.28.50: 3.175.2: 3.258.11-16: 3.259.1-8: 5.107.12: 9.30.10: 12.326.87: Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.7.162ff: 2.3.8.38ff: Vāyu Purāṇa 2.8.139ff: 2.9.31ff: etc.

(34) e.g. Harivaṃśa 3.92: Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 104.1-9: Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.21.24: etc.

the group: while in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, Agastya is once again excluded from the group, but all of the other four Ṛsis are included within the group.

It may be pointed out that, astronomically, Agastya is identified with the star Canopus -- as opposed to the Saptarṣis, who constitute the constellation Ursa Major. This is evident in various astronomical works, which give the position of Agastya relative to other constellations: as for example in the Sūrya Siddhānta, which states that Agastya is 80° south from the end of Gemini:

"aśītibhāgair yāmyāyām agastyo mithunāntagaḥ |  
vimśe ca mithunasyāṁśe mṛgavyādho vyavasthitaḥ" || (35)

Hence in astronomical terms it may be deemed unlikely that Agastya should be assimilated within the Saptarṣi group once his astronomical association and identity had become accepted and well-established.

A passage in the Matsya Purāṇa lists the Āgastyas as one of seven main Gotras: and it then adds that those born in the families of Pulastya, Paulaha and Kratu are also known as Āgastyas:

"ataḥ param agastyasya vaksye vaṁśodbhavān divijān |  
....  
paulastya paulahaś caiva kratuvāṁśabhavās tathā" || (36)

At this point in the passage the inevitable question is asked -- why are these three Ṛsis included in the Āgastya Gotra?

"pulahasya pulastasya kratoś caiva mahātmanah |  
agastyasya tathā caiva katham vaṁśas tad ucyatām" || (37)

The passage thereafter continues to give an explanation of this phenomenon -- to the effect that each of these three Ṛsis became dissatisfied with their own sons, and instead adopted a son of Agastya: whereafter the Paulastyas, Paulahas and Krātus became known as Āgastyas.<sup>(38)</sup> In this context, therefore, the three Ṛsis Pulastya,

(35) Sūrya Siddhānta 8.10 : cf. 9.12-15: 13.8.9 : Brhatsaṁhitā 12.1-21 : Mahāsiddhānta 10.8 : Pañcasiddhāntikā 14.40-41 : etc.

(36) Matsya Purāṇa 202.1-2.

(37) Matsya Purāṇa 202.7.

(38) Matsya Purāṇa 202.8-13.

Pulaha and Kratu are regarded as being of subordinate importance to the Rsi Agastya, and to the Āgastya Gotra. In many other contexts, however, the importance of Agastya would appear to have been in some measure replaced by that of these other three Rsis, and of Pulastya in particular -- since Agastya is said to have been born as Dattoli, a son of Pulastya, having been known as Agastya in an earlier birth:

"prītyāṃ pulastyabhāryāyāṃ dattolis tatsuto 'bhavat |  
pūrvajanmani so 'gastyaḥ smṛtaḥ svāyambhuve 'ntare" || (39)

This would again tend to suggest a development within the tradition, whereby a Rsi -- or Rsis -- who is virtually unknown in the earlier literature gradually comes to usurp the role of another Rsi which is of some importance in the earlier literature. It will be noted that in all such cases as those which have been examined in this sub-section, this process is invariably enacted by terming one Rsi the Father of another -- even though no such relationship may be evident in the earlier literature, as for example in the cases of Marīci as the father of Kaśyapa and Dhṛgu as the father of Jamadagni. Thereafter, once the relationship of paternity has become established, the Rsi termed "Father" is inevitably accredited with a greater status than that of his "Son", and his reputation is thereby consolidated -- as is by implication that also of those regarding themselves as the Gotra-descendants of that Rsi.

One further reference to any form of relationship between these various Rsis occurs in a passage in the Visnu Purāṇa, where it is said that Pulastya was the brother of Pulaha:

"samprāptaś ca tadā tatra pulastyo brahmaṇaḥ sutah |  
pitamahena dattārgḥaḥ kṛtāsanaparigrahaḥ |  
mām uvāca mahābhāgo maitreya pulahāgrajaḥ" || (40)

(39) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 52.22-23 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.11.26 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.28.21 : Visnu Purāṇa 1.10.9.

(40) Visnu Purāṇa 1.1.26-27.



Thus, since this same text relates elsewhere that Agastya was born as a son of Pulastya, Pulaha is accordingly to be regarded as an uncle of Agastya in this context.

In discussing the four Rsis Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Marīci, it is to be noted that a markedly mythical element pervades the accounts of their descendants. Scarcely a single myth is related of the Rsi Pulaha throughout the texts being considered in this study: while his descendants are usually listed as the Prajāpati Kardama, and as deer, vicious toothed creatures, ghosts, serpents, piśacas, śrṅgaras, elephants, monkeys, kinṇaras, mayus, kimpurūṣas and similar<sup>(41)</sup>—namely primarily animals and demons of various kinds. Kratu is generally renowned as being the father of the Vālakhilyas and of the Somapas, who are said to have had neither wives nor children, preferring to be ūrdhvaretas or ascetic.<sup>(42)</sup> As has already been mentioned, Pulastya is said to be the father of both the Yakṣas and the Rākṣasas: among whom are most notably Viśravas and Kuvera (Yakṣas), and also Rāvaṇa, Vibhīṣana, Kumbhakarna, Mārīca, and all of the other main Rākṣasa opponents of Rāma who appear both in the Rāmāyaṇa itself and also in subsequent contexts. It is clearly not the purpose of — nor within the scope of — this study to enter upon a consideration of the possible historicity of the Rāmāyaṇa story and of the peoples therein: nor to consider the question of whether the Rākṣasas depicted therein as the opponents of Rāma should be taken to represent a stylised and mythological version of the early inhabitants of southern India, as viewed by the northerners. Such possibilities should, however, be taken into account, particularly when attempting to assess the degree to which

(41) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.60.1-15 : Harivaṃśa 13.58-59 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.11.23: 1.2.35.94ff: 2.3.7.171ff: 2.3.8.70-71: 2.3.10.75-93 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.28.18: 1.61.84ff: 2.8.198ff: 2.9.64ff: 2.11.68-69: Matsya Purāṇa 15.20ff : Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 52.14ff : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.10.6ff.

(42) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.60.1-15 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.11.36: 1.2.35.94ff: 1.2.36.12: 2.3.8.72: 2.3.10.55-53 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.28.30: 1.61.84ff: 2.1.8-12: 2.9.66: 2.11.50-51 : Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 52.14ff : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.10.6ff.

any kind of social or Gotra influences may have been operative in formulating the traditions of the above-mentioned Rsis: that is to say, when attempting to decide whether the inclusion of these Rsis in the second main list of the Saptarsi group may be said to be due in part to the role or influence of those who traced their own descent from one or another of these Rsis. In the present context it may therefore simply be concluded that the inclusion of the Rsis Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu - as also in some measure Marīci - in the second main list of the Saptarsi group is in some degree connected with the role and status of the Rsi Agastya: who is himself, as has already been seen, closely connected with the first main list of the Saptarsi group, and the importance of whose Gotra-descendants is acknowledged in the Śrauta Sūtra and subsequent texts through the independent status given to the Āgastya Gotra as one of the seven main Gotras. Certain further and complementary connections between these various Rsis will be noted below in section 3, in connection with the geographical region with which each of these Rsis is associated: and further inferences will be drawn in the concluding section (section 4).

(d) Gotra Influences in the Rsi Traditions.

It has so far been suggested that the change in enumeration which occurs between the two main lists of the Saptarsi group may be in some measure accounted for on the basis of the influence of the Brahmin members of individual Gotras over the development of these traditions. In order to further illustrate the presence of this type of influence within the literary texts, a select number of passages may be cited which make explicit the fact of some form of Gotra-influence operative in the formulation of these traditions: or, more precisely, which demonstrate the attempts of members of a Rsi-Gotra to improve - directly or indirectly - the status of either a Rsi or a Rsi-Gotra: or to account for the status of a particular Gotra: or to undermine the status of a Rsi or of a Rsi-Gotra.

Several versions are given throughout these texts of the myth of the adoption of Śunahśepa by Viśvāmitra. In a version in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, it is related that the fifty eldest sons of Viśvāmitra did not agree to this adoption, whereupon he cursed them: whence it is said that most of the Dasyus are descended from Viśvāmitra, these including such peoples as the Andhras, Pundras and others who live on the borders:

"ta ete 'ndhrāḥ punḍrāḥ śabarāḥ pulindā mūtibā ity udantya  
bahavo bhavanti vaiśvāmitrā dasyūnāṃ bhūyisthā" | (43)

Another version of this myth, this time in the Rāmāyana, relates the same basic story, adding that the sons were cursed to become Śvamāṃsa-bhojinās or eaters of dogs' flesh:

"tesaṃ tad vacanam śrutvā putrāṇāṃ munipuṅgavaḥ |  
krodhasamrakṣtanayano vyāhartum upacakrame ||

....

śvamāṃsabhojināḥ sarve vāsisthā iva jātiṣu |  
pūrṇam varṣasahasraṃ tu prthivyāṃ anuvatsyatha" || (44)

(43) Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 7.18.

(44) Rāmāyana 1.61.14-16.

A further version in the Mahābhārata again relates that these sons were cursed to be Śvapacas or those who cook dogs:

"nābhivādayate jyestham devarātām narādhipa |  
putrāḥ pañcaśataś cāpi śaptāḥ śvapacatām gataḥ" || (45)

Such references may be interpreted in one sense as attempts to account for the fact that such apparently "outcaste" groups as Dasyus or Śvapacas were nonetheless thought to be descended from Viśvāmitra, or were thought to be members of the Vaiśvāmitra or Kauśika Gotra. A similar situation is evident in the case of certain descendants of the Rsi Gotama. A passage in the Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa relates that, after the death of Yavakṛita (the son of Bharadvāja according to the Epic texts<sup>(46)</sup>), his father cursed that the descendants of Maundibha might be humbled - at which point the text adds that "these are the descendants of Gotama, who live in submission":

"tam ha tac chaśapa |  
marisyaty ahāyam rājanyabandhuḥ paro ime maundibhā bhaviṣyantīti |  
ta ete parābhūta gotamā bruvānaś caranti" || (47)

A somewhat curious passage in the Vāyu and Brahmānda Purāṇas again makes reference to certain Vaiśvāmitras - as also to certain Āgastyas, Paulastyas and others - terming them Rākṣasa clans:

"yaksanām caiva sarvesam paulastyā ye ca rāksasāḥ ||  
āgastyavaiśvāmitranām krūrānām brahmarāksasām |  
....  
tesām aidavido rāja paulastyah savyapiṅgalah |  
itare ye yajñajusas te vai rāksoganaś trayah ||  
yātudhānā brahmadhānā vārttāś caiva divācarāḥ |  
....  
paulastyā nairṛtāś caiva āgastyāḥ kauśikāś tathā |  
ity etāḥ sapta tesām vai jātayo rāksasāḥ smṛtāḥ" || (48)

It may again be suggested that such references are seeking in some

(45) Mahābhārata 13.3.8.

(46) e.g. Mahābhārata 3.135.7 - 3.139.24.

(47) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 2.272.

(48) Brahmānda Purāṇa 2.3.8.58-69 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.9.52-63.

measure to account for the fact that the Goṭra-descendants of these Rsis included those regarded as "demons" or "outcastes". It may be noted here that further passages relate how, for example, individual Rsis or their descendants came to dwell or be present among such outcaste groups: as in the case of Viśvāmitra, who during a drought and famine enters a Candāla village and steals a piece of dog's flesh in order to feed his wife and son:<sup>(49)</sup> and again in the case of a certain Gautama who departs from Madhyadeśa to travel northwards and settle in the land of the Mlecchas, eventually becoming himself like a Mleccha - much to the disgust of his Brahmin friends.<sup>(50)</sup> In such cases as these it may be seen that by explaining how an individual Rsi came to live among such peoples, the myth in effect offers an explanation of why such peoples might have come to be regarded as in some sense related to or descended from that Rsi.

A passage in the Harivaṃśa relates of certain Brahmin sons of Bharadvāja that they became polluted or degraded through their transgressions - but that they will nonetheless be reborn in the land of the Kurus as foremost sons of Kuśika (i.e. as Vaiśvāmitras) and will once again become Brahmins:

"āsan pūrvayuge tāta bharadvājātmaajā dvijāḥ |  
yogadharmam anuprāpya bhrastā duṣcaritena vai ||  
....  
tatas te yogavibhrastā deveṣu suciroṣitāḥ |  
jātāḥ kauśikadāyādāḥ kurukṣetre nararṣabha ||  
....  
brāhmaṇyaṃ pratilapsyanti tato bhūyaḥ svakarmanā" || (51)

The passage may be said to attempt both to account for the degraded status of certain of the descendants of Bharadvāja, and also to suggest some connection between the descendants of Bharadvāja and those of Viśvāmitra. As has been seen in previous context, other passages also attempt to account for a connection between the descendants

(49) e.g. Mahābhārata 12.139.12ff.

(50) e.g. Mahābhārata 12.162.1ff.

(51) Harivaṃśa 14.1-7.

of Viśvāmitra and those of other Ṛsis: as for example in the case of the Epic and Purāṇic myth which tells of the births of Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni from Satyawatī and her mother, one version of which states explicitly that the myth is related in order to explain the connection between the descendants of Viśvāmitra and those of Bhṛgu:

"etat te kathitam sarvam aśesena mayā nrpa |  
bhṛgūnām kuśikānām ca prati sambandhakāraṇam" || (52)

It has again been noted previously that a passage in the Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa contains a myth wherein Agastya follows the other Ṛsis to Svargaloka - whereafter it is said that, just as he was the last to go, so too the Āgastyas are outside or beyond the Kuru-Pañcālas:

"tasmād v agastayo bahirdheva kurupañcālebhyah" | (53)

Such passages as this suggest that in at least some instances the very format of a myth has been in some measure directed by an attempt to connect what is said therein not only with an individual Ṛsi, but also with those who claimed to be - or who were regarded as being - the descendants of that Ṛsi. Such attempts are made still more explicitly in certain contexts: as for example in the several versions of a myth which relates in diverse ways that Vasistha was privileged in having revealed to him a certain Brāhmaṇa - for which reason it is said that in former times only those who were Vāsisthas might become Brahmins:

"ṛsayo vā indram pratyakṣan nāpaśyantam vasisthah pratyakṣam  
apaśyat so 'brevid brāhmaṇam te vakṣyami yathā tvaṭpurohitāḥ  
prajāḥ prajānīsyante 'tha metarebhyā ṛsibhyo nā pravoca iti  
tasma etān stomabhāgān abravīt tato vasisthapurohitāḥ prajāḥ

(52) Mahābhārata 13.56.19.

(53) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 2.221.

prājāyanta tasmād vāsistho brahmā kāryah praiva jāyate" || (54)

"purā vyāhrtīr vasisthā eva vidus tasmād ha sma purā vāsistha  
eva brahmā bhavati yatas tv enā apy etarhi ya eva kaścādhīte  
tato 'py etarhi ya eva kaśca brahmā bhavati sa ha vai brahmā  
bhavitum arhati sa vā brahmann ity āmantritah pratiśrūyād  
ya evam etā vyāhrtīr veda" || (55)

In a similar manner it is said in further contexts that it was for  
this reason that the Ikṣvākus prospered, having Vasistha as their  
Purohita:

"ikṣvākavo mahīpālā lebhire prthivīm imām |  
purohitavaram prāpya vasistham ṛsisattamam" || (56)

Or conversely that the Bharatas prospered for this reason:

"vasistha .... indram pratyakṣam apaśyat sa enam abravīd brāhmaṇam  
te vakṣyāmi yathā tvatpurohitā bharatā prajāniṣyante .... tato  
vai vasisthapurohitā bharataḥ prājāyanta" || (57)

Just as Vasistha appears in both main lists of the Saptarṣi group,  
and the Vāsistha Gotra remains independent of all the other Gotras,  
so too the pre-eminence of Vasistha as compared with the other Ṛsis  
is maintained in various forms throughout these texts. Several such  
instances have been noted in the first two Chapters: and a few  
further examples may be cited in demonstration of this point.  
The entire Īrṣeya Upaniṣad is designed to relate how Vasistha brought  
enlightenment to the Ṛsis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja and  
Gautama, who thereafter became his pupils. Here the pre-eminent  
status of Vasistha is quite clearly being sought to be demonstrated,  
in order to establish him as being in some sense superior to the  
other Ṛsis. Throughout the Mahābhārata Vasistha is frequently described

- (54) Taittirīya Saṁhitā 3.5.2 : cf. Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 2.2.13 :  
Sadvimśa Brāhmaṇa 1.5.1-3 : Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa 3.5.1-3 :  
Bṛhaddevatā 5.143-160.
- (55) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 12.6.1.38ff.
- (56) Mahābhārata 1.164.10 : cf. Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.48.29-30 :  
Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.2.1ff.
- (57) Pañcaviṁśa Brāhmaṇa 15.5.24.

as being the leader of Brahmins, the equal of Brahmā, the foremost of the Saptarṣis, the incarnation of Dharma and Indra, and similar: (58) and since this type of appellation is not generally accorded in such a marked degree to any of the other Ṛsis, it may be inferred that such epithets are once again designed to give Vasistha a pre-eminent status in comparison with the other Ṛsis. In the earlier texts - and more specifically in several Brāhmaṇa passages - Jamadagni is on several occasions said to have gained success through sacrifice, on account of which his descendants flourished and became so numerous that no two descendants of Ūrva knew each other:

"jamadagnir vā akāmayata bahuh prajayā paśubhiḥ prajāyeyeti  
sa etam caturātram yajñam apaśyat tam āharat tenāyajata  
tato vai sa bahuh prajayā paśubhiḥ prajāyatāpi hāsyā dvāv  
aurvau prajāyām na samjājñate" | (59)

Following from this, a passage in the Taittirīya Saṃhitā further relates that Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni were on one occasion quarreling with Vasistha: and that Jamadagni saw the Vihavya hymn, thereby gaining the power and strength of Vasistha:

"viśvāmitrajamadagnī vasisthenāspardhetām sa etaj jamadagnir  
vihavyam apaśyat tena vai sa vasisthasyendriyam vīryam avṛṅkta" || (60)

The passage might be interpreted on one level as an indication in these earlier texts of the relative importance of Jamadagni - and of the Jamadagnya Gotra - in relation to Vasistha: and it is noteworthy in this respect that similar types of myths - according to a greater status to Jamadagni than to Vasistha - are not encountered in the later literature of the Epic and early Purāṇic texts. Such an interpretation, involving the Gotra as well as the Ṛsi himself, is in a further context explicitly stated by Śaunaka to be the case.

(58) e.g. Mahābhārata 5.104.1-26 : 7.5.26: 9.47.1ff: 12.122.31: 12.201.1ff: 12.327.47: 14.27.19: etc.

(59) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 2.285 : cf. Taittirīya Saṃhitā 7.1.9 : Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 21.10.5-6.

(60) Taittirīya Saṃhitā 3.1.7.3 : cf. 5.4.11.



Śaunaka relates in one passage in the Brhaddevatā that Viśvāmitra was once deprived of consciousness by Śakti the son of Vasistha during a quarrel: but that he was revived by the Jñadagnis. For this reason, adds Śaunaka, certain ślokaś in the R̥gveda (3.53.21-24) are traditionally held to be hostile to the Vāsisthas: and any Vāsistha who listens to them acquires great guilt by doing so:

"parāś catasro yās tv atra vasisthadvesinyah smṛtāḥ ||  
 viśvāmitrena tāḥ proktā abhiśāpā iti smṛtāḥ |  
 dviśadvesāś tu tāḥ proktā vidyāś caivābhicārikāḥ ||  
 vasisthāś tā na śṛṇvanti tad ācāryakasammataḥ |  
 kīrtanāc chravanād vāpi mahādosaś ca jāyate" || (61)

It may thus once again be observed that in this context a tradition related of an individual R̥si -- in this case of Vasistha -- is explicitly said to have some form of connection with or relevance to those who regarded themselves or were regarded by others as being descendants of that R̥si.

Similar types of myth are related also of other R̥sis: and most notably of the R̥si Atri. It is said for example in several contexts that, because Atri repelled the darkness of Svarbhānu and restored light to the worlds, therefore Ātreyaś should be given gold as a Dakṣiṇā at the sacrifice -- and that they should receive the first Dakṣiṇā:

"tam hovāca varam vṛṇīsveti sa hovāca dakṣiṇīyā me prajā syād iti  
 tasmād ātreyaḥ prathamadakṣiṇā yajñe dīyanta iti brāhmaṇam" || (62)

"svarbhānū vā āsura ādityam tamasāvidhyat tam devū na vyojanams  
 te 'trim upādhāvams tasyātrir bhāsenā tamo 'pāhan .... ||  
 tasmād ātreyaḥ candreneccchanty atrir hi tasya jyotiḥ" || (63)

Thus in these instances once again it may be seen that a tradition which is related of an individual R̥si is explicitly connected with his descendants: and this may be said to reflect in some measure

(61) Brhaddevatā 4.105-110.

(62) Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.2.17 : cf. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 4.3.4.21.

(63) Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 6.6.8-11.

the status or interests of those descendants of the Rsi, particularly since the extant form of many of the above passages constitutes a type of explanation or justification for the performance of a particular custom involving the descendants of a particular Rsi.

In all such cases as those quoted above in this sub-section, it may be inferred that a conscious attempt is being made in these passages - on the part of the members of one or another particular Rsi-Gotra -- to decrease, increase, or simply account for the status and rank of a particular Rsi and/or of his Gotra-descendants.

---

(e) Conclusion.

It may be inferred from the observations made in this section that the traditions of the Saptarṣis - both of the group and of the individual Ṛṣi-members of the group - demonstrate in places certain characteristics and features which may be taken to indicate that they have been formulated for the express purpose of accounting for the status or rank not merely of an individual Ṛṣi but also of the descendants of that Ṛṣi. In this respect it may be inferred that these traditions have been influenced in some measure or degree - and have developed due to such influence - by the Brahmin members of a particular Ṛṣi-Gotra seeking either to emphasise the status of their own Ṛṣi-ancestor, or to denigrate the status of another Ṛṣi and his descendants: such a purpose being explicitly stated as such in certain of the previously-quoted passages in the last sub-section. It may therefore be quite reasonably inferred that the changes which occur in the status of any individual Ṛṣi reflect in part and in some measure changes in the status of the descendants of that Ṛṣi: and, by extension, that the changes which occur between the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group - wherein individual Ṛṣis are for example included in the one list but excluded from the other list - reflect once again in some measure changes in the status of the descendants of such Ṛṣis as appear in either of these lists.

As was seen in sub-section (b), the most notable changes which occur between the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group relate to the omission of the Ṛṣis Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama and Kaśyapa from the second list, and to the inclusion of the Ṛṣis Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu and Marīci - and also in part Bhṛgu - in the second list. As was seen in sub-sections (b) and (c), such changes may in turn be related to the variant lists of the seven main Gotras which are given in the Śrauta Sūtra, Epic and early Purāṇic texts: and also to the family and other relationships which

are said in various contexts to exist between each of these individual Rsis. In this respect the omission of one Rsi may be said to be in some measure related to the inclusion of another Rsi, and vice versa: and where this occurs, it is most frequently the case that a Rsi who is included in the first main list of the Saptarsi group but excluded from the second main list is referred to in the Epic and Purāṇic texts as being the Son of one of the Rsis in the second main list. The very fact that such inclusions and imissions are evident in the context of the listing of Rsi-Gotras and Rsi-Vamśas suggests of itself that they are in some measure related to the changing status of the descendants of one or another Rsi: and as has been seen especially in sub-section (d), certain texts state explicitly that a myth or tradition is in places related of a Rsi or of the descendants of a Rsi precisely in order to illustrate or account for the status not only of the Rsi himself but more especially of the descendants of that Rsi. In this respect, therefore, it may be concluded at this stage that the traditions of the Saptarsis have been influenced in some measure - particularly in respect of the formulation of the second main list of the Saptarsi group - by considerations arising from the context of the Brahmin Gotra organisation: whereby the Gotra-descendants of an individual Rsi sought to establish their own status through manipulating the status ascribed either to their own Rsi-ancestor or else to other Rsis in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarsi group - which in turn gives rise to the inclusion or omission of individual Rsis in and from either of these lists. Thus the changes which occur between the two main lists may in some measure be related to changes which were occurring in the status ascribed to each of the Rsi-Gotras, particularly by the Brahmin promoters of the Gotra organisation: and it may be pointed out that, conversely, such changes as occur in the lists may also be interpreted as helping to throw some light upon

---

such changes as may actually have been occurring in society during the period covered by the texts in question. This latter point is one which will be taken up again in the general conclusion of this Chapter (section 4).

---

Section 3 : Regional Factors.

(a) The Region of the Saptarsi Group.

1. The Earlier Literature.

In the earlier literature of the Vedic Samhitās, the Brāhmanas and the Sūtras, the region or area with which the Saptarsi group is associated is invariably the north. The Atharvaveda, for example, refers in two separate passages to the Saptarsis as acting, together with Viśvakarman, as guardians of the northern region:

"viśvakarmā mā sapta rsibhir udīcyā diśah pātu" || (64)

"viśvakarmanam te sapta rsivantam rcchantu  
ye māghāyava udīcyā diśo 'bhidāsān" || (65)

A similar idea is to be found also in the early Iranian tradition, where Ahura Mazda creates the Seven Stars - Haptōirngas - to be glorious and healing: and these Seven Stars were to remain on guard against the magicians of the north, who attempted to prevent the advance of Tishtrya or Sirius by hurling down hostile shooting stars. (66)

Similarly in the Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra, instructions are given for setting up seats for the Saptarsis towards the north, with north-pointing darbha-grass - and for setting up that of Agastya towards the south:

"nivītina uttarata udīcīnapravane udagagrair darbhaiḥ prāgapavargāny  
āsanāni kalpayanti .... | vasisthakaśyapayor antarāle 'rundhatyai  
kalpayanti | dakṣiṇataḥ prēcīnapravane 'gastyāya" || (67)

This association of the Saptarsis with the northern region may be seen to be altogether predictable, presuming the association of the Saptarsis with the seven stars of Ursa Major which are closest to

(64) Atharvaveda 19.17.7.

(65) Atharvaveda 19.18.7.

(66) e.g. Sirozah 1.13: 2.13 : Yasht 20.

(67) Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra 2.8.19.2-7.

Dhruva or the northern celestial pole - similarly the association of Agastya with the southern region is predictable assuming his association with the star Canopus, as mentioned earlier in this Chapter. This association of the Saptarsis with the northern celestial pole may be seen to be clearly implied by a passage in the Jaiminiya Upanisad Brāhmaṇa, which relates that the Saptarsis are located at the centre of the sky:

"atha yatraite saptarsayas tad divo madhyam" | (68)

The term madhyam may here be taken in the sense of the northern celestial pole, which constitutes the "centre" of the sky inasmuch as all other stars and constellations revolve around it: an interpretation which is stated to be the case by Varāhamihira<sup>(69)</sup> and others (see Chapter 5). Since the constellation of the Saptarsis is that closest to the centre-point or "pivot" of the sky, the above quotation may be seen as a poetic - if astronomically slightly imprecise - way of expressing their location. It may be pointed out here that, taken in this sense, such references do not imply an observation being made from a point directly beneath the northern celestial pole, whereby the Saptarsis are seen directly overhead - as has been suggested by Tilak<sup>(70)</sup> and others, thereby positing that such observations must therefore have been made at a circumpolar region; since such references are intended primarily - as interpreted by the astronomers - as indicating the region of the sky around which all the constellations and stars would appear to be turning, hence the region which appears fixed or dhruva. The northern celestial pole is generally deemed to have been represented during the period presently in question by the star Thuban or α Draconis - which is approximately mid-way between the present northern celestial pole (Polaris) and the Saptarsis or Ursa Major (see Chapter 5): hence

(68) Jaiminiya Upanisad Brāhmaṇa 4.26.12.

(69) Brhatsamhitā 13.1-6.

(70) e.g. B. Tilak - Arctic Home in the Vedas, p.55.

the constellation of the Saptarsis would -- at this earlier period -- have been not only perhaps the most easily recognisable constellation in the northern hemisphere, but also unquestionably that closest to what was then the northern celestial pole.

Apart from relating that the Saptarsis are at the "centre" of the sky, other passages -- as for example one in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa -- relate that they rise in the north:

"tā mithunena vyārdhyantāmī hy uttarāhi sapta rsaya udyanti  
pura etā" | (71)

This same passage also relates that the Saptarsis were formerly called Rksas or bears:

"sapta rsin u ha sma vai purariksā ity ācakṣate" | (72)

As indicated and discussed already in Chapter 1, this may in turn be used to interpret a further passage in the R̥gveda, which speaks of the R̥ksas as being "high" in the sky during the night -- wherein the term R̥ksa may be seen to denote the Saptarsis, and is accordingly interpreted as such by Śāyana and others:

"amī ya r̥ksā nihitāsa uccā naktaṁ dadṛśre kuha cid diveyah" | (73)

Once again, it is not necessary to conclude -- with Tilak and others -- that the term uccā denotes an observation being made from a circumpolar region.

It may be noted also that in one passage in the R̥gveda the Saptarsis are referred to as the Seven Oxen who travel to the east (see also discussion of this passage in Chapter 1):

"adhvaryubhiḥ pañcabhiḥ sapta viprāḥ priyaṁ rakṣante nihitaṁ padam veh  
prāñco madanty uksano ajuryā devā devānām anu hi vratā guh" || (74)

As was noted in Chapter 1, the term "The Seven Oxen" is used to designate "The North" in many of the Latin languages -- as for example

(71) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 2.1.2.4.

(72) *ibid.*

(73) R̥gveda 1.24.10.

(74) R̥gveda 3.7.7.



in the Latin Septentriones. Thus here again it would appear that the Saptarsis are to be associated with the northern region: an association which on this basis may be said to be parallel to that in further - especially Indo-European - contexts, and an association which may be seen to be reasonably consistently followed in this earlier group of texts.

## ii. The Later Literature.

In the earlier texts, the Saptarsi group which is associated with the northern region is either explicitly or implicitly that commencing with Viśvāmitra: since indeed, as was seen in Chapter 1, this is the only list of the Saptarsi group which is known within these texts. The same association between this group of Saptarsis and the northern region is evident in, for example, a passage in the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, which relates that they constantly dwell in the northern region:

"vasisthah kaśyapo 'thātrir viśvāmitrah sagautamah ||  
jamadagnir bharadvājas te 'pi saptarsayas tathā |  
udīcyāṃ diśi saptāite nityam eva nivāsinah" || (75)

Certain Parvans of the Mahābhārata similarly retain this association. A passage in the Anuśāsana Parvan, for example, recounts the deeds of Viśvāmitra, during the course of which it is related that he constantly resorts to the northern region:

"madhye jvalati yo nityam udīcīm āśrito diśam" || (76)

The later Śānti Parvan once again affords evidence that it is in effect a bridge between the two main lists and traditions - as was suggested to be the case in Chapter 2. One passage in this Parvan lists the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā and, while explicitly equating these with the Saptarsis, nonetheless locates them in the east: and it then continues by enumerating the Rsis of the other main list of the Saptarsi group of the earlier texts - namely that commencing

(75) Rāmāyaṇa 7.1.5-6.

(76) Mahābhārata 13.3.15.

with Viśvāmitra -- and in so doing it explicitly and perhaps purposely fails or omits to actually call them the Saptarṣis, while nevertheless locating them in the northern region:

"brahmanah sapta putrā vai mahātmanah svayambhuvah ||  
marīcir atryaṅgirasau pulastyah pulahah kratuh |  
vasisthas ca mahābhāḡah sadrśā vai svayambhuvā ||  
sapta brahmāna ity ete purāṇe niścayaṃ gataḥ |  
....  
trailokyabhāvanās tāta prācyāṃ saptarṣayas tathā |  
....  
ātreyaś ca vasisthas ca kaśyapaś ca mahān ṛṣiḥ ||  
gautamah sabharadvājo viśvāmitro 'tha kauśikah |  
tathaiva putro bhagavān ṛcikasya mahātmanah ||  
jamadagniś ca saptaite udīcim diśam āśritāḥ" | (77)

In the Harivaṃśa a complete change is fully evident. A passage in this work enumerates the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarṣi group -- namely those commencing with Marīci -- and calls them both the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā and also the Saptarṣis -- and also states that they live in the northern region:

"marīcir atrir bhagavān aṅgirāḥ pulahah kratuh |  
pulastyaś ca vasisthas ca saptaite brahmanah sutaḥ ||  
uttarasyāṃ diśi tathā rājan saptarṣayah sthitāḥ" | (78)

The passage thus suggests that, just as this latter group of Saptarṣis has gradually -- particularly throughout the Mahābhārata -- come to replace in importance the role of the Ṛsis of the first or earlier main list of Saptarṣis, so too they have come to be located in that region which was previously occupied by the Ṛsis of the first main list of the group. Thus while the group of Ṛsis commencing with Marīci is at one stage -- in the Mahābhārata -- said to live in the eastern region, it is at a later stage -- in the Harivaṃśa -- said to live in the northern region.

It is possible to discern a still earlier location ascribed

(77) Mahābhārata 12.201.1-35.

(78) Harivaṃśa 7.7-8.

to the second main group of Saptarṣis, which is given in the Rāmāyana version of the myth of Triśaṅku.<sup>(79)</sup> In this myth, the attempts of Viśvāmitra to transfer Triśaṅku in bodily form to the sky are at first thwarted by Indra: but then it is said that Viśvāmitra in anger created another group of Saptarṣis in the southern region, together with another set of Nakṣatras:

"srjan dakṣiṇamārgasthān saptarṣīn aparān punah ||  
nakṣatramālām aparām asrjat krodhamūrchitah" | (80)

The implications of this reference will be more fully discussed and investigated in Chapter 5. In the present context it may be noted that this new group of Saptarṣis created by Viśvāmitra is said to be located in the southern region: and, since Viśvāmitra is a member of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group - which, according to this same text, is located in the northern region - it might be inferred that this new group of Saptarṣis created in the southern region represents in effect the group commencing with Marīci, which - as has been seen in Chapter 2 - first becomes recognised in the Epic texts. In this case it may therefore be said that this latter group of Saptarṣis is first - in the Rāmāyana - said to reside in the southern region: then - in the Mahābhārata - in the eastern region: and then - in the Harivaṃśa and subsequent early Purāṇic texts - in the northern region, which was formerly said to be occupied by the Rṣis of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group.

At this point it should once again be borne in mind that the northern location of the Saptarṣis is demanded by their astronomical significance, whereby they are identified with the constellation Ursa Major which is closest to Dhruva or the northern celestial pole - the fixed point of the sky around which all other stars and constellations would appear to be revolving. Thus the fact that the second main list of the Saptarṣi group is first of all associated

(79) of. Rāmāyana 1.56.10 - 1.59.33.

(80) Rāmāyana 1.59.20-21.

with the southern and eastern regions, and only subsequently with the northern region, is a further indication - complementary to those noted already in Chapter 2 section 2(e) - that certain factors other than astronomical considerations have been operative in the origin, formulation and development of this second main group of Saptarsis. In the Harivamśa and in the subsequent early Purāṇic texts it would however appear that the second main group of Saptarsis has additionally come to assume not only the title of Saptarsis but also the astronomical significance of occupying the northern region which was formerly held by the first main Saptarsi group. Thus, by the end of the period being considered in this study, the astronomer Varāhamihira knows only of this second main group as constituting the Saptarsi group: and he accordingly relates that it is they who inhabit the northern region.<sup>(81)</sup>

In order to further illustrate such regional associations of the two main Saptarsi groups - and in particular the degree to which the Rsis of the second main list of the Saptarsi group are associated with the southern region - it is next instructive to examine the regional traditions associated with each of the individual Rsi-members of the two main lists of the Saptarsi group.

---

(81) cf. Brhatsamhitā 13.1-6.

(b) The Region of Rsis in the Earlier Texts.

General regional data in the earlier texts - from the Vedic Samhitās to the Sūtras - have already been studied by previous writers: and it is therefore only necessary in the present context to summarise the conclusions reached by such writers, and to illustrate the degree to which the regional traditions of individual Rsis conform to the overall regional data in these texts.

The earlier texts are centred primarily upon in the first instance the region of the Panjāb and adjacent territory (especially in the Vedic Samhitās), and in the second instance the Gaṅgā-Yamunā basin: while also demonstrating knowledge of areas further to the east, as for example of Magadha and of the eastern Gangetic region. In general terms it may be said that these texts show little knowledge of regions to the south of the Vindhya: and it is indeed this latter point which is of major interest in this context when studying the regional associations of the Rsis. Within these earlier texts it is therefore of no surprise to find that individual Rsis are accordingly associated with regions which are generally well-known to the authors of these texts: and the following selection of examples may be cited in order to illustrate this point.

Both in the Rgveda and in subsequent texts, Indra is said to have crossed the Sindhu with Vasistha, and to have helped king Sudās through the Vāsisthas.<sup>(82)</sup> Both Vasistha and Viśvāmitra are spoken of as being Purohitas of king Sudās: and through him they are associated especially with the region of the Panjāb, and in particular with the rivers Vipāśā and Śutudrī.<sup>(83)</sup> Dharadvāja is said to have been the Purohita of king Divodāsa the grandfather of Sudās: <sup>(84)</sup> and he is also said to have taken part in the battle of

(82) e.g. Rgveda 7.33.3-7.

(83) e.g. Rgveda 3.53.9-12: 7.33.3-7 : Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 8.21 : Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa 3.23-24 : Śāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra 16.11.13-14 : Nirukta 2.24: 9.26 : Brhaddevatā 4.105-119.

(84) e.g. Rgveda 1.116.18: 6.31.4 : Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 15.3.7.

the ten kings on the Sindhu with Mānusa.<sup>(85)</sup> Bharadvāja is additionally said to have helped kings Prastoka Sṛñjaya and Ābhyavartin Cayamāna.<sup>(86)</sup> Atri is also connected indirectly with the battle of the ten kings on the Sindhu: for he is said to have received gifts from kings Trasadasyu and Tryaruna, both of whom were Puru kings having their capital on the Sarasvatī, and the former of whom was the son of Purukutsa who was killed in that battle.<sup>(87)</sup>

Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni are in one Brāhmaṇa context said to have helped the Bharatas against the Ikṣvākus on the banks of the Sindhu:<sup>(88)</sup> while in a further context Viśvāmitra is said to have helped the Bharatas on the banks of either the Gaṅgā or the Yamunā.<sup>(89)</sup> According to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, among the descendants of Viśvāmitra were those who lived on the borders (of "civilised society"): including such peoples as the Andhras, Pundras and others.<sup>(90)</sup>

According to a passage in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, Gotama accompanied king Māthava Videgha eastwards from the river Sarasvatī to the river Sadānīrā: which formed the boundary between the Kosalas and Videghas, and which in former times - namely before that of king Māthava - had not been crossed by the Āryan peoples.<sup>(91)</sup>

Just as Agastya remains in these texts something of an outsider to the Saptarṣi group, so too his descendants are said to live "outside" or beyond the Kuru-Pañcālas<sup>(92)</sup> - namely beyond the territory occupied by these tribes between the Panjāb and the Gaṅgā-Yamunā rivers.

(86) e.g. Brhaddevatā 5.124-142.

(87) e.g. Brhaddevatā 5.28-36.

(88) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 3.237-238.

(89) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 3.183 : cf. Pancaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 14.3.12-13.

(90) Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 7.18.

(91) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.4.1.10-20 : cf. 11.4.3.20.

(92) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 2.221.

(85) e.g. Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 3.244-247.

It may therefore be observed in general terms that these individual Rsis are associated primarily in the earlier texts with regions lying especially around the main river-basins of north India: and in particular around the Panjāb and around the Gaṅgā-Yamunā and eastern Gangetic basins, in a region to the north of the Vindhya.

(c) The Region of Rsis in the Rāmāyana.

Within the Rāmāyana, the Gangetic valley and surrounding area remains an important locality insofar as the main Rsis are concerned: and frequent references are made to their dwelling in this area. Vasistha, for example, appears primarily in this work as the chief Purohita of king Daśaratha, who has his capital at Ayodhyā in the kingdom of Kosala.<sup>(93)</sup> Viśvāmitra is said to have his main dwelling on the banks of the river Kauśikī - which is a transformation of Satyavati - close to the Himālayas:

"tato 'ham himavatpārśve vasāmi niyataḥ sukham |  
bhaginyāḥ snehasamyuktāḥ kauśikyā raghunandana" || (94)

It is also related of Viśvāmitra that, while performing tapas through the desire to become a Brahmarsi or Brahmin, he travelled first to the southern region, then to Puskara in the western region, and then to the eastern region, before settling by the river Kauśikī in the northern region. From there he also journeys to visit Daśaratha in Ayodhyā, in order to request that Rāma might accompany him to slay the Rākṣasas.<sup>(95)</sup>

Both Vasistha and Viśvāmitra are associated with several other Aikṣvāka kings of Ayodhyā apart from Daśaratha: most notably with Triśaṅku,<sup>(96)</sup> and also in the case of Viśvāmitra with Ambarīsa at whose sacrifice Śunahṣepa is rescued and adopted by Viśvāmitra.<sup>(97)</sup>

It is related of the Rsi Gautama that he used to dwell with Ahalyā in an Āśrama near Mithilā the capital of Videha - but later retired to the peaks of the Himālayas in order to perform tapas:

"mithilopavane tatra āśramam drśya rāghavaḥ |

....

gautamasya naraśreṣṭha pūrvam āsīn mahātmanah |  
āśramo divyasaṅkāśaḥ surair api supūjitah ||

(93) e.g. 1.69.17-32: 2.102.3-31: (96) 1.56.10 - 1.59.33.  
7.57.4-21: etc.

(94) 1.33.10.

(97) 1.60.5 - 1.61.27.

(95) 1.50.1 - 1.64.18.



sa ceha tapa ātisthad ahalyā sahitaḥ purā |

....

evam uktvā mahātejā gautamo dustacārinīm |

imam āśramam utsrjya siddhacāraṇasevite |

himavacchikhare rāmye tapas tepe mahātapāh" || (98)

It is similarly said that king Nimi founded the city of Vaijayanta near the Āśrama of Gautama on the side of the Himavat mountain.<sup>(99)</sup>

When Rāma sets out from Ayodhyā at the start of his banishment, he first visits the Āśrama of Bharadvāja near the confluence of the Gaṅgā and Yamunā:

"gaṅgāyamunayoh samdhau prāpatur nilayam muneh ||

rāmas tv āśraṇam āsādyā trāsayan mrgapakṣinah |

gatvā mahūrtam adhvānam bharadvājam upāgamat" || (100)

From there he travels to the Citrakūṭa mountain - modern Citrakūt, a short distance to the west of Allahabad - and then arrives at the Āśrama of Atri; and there he is told of how in olden times Anasūyā the wife of Atri through her tapas caused the river Jāhnavī or Gaṅgā to flow in that place:

"yayā mūlaphale sr̥ṣṭe jāhnavī ca pravartitā |

agrena tapasā yuktā niyamaiś cāpy alankṛtā" || (101)

It may thus be observed that the Āśramas or dwelling-places of all of these Ṛsis - namely Vasistha, Viśvāmitra, Gautama, Bharadvāja and Atri - are all considered in the Rāmāyana to be predominantly in a region within or closely adjacent to the Gaṅgā-Yamunā basin.

The consecration of Rāma and his installation as king of Ayodhyā is said to have been performed by the Ṛsis Vasistha, Kāśyapa and Gautama - together with other Ṛsis who are not included in either of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group;<sup>(102)</sup> while another Kāśyapa, namely Ṛṣyaśṛṅga, is said to have married the daughter of

(98) 1.47.11-32.

(101) 2.109.10.

(99) 7.55.4-21.

(102) 6.116.55.

(100) 2.48.8-9.

the king of Aṅga, and to have visited Daśaratha in Ayodhyā where he performed an Aśvamedha sacrifice with Vasistha.<sup>(103)</sup> Thus although the Rsi Kaśyapa is not explicitly involved in such accounts (but see Chapter 1 section 4, on Alternative Names), it is clear that certain of his descendants are again associated with the northern region of India. Noteworthy in the Rāmāyana is the paucity of individual references to Jamadagni, who appears only once as the father of Paraśurama,<sup>(104)</sup> and once in a list of Rsis who come to visit Rama after he has regained his kingdom. In this latter list, it is related that those who came from the north were the Saptarṣis Vasistha, Kaśyapa, Atri, Viśvāmitra, Gautama, Jamadagni, and Bharadvāja - namely those of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group:

"vasisthah kaśyapo 'thātrir viśvāmitrah sagautamah ||  
jamadagnir bharadvājas te 'pi saptarṣayas tathā |  
udīcyāṃ diśi saptaite nityam eva nivāsinah" || (105)

Thus it may be said that the Rsi-members of this first main list of the Saptarṣi group are reasonably consistently associated - both individually and as a group - within the Rāmāyana with the northern region of India.

The Rsi Agastya is frequently mentioned throughout the Rāmāyana as inhabiting the southern region. He is said to have his Āśrama at Pañcavatī, near the sources of the river Godāvarī, where Rama resided during his exile;<sup>(106)</sup> and he is similarly famed as residing to the south of the Vindhyas, having induced those mountains to bow before him as he travelled to the south.<sup>(107)</sup> It is near his Āśrama in the south that he is said to have devoured the Demon Vātāpi, whose name would appear to have been adopted as that of the Calukya city Vātāpi or Badāmi in the Western Deccan.<sup>(108)</sup> Further

(103) 1.8.1 - 1.12.20.

(104) 1.73.16ff.

(105) 7.1.5-6.

(106) 3.12.1ff : cf. 1.3.11.

(107) 3.10.81-92 : cf. 4.51.7.

(108) 3.10.53-64.

passages also relate that Agastya dwells on the summit of Mount Malaya in the southernmost section of the Western Ghats, near the rivers Kāverī and Tāmraparnī and close to the city of the Pāṇdyas.<sup>(109)</sup> It is furthermore related of the Rsis who came to pay homage to Rāma at his installation as king of Ayodhyā that among those who came from the southern region were Agastya and Atri - together with other Rsis who are not included in either of the two main lists of the Saptarsi group:

"agastyo 'triś ca bhagavān sumukho vimukhas tathā ||  
 ājagmus te sahāgastyā ye śritā dakṣiṇām diśam" | (110)

The "Atri" mentioned in this context is evidently intended to be distinguished from the "Atri" mentioned as a member of the (first main) Saptarsi group in the following verses of this passage. The reference is thus of particular interest, since it will be recalled that Atri appears in both of the main lists of the Saptarsi group, rather than in only one of these lists. The passage as a whole implies that one Atri came with the other Saptarsis from the northern region, while another Atri came with Agastya from the southern region: and by associating Atri with both the southern as well as the northern region, the passage suggests once again a point which has already been proposed in section 3(a) of this Chapter - namely that the Rsis of the second main list of the Saptarsi group, as also the second main group as a whole, are associated primarily with the southern region. This is unquestionably the case with the Rsi Agastya - who was seen in section 2 to be variously referred to as the father of the Rsis Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu, and also as the son of the Rsi Pulastya: and it will be noted that all three of these Rsis appear only in the second main list of the Saptarsi group. Within the Rāmāyana, the Yakṣas - sons of Pulastya - are said to dwell near the Āśrama of Agastya;<sup>(111)</sup> while Agastya is also said to have cursed

(109) 4.40.15-23.

(111) 3.10.81-92.

(110) 7.1.3-4.

the Yakṣa Mārīca -- son of Marīci -- to become a Rākṣasa:

"kasya cit tv atha kālasya yakṣī putram vyajāyata |  
mārīcam nāma durdharsam yā śāpād rākṣaso 'bhavat ||  
sunde tu vihate rāma agastyam ṛsisattamam |  
tātakā saha putreṇa pradharsayitum icchati ||  
rākṣasatvam bhajasvoti mārīcam vyājahāra sah |  
agastyah paramakruddhas tātakam api śaptavān" || (112)

This Mārīca or son of Marīci is the friend and ally of the Rākṣasa Rāvaṇa, who together with other Rākṣasas is said to reside in Laṅkā in the south: and all of these Rākṣasas -- such as Kumbhakarna, Vibhīṣana and Indrajit -- are said to be sons or descendants of Pulastya.<sup>(113)</sup> Apart from being the ancestor of all these Rākṣasas of the southern region, Pulastya is also said to have gone to Māhiṣmatī on the river Narmadā -- the capital of Arjuna Kārttavīrya -- in order to persuade Arjuna to release Rāvaṇa whom he had captured.<sup>(114)</sup> Thus Pulastya -- together with his descendants the Yakṣas and Rākṣasas -- is evidently associated very much with the southern region, to the south of the Vindhyas and including Laṅkā. It is also related of Pulastya that he performed tantras on the slopes of Meru: and that through his curse was born Viśravas, who eventually gained as his wife the daughter of Bharadvāja from whom was born Vaiśravana or Kuvera. The latter is said to have dwelt originally in Laṅkā, but to have been expelled from there by his brother Rāvaṇa: whereafter he went north to dwell on Mount Kailāsa in the Himālaya.<sup>(115)</sup>

It may be suggested at this point that a similar process is operating in some measure in these instances as has been seen to be operative within the regional association of the Saptaṛṣi group as a whole: namely that they are associated in the first instance with the southern region, and then subsequently with the northern region. The latter association might be said to be due in part to a desire to associate such Ṛṣis with that region -- particularly in the Himālaya

(112) 1.24.8-12.

(114) 7.32.1 - 7.33.23.

(113) 5.21.4-7: 6.49.9-23:  
6.68.12: etc.

(115) 7.2.4 - 7.17.38, etc.

188.

around the sources of the Gaṅgā, and in the region of Kurukṣetra a short distance to the south - which was considered by the authors of the earlier texts to be in a sense the most sacred of regions - as well as being the region associated with the Rsis of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group, whose role and importance has been seen to be gradually undermined and taken over by the Rsis of the second main list. Thus by associating such Rsis as Agastya and Pulastya with the northern region, it may be seen that this tends to further their claims to at least equal status with the Rsis who are otherwise usually associated in the earlier texts with the northern region - namely the Rsis of the first main list of the Saptarṣi group; even though, in the cases of Agastya and Pulastya, their main association remains predominantly with the southern rather than the northern region.

Just as the Demon-figure Mārīca is said to dwell in Lāṅkā with Rāvaṇa and the other Rākṣasas, so too the Mārīcas are also spoken of as being the friends and allies of the monkey Sugrīva, who go to the western region in search of Sītā: travelling by implication from a region to the south of the Vindhya as far as Avantī, Surāstra, and the borders of the ocean.<sup>(116)</sup> Since, as has already been seen above, Mārīca is referred to as being originally a Yakṣa before he was cursed by Agastya, therefore logically the Mārīcas as a whole might also be termed Yakṣas - and thus sons of Pulastya, who is the father of both Yakṣas and Rākṣasas. The association of the Mārīcas or descendants of Marīci with the southern region might therefore be seen as complementary to the association of Pulastya himself with the southern region. In a similar manner the various relationships said to exist between the Rsi Agastya on the one hand and the Rsis Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Marīci on the other hand would again tend to complement the association of all of these Rsis with the southern region, particularly in view of the

clear association of Agastya with that region. Since the latter four of these Rsis all appear within the second main list of the Saptarsi group - as does also the Rsi Atri, who is said in one passage noted above to accompany Agastya from the southern region in order to pay homage to Rāma - it may be deemed reasonable to suggest that the second main list of the Saptarsi group is in some way closely connected with the southern region - that is to say, with the region generally to the south of the Vindhya. This conclusion may be seen to complement that reached earlier through a study of the regional references to the Saptarsi group as a whole: wherein a "new" group of Saptarsis, which is first referred to in the Rāmāyana, is said to have been created by Viśvāmitra in the southern region. The validity of this conclusion may be further examined and tested by referring to the regional associations of Rsis in the Mahābhārata and in the early Purāṇic texts.

---

(d) The Region of Rsis in the Mahābhārata and the Early Purāṇic Texts.

The pattern of regional association which has been observed in the Rāmāyana is very largely followed also in the Mahābhārata and in the early Purāṇic texts. The following examples may be cited to illustrate the cases of individual Rsis who appear in one or the other of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group.

i. Viśvāmitra.

Viśvāmitra is said to have his Āśrama by the river Kauśikī or Parā,<sup>(117)</sup> to which he eventually retires after having first inherited the kingdom of Kāṇyakubja or Kanauj from his father Gādhi.<sup>(118)</sup> He is said to have favoured the country of Magadha:<sup>(119)</sup> and to have a sacred river near the Vaidurya mountain in the west,<sup>(120)</sup> as also another Āśrama on the west bank of the Sarasvatī.<sup>(121)</sup> He is associated with the Aikṣvāka king Triśaṅku of Ayodhya,<sup>(122)</sup> and with other Aikṣvāka kings.<sup>(123)</sup> It is said that Kauśika Brahmins have dwelt near Dvārakā.<sup>(124)</sup>

ii. Jamadagni.

Jamadagni is said to have performed sacrifices at Palāśaka near the Sarasvatī and Drsadvatī rivers:<sup>(125)</sup> he is also said to have a Tīrtha at the confluence of the Narmadā and the ocean.<sup>(126)</sup> He is said to have been killed by king Arjuna Kārttavīrya Haihaya, who had his capital at Mahiṣmatī on the river Narmadā:<sup>(127)</sup> while Arjuna was in turn killed - along with all the Kṣatriyas - by Jamadagni's son Rāma,

(117) Mahābhārata 1.65.20-42:  
1.66.1-15: 3.82.113-114:  
3.85.9-12: 3.109:18-20:  
13.3.10.

(118) Mahābhārata 1.165.1-44.

(119) Mahābhārata 2.19.3-11.

(120) Mahābhārata 3.87.7-12.

(121) Mahābhārata 9.39.11ff.

(122) Mahābhārata 1.65.20-42:  
Harivamśa 10.1-20:  
Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.3.1ff:

Vāyu Purāṇa 2.26.84ff :  
Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.63.113ff.

(123) Mahābhārata 1.166.1-1.168.25:  
13.3.6ff.

(124) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 6.24-25.

(125) Mahābhārata 3.88.13-16.

(126) Matsya Purāṇa 194.30-35.

(127) Mahābhārata 3.116.1-18: 12.49.39ff  
Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.26-30.

who thereafter went to dwell on Mount Mahendra,<sup>(128)</sup> probably in the eastern region of modern Orissa, or at Sūrpāraka by the shores of the southern ocean.<sup>(129)</sup> Jamadagni's wife Renukā is said to have desired king Citraratha, king of the Gandharvas.<sup>(130)</sup>

### iii. Bharadvāja.

Bharadvāja is said to dwell at the sources of the Gaṅgā.<sup>(131)</sup> Similarly his son Yavakrīta is said to have been killed at the Āśrama of Raibhya near that of Bharadvāja, close to the Bhṛgutūṅga in the Himālaya and to the rivers Tusnī and Gaṅgā.<sup>(132)</sup> Bharadvāja is said to go to the Gaṅgā for his ablutions - which gives occasion for his cursing of Viṣṇu.<sup>(133)</sup> He is also said to have been the Purohita of king Divodāsa of Kāśī.<sup>(134)</sup> to have been adopted by king Bharata.<sup>(135)</sup> and to be the father of Drona, warrior in the Bhārata war in Kuruksetra.<sup>(136)</sup> Bhāradvājas are said to be peoples of northern countries,<sup>(137)</sup> and to have dwelt near Dvārakā.<sup>(138)</sup>

### iv. Gautama.

Gautama is said to have cast his father Dīrghatamas onto the waters of the Gaṅgā, whence he travelled downstream to found the realms of Aṅga, Vaṅga, Kaliṅga, Pundra and Suhma.<sup>(139)</sup> while Gautama is said also to have resided in Girivraja, the capital of Magadha near Gāyā, where he begot Kaksīvat and other sons.<sup>(140)</sup> (cf. Chapter 1 section 4 on alternative names). Gautama is said to have protected king

(128) Mahābhārata 1.121.12-18:  
3.83.14-15: 3.85.14-17:  
3.117.1-10.

(129) Mahābhārata 3.86.7-11:  
3.83.39-40: 12.49.56ff.

(130) Mahābhārata 3.116.5-14.

(131) Mahābhārata 1.121.3-11.

(132) Mahābhārata 3.135.7-9.

(133) Mahābhārata 12.329.42.

(134) Mahābhārata 13.31.22ff.

(135) Mahābhārata 1.88.17-19.

(136) Mahābhārata 1.57.88-96:  
1.121.3-9: etc.

(137) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 57.39.

(138) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 6.24-25.

(139) Mahābhārata 1.98.17-33.

(140) Mahābhārata 2.19.3-11:  
cf. 3.82.88-93.



Brhadratha on the banks of the Gaṅgā: <sup>(141)</sup> and also to have performed tapas for 60,000 years in his Āśrama on the Pāriyātra or western Vindhya hills. <sup>(142)</sup> He is said to be father of Āśvatthāman and Kṛpa, warriors in the Bhārata war in Kurukṣetra. <sup>(143)</sup> and Gautama Brahmins are said to have dwelt in Dvārakā. <sup>(144)</sup>

#### v. Atri.

Atri is said to have had his Āśrama among the snows by the source of the river Airāvati in the Himālaya. <sup>(145)</sup> He is said to have gone to Vidha to give instructions in the performance of Śrāddha rites to king Nimi: <sup>(146)</sup> and Ātreya are said to be peoples of northern countries. <sup>(147)</sup>

#### vi. Vasistha.

Vasistha is associated with the rivers Vipāśā and Śutudrī, <sup>(148)</sup> as also with the Sarasvatī and Sarayū. <sup>(149)</sup> He is said to have made Kurukṣetra sacred by performing tapas there. <sup>(150)</sup> He is associated with Triśaṅku and with other Aikṣvāku kings of Ayodhyā - a city which he is himself said to have protected. <sup>(151)</sup> He is also said to have had an Āśrama on the slopes of Mount Meru, <sup>(152)</sup> and to have cast himself in grief from the summit of Meru: <sup>(153)</sup> while a mountain in the Himālayas is said to bear his name, <sup>(154)</sup> and he is variously associated in further contexts with the Himālaya. <sup>(155)</sup> Further

- |                                  |                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| (141) Mahābhārata 12.49.56ff.    | (150) Mahābhārata 1.89.31-42.   |
| (142) Mahābhārata 12.127.3ff.    | (151) Mahābhārata 1.168.15-25 : |
| (143) Mahābhārata 1.57.88-90:    | Harivaṃśa 9.88-100: 10.1-20 :   |
| 1.120.3-21.                      | Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.63.15-177: |
|                                  | Vāyu Purāṇa 2.26.14-176.        |
| (144) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 6.24-25. | (152) Mahābhārata 1.93.6.       |
| (145) Matsya Purāṇa 119.55ff.    | (153) Mahābhārata 1.166.35-43.  |
| (146) Mahābhārata 13.91.18ff.    | (154) Mahābhārata 1.207.2ff.    |
| (147) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 57.39.   | (155) Mahābhārata 3.81.155-157: |
| (148) Mahābhārata 1.167.1-20:    | 3.82.43-44: 3.130.14-16.        |
| 3.130.8-9: 13.3.12-13.           |                                 |
| (149) Mahābhārata 9.39.11ff:     |                                 |
| 13.140.15ff.                     |                                 |

passages speak of Vasistha as the Purohita of the Bharatas,<sup>(156)</sup> and of the Aiksvākus of Ayodhya.<sup>(157)</sup> He is also said to have lived and died in the eastern quarter:<sup>(158)</sup> and to have persuaded Manu to give the city of Pratisthāna on the river Godāvarī to Sudyumna.<sup>(159)</sup> Vāsisthas are said to live close to Mount Mahendra.<sup>(160)</sup>

### vii. Kaśyapa.

Kaśyapa is said to have installed Varuna as lord of waters in the western region, where he himself is said also to reside.<sup>(161)</sup> His sons are said to have first multiplied in the eastern region:<sup>(162)</sup> and Kaśyapa is famed as having incarnated himself in Mathurā as Vasudeva, the father of Vāsudeva-Kṛṣṇa-Visṇu.<sup>(163)</sup> Kāśyapas are said to dwell by Mount Mahendra:<sup>(164)</sup> and it was to Mount Mahendra that Kaśyapa banished Rāma.<sup>(165)</sup> Kāśyapa-Dvīpa is said to be one of the seven divisions of Jambudvīpa<sup>(166)</sup> - perhaps to be identified with Kashmir.

On the basis of these references to the regions occupied by the Rsis of the first main list of the Saptarsi group, it may be seen that these Rsis are generally thought of as residing in northern regions - as opposed most notably to residing in regions to the south of the Vindhyas. Two exceptions may be noted: namely in the cases of Vasistha - who is in one context associated with the city of Pratisthāna on the Godāvarī - and Jamadagni - whose Āśrama is said

- 
- |                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| (156) Mahābhārata 1.89.31-42. | (161) Mahābhārata 5.108.3-18.            |
| (157) Mahābhārata 1.164.1-14: | (162) Mahābhārata 5.106.6.               |
| 1.166.1-1.168.25:             | (163) Harivaṃśa 45.20-45 :               |
| 12.75.1ff: 13.77.1ff :        | Matsya Purāṇa 47.8-10.                   |
| Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.48.29ff: | (164) Mahābhārata 3.115.1ff.             |
| Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.2.1ff.         | (165) Mahābhārata 3.117.11ff:            |
| (158) Mahābhārata 5.106.13.   | 12.49.56ff.                              |
| (159) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.1.1ff.   | (166) Mahābhārata 6.6.57: cf.3.13010-11. |
| (160) Mahābhārata 3.115.1-4.  |  |

to be in the region of the Narmada. In the case of Vasistha, his association with a region to the south of the Vindhya may be seen as being complementary to his inclusion in the second main list of the Saptarsi group - which, as has been suggested, is itself closely connected with the southern region. In the case of Jamadagni, it may be suggested that the Jāmadagnyas tended to settle in this region of India which was, by and large, beyond the known limits of Āryan culture in the period of the earlier literature - which would in turn help to explain the relative paucity of references to the region of this Rsi in the earlier literature. It may also be noted that, within the Gotra organisation, the Jāmadagnyas became assimilated within the Bhārgava Gotra: and while Bhṛgu is closely associated with the second main list of the Saptarsi group, so too the region with which both Bhṛgu and the Bhārgavas are most closely associated included the area around Bhṛgukaccha or Broach on the river Narmadā (see below). This may in turn help to explain why Jamadagni, although associated with a region to the south of the Vindhya in addition to a region to the north of the Vindhya, was nonetheless excluded from the second main list of the Saptarsi group: namely because his status had been somewhat undermined by the Rsi Bhṛgu - or conversely, because the Bhārgava Gotra had expanded largely at the expense of the Jāmadagnya Gotra - so that it was the Rsi Bhṛgu, rather than Jamadagni, who became assimilated and partly included within the second main list of the Saptarsi group.

References to the regions occupied by the individual Rsi-members of the second main list may now be examined: and it may first of all be noted that such references are not to be found for the Rsis Marīci, Pulaha and Kratu within these texts. This may be largely connected with the fact that few individual myths or traditions of these Rsis are to be found within these texts, whereby they might be said to be associated with a particular region. In

the second place, as has been previously pointed out, Vasistha and Atri are the only two Rsis who appear in both of the main lists of the Saptarsi group: and since the regional references associated with these Rsis have already been summarised, the following account will accordingly deal with the remaining two members of the second main group - namely Angiras and Pulastya -- together with the Rsis Agastya and Bhrgu, both of whom have been seen to be closely associated with this second main group.

#### viii. Angiras.

Angiras is said to have been born at the Tirtha of Dadhici on the banks of the Sarasvatī.<sup>(167)</sup> He is said to dwell at Prayāga.<sup>(168)</sup> and Angirases are said to dwell by Mount Mahendra.<sup>(169)</sup>

#### ix. Pulastya.

Pulastya is said to have his Āśrama at Vīranagara on the banks of the river Devikā.<sup>(170)</sup> He is said to have visited Arjuna Haihaya in Mahismatī on the river Godāvarī in order to secure the release of Ravana.<sup>(171)</sup> and he is said to have given Kuvera lordship over Laṅkā, which was subsequently seized by Ravana.<sup>(172)</sup> Bhīṣma is also said to have seen him at the sources of the Gaṅgā.<sup>(173)</sup>

#### x. Agastya.

Agastya is said to have both an Āśrama and a mountain near Prayāga in the eastern region:<sup>(174)</sup> and to have travelled to Gayaśiras near Gāyā in order to visit Dharma.<sup>(175)</sup> He is said to have cursed Kuvera on the banks of the Yamunā,<sup>(176)</sup> and to have a Tirtha in the Himālaya.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| (167) Mahābhārata 3.81.163-164:<br>3.98.12. | (172) Mahābhārata 3.258.11-16. |
| (168) Mahābhārata 3.83.65-67.               | (173) Mahābhārata 3.80.11-21.  |
| (169) Mahābhārata 3.115.1-4.                | (174) Mahābhārata 3.85.14-17.  |
| (170) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 2.15.1ff.                | (175) Mahābhārata 3.93.9-12.   |
| (171) Matsya Purāṇa 43.37-39.               | (176) Mahābhārata 3.158.51-59. |

named after him.<sup>(177)</sup> He is also said to have gained Lopāmudrā at the Sindhu Tīrtha on the river Sarasvatī,<sup>(178)</sup> and to have practised tapas with her at Gaṅgādvāra or Hardwar<sup>(179)</sup> where the Bhāgirathī flows past his Āśrama.<sup>(180)</sup> In addition to such northern localities, the myth of the subduing of the Vindhyas is again related:<sup>(181)</sup> as is also that of his devouring the demon Vātāpi, who may be connected with the Deccan city of Vātāpi or Bādāmi.<sup>(182)</sup> Agastya is said to have gained Lopāmudrā from the king of the Vidarbhas in the western Vindhyas:<sup>(183)</sup> and he is additionally said to have an Āśrama on the Vaidūrya mountain,<sup>(184)</sup> a Tīrtha in the Dravida land across the Godāvarī river,<sup>(185)</sup> and another Tīrtha in the country of the Pāṇdyas to the south.<sup>(186)</sup>

#### xi. Bhṛgu.

Bhṛgu is said to have practised tapas on Mount Puru near Gaṅgādvāra or Hardwar, whence his Āśrama in that region came to be known as Bhṛgutunga.<sup>(187)</sup> He is said to have a Tīrtha by the Bhāgirathī,<sup>(188)</sup> and Bhārgavas are variously said to reside in the Himavat mountains,<sup>(189)</sup> in the eastern region,<sup>(190)</sup> by Mount Mahendra,<sup>(191)</sup> near Dvārakā,<sup>(192)</sup> by the Narmadā river,<sup>(193)</sup> and at Govardhana near Nasik and the sources of the river Godāvarī.<sup>(194)</sup> Bhṛgu is also said to have a Tīrtha at the Daśāśvamedha:<sup>(195)</sup> and Bhṛgukaccha or Broach on the north bank of the Narmadā is reputedly named after him.<sup>(196)</sup>

(177) Mahābhārata 1.207.2ff.

(188) Mahābhārata 3.97.35-37.

(178) Mahābhārata 3.130.5-6.

(189) Mahābhārata 1.169.11-25.

(179) Mahābhārata 3.95.11.

(190) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 57.44.

(180) Mahābhārata 3.97.32.

(191) Mahābhārata 3.115.1-4.

(181) Mahābhārata 3.102.2-15.

(192) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 6.24-25.

(182) Mahābhārata 3.94.4-3.97.15.

(193) Mahābhārata 3.121.19-21.

(183) Mahābhārata 3.94.11-27.

(194) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 57.35.

(184) Mahābhārata 3.86.12-16.

(195) Matsya Purāṇa 193.23-53.

(185) Mahābhārata 3.118.4.

(196) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 57.52: 58.22: Matsya Purāṇa 113.50: etc.

(186) Mahābhārata 3.86.7-11.

(187) Mahābhārata 3.88.18-20:

cf. 1.207.2ff.

It may be observed that, with one or two notable exceptions, the regional pattern which was suggested to be operative in this material on the basis of references in the Rāmāyana is in general terms followed by the Mahābhārata and the early Purāṇic texts: whereby the Ṛsis who appear in the first main list of the Saptarṣi group are associated predominantly with a region or regions to the north of the Vindhyas, while the Ṛsis who appear in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group are associated predominantly with a region or regions to the south of the Vindhyas. One exception has already been noted and discussed in the case of Jamadagni, who although appearing in the first main list is associated especially with the Narmadā to the south of the Vindhyas: and other qualifications must be made in the cases of Atri, Vasistha and Aṅgiras - whose inclusion within the second main list may be suggested to arise from reasons of Gotra rather than regional significance. It may nevertheless be seen that these texts tend to demonstrate certain distinct regional patterns, insofar as the different regions associated with individual Ṛsis are concerned and taking into account the necessary qualifications just mentioned: and it is therefore possible to draw certain conclusions from the material which has been surveyed in this section.

---

(e) Conclusion.

Taking these references as a whole, it will be observed that a definite pattern would appear to emerge overall: whereby the Rsis who appear in the first main list of the Saptarsi group are associated primarily with the northern region of India - especially with the region to the north of the Vindhya - while the Rsis who appear in the second main list of the Saptarsi group are associated primarily with the southern region of India - or in general terms with the region to the south of the Vindhya. This pattern may accordingly be said to conform with that previously suggested on the basis of references to the region associated with the Saptarsis as a group, in addition to that associated with each of the individual members of the group. This pattern is not exclusive: thus for example Viśvāmitra, who appears only in the first main list, is said in one passage to have performed tapas in the southern region where he also created the "new" group of Saptarsis: while Agastya and Pulastya, the latter of whom appears only in the second main list, are both said to have performed tapas in the northern region. Such references may, however, be said to form the minority of references to the region associated with such Rsis and the overall pattern would appear to suggest such a regional association of the one group with the northern region and of the other group with the southern region of India. In this connection there may again be noted a passage in the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana<sup>(197)</sup> which lists Atri as a Rsi of both the northern and southern regions - or which conversely lists two Atris, one coming from the north and the other coming from the south in order to pay homage to Rāma: and it may be observed that, just as Atri is here associated with both regions, so too he is included in both main lists of the Saptarsi group - one of which, as has been suggested, is associated predominantly with the northern region, and the other with the southern region.

---

(197) Rāmāyana 7.1.1-6.

This passage thus again tends to suggest the recognition - on the part of the authors of this text - of two different groups of Saptar̥sis: a recognition which is implied also in the further passages which relate, for example, the creation by Viśvāmitra of a "new" or second Saptar̥si group in the southern region.

It may be noted that, while the R̥sis of the first main Saptar̥si group are generally referred to individually in these texts as residing in the northern region, such does not tend to be the case to such an exclusive extent with the R̥sis of the second main Saptar̥si group. It is certainly the case with the R̥sis Marīci, Atri and Pulastya: yet it is not so much the case with the other members of this group, insofar as references to individual R̥sis are concerned. Pulaha and Kratu are rarely referred to in these texts on an individual basis: yet it may be observed that they are nonetheless said in certain contexts to be sons of Agastya - and thus it may be inferred that they are in some way similarly associated with the southern rather than the northern region. On the other hand, however, Aṅgiras and Vasistha are more generally associated - as in the earlier texts - with the northern rather than the southern region: and it may be noted also that Bhṛgu, who is closely associated with the second main list of the Saptar̥si group, is also frequently associated with the northern rather than the southern region. Taking this fact into account, it may be suggested that certain members of this second main group - as indeed the group as a whole - are closely connected with the southern region: while other members of this group - notably Vasistha and Aṅgiras, as also in part Bhṛgu - most probably owe their inclusion within this group to factors other than those of geographical or regional import. It may further be suggested that such factors arise from Gotra rather than regional considerations: and this point will be further pursued in the general conclusion to this Chapter.

---



It is of relevance to note that the two Ṛsis Vasistha and Angiras - in distinction to any other Ṛsis - share certain myth-types with the Ṛsi Agastya, who has been seen to be very much the Ṛsi of the south. Thus for example both Agastya and Angiras - and no other Ṛsis - are said to have drunk the ocean through the powers of their tapas: <sup>(198)</sup> while both Agastya and Vasistha - and no other Ṛsis - are said to have been born when the seed of Mitra-Varuna fell into a pot. <sup>(199)</sup> The fact that such myths are related connecting Angiras and Vasistha with Agastya suggests a certain community of tradition shared by these Ṛsis: as has also been suggested to be the case with the association of the Ṛsis of the second main list of the Saptarsi group with the southern region. Thus while Agastya has been seen to be closely connected with several of the Ṛsis of that list - such as Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu - so too his connection through myth with Vasistha and Angiras may be interpreted as a further factor connecting the different Ṛsis of that list. In a similar manner one passage in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates that when Parāśara sought to destroy the Rākṣasas, the Ṛsis Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Atri and Vasistha persuaded him against doing so. <sup>(200)</sup> In this passage, the fact that both Atri and Vasistha are associated with the Ṛsis Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu as in a sense the saviours of the Rākṣasas would again tend to indicate a certain community of tradition shared by these Ṛsis.

Thus it may here be concluded that certain factors of regional significance have been operative in the formulation of the second main list of the Saptarsi group. In this respect the nature of the conclusion which may be drawn is a general one, relating to the

(198) e.g. Mahābhārata 3.101.1 - 3.103.19 : 13.138.3.

(199) e.g. Rgveda 7.33.10-13 : Nirukta 5.13-14 : Brhaddevatā 5.143-160 : Mahābhārata 12.291.7ff : 13.143.18 : 13.102.1ff : 3.101.14 : Ramayana 7.55.19 - 7.57.21 : Matsya Purāṇa 61.18-53 : 201.1-39 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.5.1ff etc.

(200) Mahābhārata 1.172.1-17.

overall pattern which emerges from the references when taken as a whole and as concerning the two main groups as a whole: and the conclusion itself is that, while the Rsis of the first main Saptarsi group are associated primarily with a region to the north of the Vindhya, the Rsis of the second main Saptarsi group are on the other hand associated primarily with a region to the south of the Vindhya.

---

#### Section 4 : Conclusion.

It remains now merely to summarise the main conclusions which have been reached during the course of this Chapter, and to draw certain further conclusions as to the nature and degree of influence of both Gotra and regional factors which have been operative in the formulation of the second main list of the Saptarsi group, relating these also to the period of the texts in question within which these two main lists were formulated.

As was stated at the start of this Chapter, one of the main aims has been to attempt to discern some of the major factors which may have had a bearing upon the change in identities of the Rsis included in the Saptarsi group. It was seen in section 2 that such changes as occur may be related in some measure to the influence of factors arising from the role of the Rsis as the ancestors or founders of the seven main Gotras: wherein the exclusion of one Rsi from one of the main lists of the Saptarsi group may be said to be directly related to the inclusion of another Rsi in that list. Thus for example the exclusion of the Rsis Jamadagni, Bharadvāja and Gautama from the second main list may be directly related to the inclusion of the Rsi Angiras - and in part also of Bhṛgu - in that list: a relatedness which is reflected especially in the family relationships which are said to exist between each of these Rsis. Similarly the inclusion of the Rsis Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu in the second main list of the Saptarsi group may be related to the changing status of Agastya and the Āgastyas, in relation firstly to the earlier main list of the group and secondly to the lists of the seven main Gotras - wherein Agastya and the Āgastyas come to play an increasingly important role. In this latter case it may be seen that the inclusion of the Rsis Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu - who are in places referred to as being Āgastyas - reflects a distinct importance being ascribed to the Āgastyas: while this may in turn be linked with

the conclusions reached in section 3 of this Chapter, wherein both Agastya and these three Rsis were seen to be associated primarily with the southern region of India. Placing the conclusions of both of these sections side by side, it may therefore be concluded here that one of the main factors operative in bringing about the change in identities between the Rsis of the two main lists of the Saptarsi group arises from the influence of the members of particular Brahmin Gotras associated especially with the southern region of India - that is to say, with a region lying predominantly to the south of the Vindhyas. This conclusion may be reached through consideration of references both to the Saptarsi group as a whole - wherein a "new" Saptarsi group is said to have been created in the southern region, and gradually comes to usurp the role of the earlier group in the northern region - and also to the individual Rsi-members of that group - who in the case of the second main list have been seen to be associated predominantly with the southern region of India. In this respect it may be said that the second main list of the Saptarsi group has been formulated through both types of factors - regional and Gotra - operating side by side: regional considerations predominating in the cases of the Rsis Marici, Pulastya, Pulaha and Kratu, and Gotra considerations predominating in the cases of the Rsis Angiras, Atri and Vasistha - as also in the case of Bhrgu, insofar as this Rsi is closely associated with and even assimilated into the second main list of the Saptarsi group.

The overall conclusion which thus emerges from this study - namely that the change between the two main lists has been brought about largely due to the influence of the members of particular Brahmin Gotras associated especially with the southern region of India - is one which may be related to the particular period during which the texts which have been considered in this study are generally held to have been composed. This period may - as indicated in the

---

Introduction - be said to extend from approximately 300 B.C. to approximately A.D. 550: and it is well-established that, during this period, fundamental changes were occurring in the social and political climate of India. During the Maurya period (c.315-175 B.C.), for example, the Mauryan empire extended its sway well to the south of the Vindhya - as is indicated most notably by the many rock-edicts of Aśoka which are to be found as far south as present Karnatak. it is only to be expected that social and cultural influences extended not only from north to south, but also flowed in the opposite direction from south to north. During the subsequent period from the end of the Maurya dynasty to the start of the Gupta dynasty (c.175 B.C. - A.D. 320), changes occurred not only in respect of the advent of foreign invaders from the north and west - notably Greeks, Pahlavas, Śakas and Kuṣāṇas - but also in respect of the rise of dynasties in the region to the south of the Vindhya. In the extreme south of India, this period is generally held to have witnessed the composition of the Tamil Śāṅgam literature, as also extensive trading relations with the Roman Empire - both of which may be said to indicate a high degree of cultural dynamism. It is particularly noteworthy in this connection that the Rṣi Agastya is regarded in the south of India as being the father of Tamil grammar and the author of the work Agattiyaṁ - which is said to have been the grammar for the first Śāṅgam and the inspiration for the Tolkāppiyam of the second Śāṅgam written by his pupil Tolkāppiyān. (201)

Between the Vindhya and the extreme south, there arose during this period the dynasty of the Śātavāhanas (c.50 B.C. - A.D. 240), with its capital at Pratiṣṭhāna on the river Godāvarī: which was succeeded by the dynasty of the Vākātakas (c.A.D. 250-540). It may therefore be suggested that the second main list of the Saptarṣi group owes its origin in some measure to Brahmin influences associated with some such cultural milieu as those associated with the Śātavāhana

---

(201) cf. e.g. K.A.N. Sastri - History of South India, pp.76ff.

and Vākātaka dynasties: and with a milieu associated perhaps not so much with a particular dynasty as such, but more especially with the various social or Brahmin groups who were gradually gaining ascendancy -- and gaining an improvement in their social status -- during the period of Śātavāhana and Vākātaka ascendancy. As is known from inscriptional and other data, both the Śātavāhanas and the Vākātakas were noteworthy for seeking a revival of Brahmin customs -- as for example in the case of the performance of Vedic sacrifices, such as the Aśvamedha and Rājasūya:<sup>(202)</sup> and it might therefore well be expected that it should be within some such cultural context that one should seek those Brahmin groups who had an influence over the formulation and development of the second main list of the Saptarsi group -- as indeed also over the further traditions associated with the individual Rsi-members of that group.

The origins and development of the second main list may thus be said to be linked in some measure with the corresponding social and cultural changes which were occurring at the time in question in a region generally to the south of the Vindhya.<sup>(202a)</sup> It may further be suggested that this observation in itself helps to throw some light upon such social and cultural changes: indicating the main region in which such changes were occurring, and indicating also the main Brahmin groups who were instrumental in bringing about such changes -- as also demonstrating a degree of influence within the literary texts parallel to the influence which was being exerted in political and social terms by such trans-Vindhyan dynasties as those of the Śātavāhanas and Vākātakas. Thus it may be concluded overall that the change which occurs between the two main lists of the

(202) Both sacrifices with others in e.g. line 11 of the Nānāghat inscription of Nāgammikā: cf. Sircar -- Select Ins. no.82.

(202a) For further details and more general discussion of social, political and cultural changes under the Śātavāhana and Vākātaka dynasties, see e.g. K.A.N. Sastri -- A History of South India, Ch.6 pp.92-114 + refs.; D.C. Sircar, in Majumdar & Pusalker (ed.) -- The Age of Imperial Unity Chs.13-14 pp.191-227 (History & Culture of the Indian People vol.2); R.C. Majumdar & A.S. Altekar -- The Vākātaka-Gupta Age, esp. Chs.5 & 14-22; etc.

Septarsi group within the literary texts may be said to highlight and to illustrate the increasingly important and influential role which was coming to be occupied during the period in question by cultural influences originating in a region to the south of the Vindhyas. This conclusion is one to which further reference will be made at the end of Chapter 5.

## CHAPTER 4 : The Manvantara Traditions of the Saptarsis.

### Section 1 : Introduction.

The Manvantara, in Hindu Cosmogony, is that period of time which is presided over by one Manu and his sons, one Indra, one group of Gods, and one group of Saptarsis. The Manvantara theory itself is of relatively late appearance in the literary sources: it is scarcely dealt with in any detail in the Epic texts, and is more fully elaborated only in the Harivamśa and in the early Purāṇic texts. It is furthermore only in these latter post-Epic texts that lists of the Saptarsi groups in each of the different Manvantaras are to be found. A brief outline of the underlying Purāṇic theory of Manvantaras may first be given, before examining in detail the lists and traditions of these Saptarsi groups.

One of the main components of quasi-chronological computation in both the Epic and the early Purāṇic texts is the succession of the four Yugas - namely Kṛta or Satya, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali. Explicit in the early Purāṇic texts is the cyclical nature of the succession of Yugas: thus the end of each Kali Yuga is in turn followed by the commencement of a new Kṛta Yuga, thereby giving a continual succession of the four Yugas. One complete succession of the four Yugas is termed a Mahāyuga: and in each new Mahāyuga it is the task of Manu and the Saptarsis to give instructions to the people in the Vedas, in Śruti and Smṛti, in Dharma. Each Mahāyuga lasts for a total of 1200 Divine Years, or 4,320,000 years of men. The Manvantara is considered to consist of a total of just over 71 Mahāyugas (slightly different totals being given in different texts): and each Manvantara is presided over by one Manu and his sons, one Indra, one group of Devas, and one group of Saptarsis. Thus one group of Saptarsis reappears on the earth in order to instruct men in Dharma during 71 consecutive series of the four



Yugas, or during 71 Mahāyugas. There is a total of 14 Manvantaras, and thus a total of 14 different Saptar̥si groups: and the total of 14 Manvantaras is equal to a total of 1,000 Mahāyugas, or 4,320,000,000 years of men - which is the measure of a Kalpa or Day of Brahmā. At the end of this day of Brahmā there occurs the great dissolution of the worlds (naimittika pralaya): the worlds are burnt to ashes by the seven suns, then flooded until they become but a single ocean. Thereafter ensues the night of Brahmā - of equal duration to one day of Brahmā - which is in turn followed by a further day of Brahmā, consisting once again of 14 Manvantaras, having 14 different Saptar̥si groups, a further 1,000 Mahāyugas, and so forth. As elaborated especially in later Purāṇic texts, this cosmogonic scheme continues virtually without end. The life of a Brahmā extends over a period of 100 such years whereof the measure of a single day is equal to the period of 14 Manvantaras: and at the end of the life of a Brahmā, there arises a further Brahmā to take his place. Yet even this length of time is considered miniscular within the compass of Divine Time: for each passing of a Brahmā occupies a time which is but a flicker of the eyelids of Viṣṇu. And so continues the cosmogony of the endless cycle of existence.<sup>(1)</sup>

Within this cosmogonic scheme, lists of each of the Saptar̥si groups in each Manvantara are given for the 14 Manvantaras which together compose the present Kalpa or day of Brahmā. One of the most notable features of this system in the present context - whose significance will be discussed below - is that the Saptar̥sis of the first or Svāyambhuva Manvantara are considered to be the R̥sis of the second main list commencing with Marīci: while the Saptar̥sis of the "present" seventh or Vaivasvata Manvantara are considered to be the R̥sis of the first main list commencing with

(1) cf. Matsya Purāṇa 142.1ff : Mārkaṇdeya Purāṇa 46.1ff : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.3.1ff : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.38.1ff : Brāhmāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.1.1ff.

Viśvāmitra. As has been mentioned, lists of the Saptarṣi groups within the Manvantaras are not to be found in the Epic texts: and both the Harivaṁśa and the Matsya Purāṇa enumerate the Saptarṣi groups for only the first eight of the fourteen Manvantaras.

Complete lists for all of the 14 Manvantaras are thus given only in the Mārkaṇḍeya, Viṣṇu, Vāyu, and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas among the texts being considered in the present study: and this would of itself tend to imply that the full details of the Manvantara lists of the Saptarṣis were formulated only at a relatively late stage in the development of the Epic and Purāṇic literature, and in the development of the Saptarṣi traditions. Further such indications will be noted during the course of the Chapter.

---

Section 2 : The Identity of the Saptarsis in the 14 Manvantaras.

(a) The Lists of the Saptarsis.

In the following pages the lists of the Saptarsis in the Manvantaras are set out in tabulated form: and a few preface remarks may be made concerning these lists. It is especially noteworthy that the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa list the Saptarsi groups for only the first eight of the fourteen Manvantaras. Several manuscripts and editions of the Harivamśa contain lists for all 14 of the Manvantaras; and as collated in the BORI Critical Edition, these are as follows:

1 Śāradā : 2 (of 4) Devanāgarī versions allied to the Śāradā :  
Devanāgarī versions of Nilakantha and Śivadāsa : 2 (of 6) further  
Devanāgarī versions.

TOTAL 7 MSS.

On the other hand, those which contain lists for only the first eight of the fourteen Manvantaras are as follows:

3 Newārī : 3 Maithilī : 3 Bengali : 4 Telugu : 4 Malayālam :  
5 Grantha : 2 (of 4) Devanāgarī versions allied to Śāradā :  
4 (of 6) further Devanāgarī versions.

TOTAL 28 MSS.

This would clearly suggest that the latter part of the lists has been added subsequent to the main composition of the work: and it may further be noted that the Rsis listed for Manvantaras 9-14 are enumerated with family or Gotra names (Āṅgīrasa, Bhārgava etc.) - a phenomenon which does not occur with the Rsis listed for Manvantaras 1-8 in this text. The addition of Gotra names occurs only in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, among the texts being considered in the present study: and it would seem logical to conclude that such an occurrence is likely to denote a subsequent development from the

mere listing of personal names - as occurs in the Mārkaṇḍeya and Viṣṇu Purāṇas, and also in the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa. Further details of similarity and difference in the individual names of Ṛsis will be discussed in the following sub-section.

It may also be noted that several of these texts - particularly the Mārkaṇḍeya and Viṣṇu Purāṇas - do not state explicitly the identities of the Ṛsis in the Svāyambhuva Manvantara: their identities are in such contexts virtually taken for granted, since such Ṛsis - namely those of the group commencing with Marīci - have previously been discussed in some detail in these texts in the context of their being the sons of Svayambhu or Brahmā. Similarly the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas speak of this group - commencing with Marīci - as the Saptarṣis of the Svāyambhuva Manvantara not together with the other Manvantara groups, but rather in a considerably earlier context: and in all of these texts, this group of Saptarṣis is invariably given precedence and enhanced importance in comparison with all the other groups of Saptarṣis - including that of the seventh or Vaivasvata Manvantara, which consists of the Ṛsis commencing with Viśvāmitra who appear primarily in the earlier texts (see Chapter 1), and who in the Purāṇic texts are of secondary importance to the group commencing with Marīci.

---

Table 1 : The Manvantara Lists of the Santarṣi Group - Harivamśa.

<u>Manvantara</u>	<u>Santarṣis</u>
Svāyambhuva	Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasistha.
Svārocisa	Aurva son of Vasistha, Stamba Kāśyapa, Prāna, Brhaspati, Datta, Atri (or Datto'tri), Cyavana.
Autami	7 sons of Vasistha called Vāsisthas: sons of Hiranyagarbha, born ūrjāh/strong.
Tāmasa	Kāvya, Prthu, Agni, Jānu, Dhātṛ, Kapivān, Akapivān,
Raivata	Vedabāhu, Yadudhra, muni Vedaśiras, Hiranyaloma, Parjanya, Urdhvabāhu somaḥ, Satyanetra Ātreya.
Cākṣusa	Bhṛgu, Nabha, Vivasvat, Sudhāman, Virajas, Atināman, Sahisnu.
Vaivasvata	Atri, Vasistha, Kāśyapa, Gautama, Bharadvāja, Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni son of Rcika.
Sāvarni	Rāma, Vyāsa Dīptimat Ātreya, Drauniraśvatthāman Bharadvāja, Śaradvat Gautama son of Gotama, Gālava Kauśika, Ruru Kāśyapa.
	Rsis for remaining 6 Manvantaras added by later hand: listed in Appendix 1.1 of Critical Edition.

Table 2 : The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarṣi Group - Matsya Purāṇa.

<u>Manvantara</u>	<u>Saptarṣis</u>
Svāyambhuva	Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulaha, Kratu, Pulastya, Vasistha.
Svārocisa	Datta, Niścaya, Vanastamba, Prāṇa, Kaśyapa, Aurva, Brhaspati.
Auttamī	the ūrjāḥ: Kaukurandi, Dālbya, Śaṅga, Pravahana, Śiva, Sita, Sasmita.
Tāmasa	Kavi, Prthu, Agni, Akapi, Kapi, Jalpa, Dhīmān.
Raivata	Devabhū, Subhū, Parjanya, Somapa, Muni, Hiraṇyaroṃa, Saptāśva.
Cākṣusa	Bhr̥gu, Sudhāman, Virajas, Sahisnu, Nāda, Vivasvat, Atināman.
Vaivasvata	Atri, Vasistha, Kaśyapa, Gautama, Bharadvāja, Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni.
Sāvarṇi	Aśvatthāman, Śaredvat, Kauśika, Gālava, Śātānanda, Kāśyapa, Rāma.
	"There will be another 6 Manus after Sāvarṇi: Raucya, Bhautya, Merusāvarṇi, Rta, Rtadhāman, Viśvakṣena". (Rsis not listed).

Table 3 : The Manvantara Lists of the Santarasi Group - Markandeya Purāṇa

<u>Manvantara</u>	<u>Santarasi</u>
Svāyambhuva	Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Palaha, Kratu, Vasistha.
Svarocisa	Ūrja, Stamba, Prāṇa, Dattoli, R̥sabha, Niścara, Arvavīrat.
Autami	7 sons of that Manu.
Tamasa	Jyotirdhāman, Pr̥thu, Kāvya, Caitra, Agni, Valeka, Pīvara.
Raivata	Hiranyaloman, Vedaśrī, Ūrdhvaśaku, Vedabāhu, Sudhāman, Parjanya mahāmuni, Vasiṣṭha.
Caksusa	Sumedhas, Virajas, Haviṣmat, Unnata, Madhu, Atināman, Sahisnu.
Vaivasvata	Atri, Vasiṣṭha, Kāśyapa, Gautama, Bharadvāja, Viśvāmitra, Kauśika, Jamadagni son of R̥ika.
Sāvarṇi	Rama, Vyāsa, Gālava, Dīptimat, Kṛpa, R̥ṣyaśṛṅga, Droni.
Dakṣa-sāvarṇi	Medhātithi, Vasu, Satya, Jyotiṣmat, Dyutimat, Sabala, Haryavāhana.
Brahmā-sāvarṇi	Āpamūrtti, Haviṣmat, Sukṛtī, Satya, Nābhāga, Apratima, Vasiṣṭha.
Dharma-sāvarṇi	Haviṣmat, Varistha, Aruni, Niścara, Anagha, Viṣṭi, Agnideva (R̥sti).
Raudra-sāvarṇi	Dyuti, Tapasvin, Sutapas, Tapomūrtti, Taponidhi, Taporati, Tapodhṛti.
Raucya	Dhṛtimat, Avyaya, Tattvadarśin, Nirutsuka, Nirnoha, Sutapas, Nisprakampa.
Bhautya	Agnīdhra, Agnibāhu, Śuci, Mukta, Mādhava, Śukra, Ajita.

Table 4 : The Manvantara Lists of the Santarsi Group -- Viṣṇu Purāṇa.

<u>Manvantara</u>	<u>Santarsis</u>
Svāyambhuve	Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasistha.
Svārocisa	Ūrja, Stamba, Prāṇa, Dattoli, Rsabha, Niścara, Urvarivat.
Auttaṃi	7 sons of Vasistha.
Tamasa	Jyotirdhāman, Prthu, Kāvya, Caitra, Agni, Vanaka, Pivara.
Raivata	Hiranyaroma, Vedaśrī, Ūrdhvaśāhu, Vedabāhu, Sudhāman, Parjanya, Mahāmuni.
Cakṣuṣa	Sumedhas, Virajas, Havismat, Uttama, Madhu, Atināman, Sahisnu.
Vaivasvata	Vasistha, Kaśyapa, Atri, Jamadagni, Gautama, Viśvāmitra, Bharadvāja.
Sāvarni	Dīptimat, Gālava, Rāma, Kṛpa, Drauni, Vyāsa, Ryaśrṅga.
Dakṣa-sāvarni	Śabala, Dyutimat, Bhavya, Vasu, Medhādhṛti, Jyotiṣmat, Satya.
Brahmā-sāvarni	Havismat, Sukṛti, Satya, Apomūrti, Nābhāga, Apratimaujas, Satyaketu.
Dharma-sāvarni	Niścara, Agnitejas, Vapummat, Viṣṇu, Āzuni, Havismat, Anagha.
Rudra-sāvarni	Tapasvin, Sutapas, Tapomūrti, Taporati, Tapodhṛti, Dyuti, Tapodhana.
Raucya	Nirmoha, Tattvadarśin, Nisprakampa, Nirutsuka, Dhṛtimat, Avyaya, Sutapas.
Bhautya	Agnibāhu, Śuci, Śukra, Māgadha, Agnidhra, Yukta, Ajita.



Table 5 : The Manvantara Lists of the Saptarsi Group - Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa.

Manvantara	Saptarsis
Svāyambhuva	(Bhrgv) Āṅgiras, Marīci, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Atri, Vasistha.
Svarocisa	Ūrja Vāsistha, Stamba Kāśyapa, Prāna Bhārgava, Ṛṣabha Āṅgirasa, Dattotri Paulastya, Niścāla Ātreya, Arvarīvat Paulaha.
Auttamī	7 sons of Vasistha called 7 Vāsisthas.
Tamasa	Kāvya Āṅgirasa, Prthu Kāśyapa, Agni Ātreya, Jyotirdhāman Bhārgava, Caraka Paulaha, Pīvara Vāsistha, Caitra Paulastya.
Raivata	Devabāhu Paulastya, Sudhāman Kāśyapa, Hiranyaroma Āṅgirasa, Vedaśrī Bhārgava, Ūrdhvabāhu Vāsistha, Parjanya Paulaha, Satyanetra Ātreya.
Cāksusa	Uttama Bhārgava, Haviṣmat Āṅgirasa, Sudhāman Kāśyapa, Virajas Vāsistha, Atināman Paulastya, Sahisṇu Paulaha, Madhu Ātreya.
Vaivasvata	Viśvāmitra son of Gādhi Kauśika, Jamadagni Bhārgava s/o Aurva, Bharadvāja s/o Bṛhaspati, Gautama Saradvat Autathya, Atri s/o Svayambhu, Vāsistha Vasumat, Vatsara Kāśyapa.
Sāvarṇi	Gālava Kauśika, Jamadagnya Bhārgava, Dvaipāyana Vāsistha, Kṛpa Sāradvat, Dīptimat Ātreya, Ṛṣyaśrāga Kāśyapa, Drauniraśvatthaman Bhāradvāja.
Meru-sāvarṇi (or Rohita-s, s/o Dakṣa)	Medhātithi Paulastya, Vasu Kāśyapa, Jyotismat Bhārgava, Dyutimat Āṅgirasa, Vasiṇas Vāsistha, Havyāvāhana Ātreya, Sutapas Paulaha.
Dharma-sāvarṇi	Haviṣmat Paulaha, Sukīrti Bhārgava, Apomūrti Ātreya, Āpava Vāsistha, Apratima Paulastya, Nābhāga Kāśyapa, Abhimanyu Āṅgirasa.
Brahma-sāvarṇi	Haviṣmat Kāśyapa, Vapusmat Bhārgava, Āruṇi Ātreya, Naga Vāsistha, Puṣṭi Āṅgirasa, Niścara Paulastya, Atitejas Paulaha.
Rudra-sāvarṇi	Dyuti Vāsistha, Sutapas Ātreya, Tapomūrti Āṅgirasa, Tapasvin Kāśyapa, Tapodhana Paulastya, Taporati Paulaha, Tapodhṛti Bhārgava.
Raucya	Dhṛtimat Āṅgirasa, Avyaya Paulastya, Tattvaderśin Paulaha, Nirutsuka Bhārgava, Niṣprakampya Ātreya, Nirmoha Kāśyapa, Sutapas Vāsistha.
Bhautya	Agnīdhra Kāśyapa, Māgadha Paulastya, Agnibāhu Bhārgava, Śuci Āṅgirasa, Sukra Vāsistha, Mukta Paulaha, Svājita Ātreya.

Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.13.103: 1.2.36.17-18, .38, .47-48, .61-63, .77-78:  
1.2.38.26-30: 3.4.1.9-12, .62-64, 69-71, .78-80,  
.91-93, 102-103, 112-114.

Table 6 : The Manvantara Lists of the Santarasi Group -- Vāyu Purāṇa.

Manvantara	Santarasis
Svāyambhuva	(Dhrgv) Āṅgiras, Marīci, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Atri, Vasistha.
Svarocisa	Ūrja Vāsistha, Stamba Kāśyapa, Drona Bhārgava, Rsabha Āṅgirasa, Dattātri Paulastya, Nisāla Ātreya, Dhāvat Paulaha.
Auttamā	Omits Rsis.
Tāmāsa	Kāvya (&) Harṣa, Prthu Kāśyapa, Agni Ātreya, Jyotirdhāman Bhārgava, Vanāpīṭhā Paulaha, Gotra Vāsistha, Caitra Paulastya.
Raivata	Vedabāhu Paulastya, Yajurnāman Kāśyapa, Hiranyaroma Āṅgirasa, Vedaśrī Bhārgava, Ūrdhvabāhu Vāsistha, Parjanya Paulaha, Satyanetra Ātreya.
Cāksusa	Unnata Bhārgava, Havismat Āṅgirasa, Sudhāman Kāśyapa, Virajas Vāsistha, Atimāna Paulastya, Sahisnu Paulaha, Madhu Ātreya.
Vaivasvata	Viśvāmitra son of Gādhi Kauśika, Jamadagni s/o Ūru Bhārgava, Bharadvāja s/o Brhaspati, Gautama Śaradvat Autathya, Atri s/o Svayambhu, Vasumat s/o Vasistha, Vatsara Kāśyapa.
Sāvarni	Gālava Kauśika, Jamadagnya Bhārgava, Dvaipāyana Vasistha, Kṛpa Śaradvat, Dīptimat Ātreya, Rṣyaśrīga Kāśyapa, Drōniraśvatthāman Bhāradvāja.
Meru-sāvarni (or Rohita-s, s/o Dakṣa)	Medhātithi Paulastya, Vasu Kāśyapa, Jyotismat Bhārgava, Dyutimat Āṅgirasa, Vasita Vāsistha, Havyavāhana Ātreya, Sutapas Paulaha.
Dharma-sāvarni	Havismat Paulaha, Sukīrti Bhārgava, Apomūrti Ātreya, Vasistha (āni yah replaces ānavah), Pratipa Paulastya, Nabhaga Kāśyapa, Abhimanyu Āṅgirasa.
Brahmā-sāvarni	Havismat Kāśyapa, Vapusmat Bhārgava, Vārūni Ātreya, Bhaga Vāsistha, Puṣṭi Āṅgirasa, Nisāra Paulastya, Agnitejas Paulaha.
Rudra-sāvarni	Kṛti Vāsistha, Sutapas Ātreya, Tapomūrti Āṅgirasa, Tapasvin Kāśyapa, Tapośayāna Paulastya, Taporati Paulaha, Tapomati Bhārgava.
Raucya	Dhṛtimat Āṅgirasa, Pathyavat Paulastya, Tattvadarśin Paulaha, Nirutsuka Bhārgava, Niṣprakampa Ātreya, Nirmoha Kāśyapa, Svarūpa Vāsistha.
Bhautya	Agnidhra Kāśyapa, Māgadha Paulastya, Agnibāhu Bhārgava, Śuci Āṅgirasa. (Omits other 3 Rsis)

Vāyu Purāṇa 1.31.15-17: 2.1.15-16, .35, .40-42, .53-54, .65-66;  
 2.3.24-28: 2.38.9-12, .66-68, .73-74, .81-83, .96-97,  
 .106-108, .116.

210

(b) Examination of the Lists.

Although the Epic texts give no complete lists of the Saptarṣi groups in each of the Manvantaras, it is clear from certain references that the underlying idea of different Saptarṣi groups appearing in each of the Manvantaras was already becoming current. Thus for example a passage in the Anuśāsana Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates that Kṛṣṇa will be reckoned among the Saptarṣis in the Sāvarni (here called Sāvarna) Manvantara:

"mayi sambhavetas tasya phalāt kṛṣṇo bhaviṣyati |  
sāvarnasya manoh sarge saptarṣiś ca bhaviṣyati" || (2)

It is equally quite clear that this reference indicates the lack of any definitive formulation of the Saptarṣi groups in the Manvantaras, such as is found in the early Purāṇic texts. For in the lists which occur in those texts, Kṛṣṇa is not enumerated as one of the Saptarṣis in the Sāvarni - nor indeed in any - Manvantara.

In the following analysis, the identity of the Ṛṣis - as given in the previously-listed texts - in each of the Manvantaras will be examined individually.

i. Svāyambhuva Manvantara.

These Ṛṣis are, as noted earlier, the seven who are predominantly referred to as The Saptarṣis in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts generally. It will be noted that the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas include Bhṛgu in this group of seven - thus listing in effect eight Ṛṣis, but decreasing the number to seven by listing Bhṛgu and Aṅgiras conjointly as a single Ṛṣi "Bhṛgvaṅgiras":

"bhṛgvaṅgirā marīciś ca pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
atṛiś caiva vasiṣṭhaś ca sapta svāyambhuve 'ntare" || (3)

(2) Mahābhārata 13.18.29.

(3) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.13.103 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.31.16-17.

Although grammatically the form "Bhrgvaṅgirā" here denotes a single Rsi, it may be noted that nearly all other lists of Rsis which include Bhrgu list him as a separate Rsi, rather than conjointly with Ṃgiras: as has been seen in Chapter 2. Furthermore, a passage in the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa again contains the same grammatical form Bhrgvaṅgiras, but makes it clear this time that two separate Rsis - Bhrgu and Ṃgiras - are designated by this form by stating the total number of Rsis listed to be eight:

"bhrgvaṅgirā marīciś ca pulastyah pulahah kratuh |  
atriś caiva vasisthaś ca hy astau te brahmanah sutaḥ" || (4)

It may moreover be observed that the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas also include Gotra names for the Rsis in each of the subsequent Manvantaras: wherein the Gotra names are Ṃgirasa, Bhārgava, Vāsistha, Ātreya, Paulastya, Paulaha, and Kāśyapa. Although the Harivaṁśa and the Matsya Purāṇa list Bhrgu as one of the Saptarsis in the Cākṣusa Manvantara, the other Purāṇic texts omit mention of Bhrgu as one of the Saptarsis: hence the attempt in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas to include Bhrgu among the group of Saptarsis in the Svāyambhuva Manvantara - in the form Bhrgvaṅgiras - may be seen as yet another attempt to include this Rsi in the group of seven, in a manner comparable to the further attempts noted especially in Chapter 2. One reason - as has already been suggested - for the attempt to include this Rsi may be related in some measure to the growing importance in certain spheres of the Bhārgava Gotra - which is thus acknowledged by the inclusion of a Bhārgava Rsi in each of the succeeding thirteen Manvantaras. Much the same may be said of the Rsi Kāśyapa, and of the Kāśyapa Gotra, in this context: for while Kāśyapa is generally considered to be one of the Saptarsis in the group which appears in the Vaivasvata Manvantara, the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas include a Kāśyapa Rsi in each of the Manvantaras,

even though they fail to mention the Ṛṣi Kaśyapa in any of the Manvantaras and replace "Kaśyapa" in the Vaivasvata Manvantara by "Vatsara Kaśyapa". A similar anomaly occurs in the Mārkaṇḍeya and Viṣṇu Purāṇas, which include (a) Kāśyapa but exclude any mention of the Ṛṣi Kaśyapa in these Manvantara lists of Saptarṣis. The inclusion of Gotra names in the Manvantara lists of the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas has already been discussed further in Chapter 3: and in the present context it may be noted that the Gotra-designations in these two texts correspond to the names of the Ṛṣis in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group, but with the substitution of Kaśyapa for his father Marīci (see Chapter 3) and of Bhṛgu for Kratu - the latter of which has been seen to occur in further Purāṇic passages<sup>(5)</sup> (see Chapter 2).

#### ii. Svārocisa Manvantara.

Stamba appears in all these lists, Prāṇa in all but the Vāyu Purāṇa where he is replaced by Drona: similarly Niścala (-ra, -ya) appears in all but the Harivamśa. Aurva (son of Vasistha in the Mahābhārata and elsewhere) in the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa is replaced by Ūrja (Vāsistha) in all the other lists: similarly Brhaspati (son of Aṅgiras) is replaced by Ṛṣabha (Āṅgirasa). The forms Dattoli, Dattotri and Dattātri designate but a single Ṛṣi in all except the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa: in the latter of these the form Datta is given, and in the former Datto'tri - which might be interpreted as designating one (Dattotri) or two (Datta, Atri) Ṛṣis. If it be interpreted as designating only one Ṛṣi, however, then the list will contain a total of only six rather than seven Ṛṣis. The forms Cyavana in the Harivamśa and Kaśyapa in the Matsya Purāṇa would appear to be isolated occurrences: while the forms Dhāvat, Arvarivat, Arvavirat and Urvarivat in the other texts

(5) e.g. Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.49-50 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.49-51 : Matsya Purāṇa 195.8-11.

would appear to be intended to denote the same Rsi.

### iii. Auttami Manvantara.

These Rsis are generally called the seven sons of Vasistha, or the seven Vāsisthas: the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa again agree in calling them the ūrjāh. The Vāyu, Brahmandā, Mārkaṇḍeya and Viṣṇu Purāṇas all name these seven Vāsisthas in further contexts, calling them: Rakṣa/Rajas, Gartta/Gātra, Ūrdhvabāhu, Savana/Sabala, Pavara/Anagha, Sutapas, and Śamkur/Śukla/Śukra.<sup>(6)</sup> These names are clearly quite different from those given in the Manvantara list in the Matsya Purāṇa.

### iv. Tāmāsa Manvantara.

Kavya/Kavi, Prthu and Agni are common to all these lists. The term Harṣa in the Vāyu Purāṇa would appear to be an error for the Gotra-name Āṅgīrasa - as is given in the corresponding passage in the Brahmandā Purāṇa. Dhīmān in the Matsya Purāṇa and Dhātṛ in the Harivamśa would seem intended to correspond to Jyotirdhāman in the other texts. Pīvara, Vanapītha, Kapīvān and Kapi would seem intended to denote the same Rsi: similarly Caraka, Gotra, Valaka and Vanaka in all but the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa. Caitra is common to all but the latter two texts. The forms Jahnu/Jalpa and Akapi/Akapīvān in the latter two texts again demonstrate a common tradition followed by these two texts in distinction to that followed by the remaining four Purāṇic texts.

### v. Raiivata Manvantara.

Vedabāhu/Devabāhu, Parjanya, Hiranyaloma (-roma), and Ūrdhvabāhu (Subāhu in the Matsya Purāṇa) are common to all these texts. Vedaśrī

---

(6) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.28.33-35 : Brahmandā Purāṇa 1.2.11.39-42 :  
Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 52.14-26 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.10.13-14.

(Vedaśiras in the Harivamśa) is common to all but the Matsya Purāṇa: and while the Harivamśa describes Vedaśiras as mahāmuni, the Matsya Purāṇa would appear to replace the R̥ṣi by his epithet "Muni". Mahāmuni in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and Vaśiṣṭha in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa are isolated forms: while Satyanetra in the Harivamśa and in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas would seem intended to correspond to Saptāśva in the Matsya Purāṇa. Sudhāman in the Viṣṇu, Mārkaṇḍeya and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas would seem intended to correspond to Yajurnāman in the Vāyu Purāṇa, and to Yadudhra in the Harivamśa: while this name is replaced by the isolated form Somapa in the Matsya Purāṇa.

#### vi. Caksusa Manvantara.

Virajas, Atināman/Ātimāna, and Sahiṣṇu are common to all these lists: the forms Sudhāman and Sumedhas would seem intended to denote the same R̥ṣi, as would also the forms Nabha (Harivamśa), Nāda (Matsya Purāṇa) and Madhu (other texts). Havīṣmat is common to all but the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa, both of which replace this name with Vivasvat: similarly the form Bhrgu in these latter two texts is replaced by Unnata/Uttama Bhārgava in the other texts.

#### vii. Vaivasvata Manvantara.

As previously noted, these R̥ṣis compose the first main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group, which is the only Saptar̥ṣi group referred to in the earlier literature. The only point calling for further comment in the present context is that, while the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa enumerate the group as in the earlier texts, the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas replace Kaśyapa by (a) Kāśyapa:<sup>(7)</sup> and the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas elaborate upon this process of replacing the original R̥ṣis by one of their descendants in enumerating Vasumat

(7) n.b. this and similar variants apply to the editions cited in Bibliography 1.

Vāsistha (in place of Vasistha), Vatsara Kāśyapa (in place of Kāśyapa), and Śaradvat Autathya Gautama (in place of Gotama).

viii. Sāvarni Manvantara.

This is the last Manvantara for which lists of the Saptarsi groups are given in the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa. The only differences between these various lists is that Vyāsa is termed simply Dvaipāyana in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, wherein Rāma is also termed simply Jāmadagnya: the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas have Drauṇi/Droni, and the Matsya Purāṇa Aśvatthāman, where the other texts have Drauniraśvatthāman: the Harivamśa has Ruru Kāśyapa, and the Matsya Purāṇa simply Kāśyapa, where the other texts have R̥syaśr̥ṅga Kāśyapa: the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa have Śaradvat, and the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas have Kṛpa, where the Vāyu and Brāhmāṇḍa Purāṇas have Kṛpa Śāradvat: and the Matsya Purāṇa omits Vyāsa, and can only complete a total of seven R̥sis if Gālava and Kauśika are regarded as two separate R̥sis -- even though the other texts, namely the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, regard Gālava Kauśika as a single figure.

ix. Dakṣa- (Meru-/Rohita-)sāvarni Manvantara.

Medhātithi (Medhādhr̥ti in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa), Vasu, Jyotiṣmat, and Dyutimat are common to all four of these lists: and Dhavya in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa would seem intended to correspond to Havyavāhana (Haryav-) in the other texts. Sabala and Satya in the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas clearly have little common origin with Vasita and Sutapas in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas.

x. Dharmā- (Brahmā-)sāvarni Manvantara.

Haviṣmat, Sukṛti/Sukīrti, Apomūrti, Nābhāga, and Apratima/Pratipa/



Apratimaujas are common to all these lists. Āpava Vāsistha, Vasistha, Vāsistha, and also the variant Satyaketu would seem intended to denote the same Rsi: while Satya in the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas again has little common origin with Abhimanyu in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas.

xi. Brahmā- (Dharma-)sāvarṇi Manvantara.

Haviṣmat, Āruṇi/Vāruṇi, Niścara, and Agnitejas/Atitejas/Agnideva are common to all these lists. Bhaga, Naga and Anagha would seem intended to denote the same Rsi: as also Pustī, Viṣṭi and Viṣṇu. Varistha in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa would similarly seem intended to correspond to Vapuṣmat in the other texts.

xii. Rudra-sāvarṇi Manvantara.

The only differences between these lists are that Kṛti in the Vāyu Purāṇa corresponds to Dyuti in the other texts: and similarly Tapo'sāyana corresponds to Tapodhana and Taponidhi, while Tapomati corresponds to Tapodhṛti.

xiii. Raucya Manvantara.

The only differences between these texts are that Pathyavat in the Vāyu Purāṇa corresponds to Avyaya in the other texts: while similarly Svarūpa corresponds to Sutapas.

xiv. Bhautya Manvantara.

The Vāyu Purāṇa lists only four of these seven Rsis: of these, Mādhava in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa corresponds to Māgadha in the other texts. Of the remaining three Rsis, Yukta in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa corresponds to Mukta in the other two texts, while Svājita in the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa corresponds to Ajita in the other two texts.

(c) Observations.

These texts may be divided into three main groups. The first group comprises the Harivaṁśa and the Matsya Purāṇa, which contain several names distinctive to these texts alone, and which list the Saptarṣi groups for only the first eight Manvantaras. The second group comprises the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, which share many names in common with the other texts but which also contain several names distinctive to these two texts alone ( for example in the Dakṣa-sāvarṇi Manvantara). The third group comprises the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, which not only contain several names distinctive to these two texts alone but also list the Gotra-names of each of the Ṛsis in each Manvantara. Thus while the Harivaṁśa and the Matsya Purāṇa may be considered to contain the earliest accounts of the Saptarṣi groups in each Manvantara - at a stage when such groups had not yet been formulated for all 14 of the Manvantaras - the other four texts generally draw upon a common source, while also demonstrating distinct features indicative of two divergent sources as between the Viṣṇu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas on the one hand, and the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas on the other hand.

The most notable feature common to all six of these texts is the degree of consensus evident in the enumeration of the Saptarṣi groups for the Svāyambhuva and Vaivasvata Manvantaras. In the case of the latter group of Ṛsis, it is consistently said that these are the Saptarṣis of the present age:

"ete saptarṣayaś caktā vartante sāmprate 'ntare" | (8)

In further contexts a far greater importance is given to the Ṛsis of the Svāyambhuva Manvantara - the Sons of Brahmā: and a passage in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas goes so far as to suggest that a group of Saptarṣis endures throughout an entire Kalpa or day of Brahmā - such a group being that headed by Sattva/Satya in the past

Kalpa, and that headed by Bhṛgu (who in these texts is listed as a Ṛṣi of the Svāyambhuva Manvantara) in the present Kalpa:

"bhṛgvādayo yathoddīṣṭas tasmin kāle maharṣayah |  
satyādayas tathā tv aṣṭau kalpe līne maharṣayah" || (9)

"bhṛgvādayo yathā sapta kalpe hy aṣmin maharṣayah |  
....

satyadyā sapta ye hy āsan kalpe 'tīte maharṣayah" || (10)

In these and other contexts there would appear to be an attempt to minimise the importance of the group of Saptarṣis headed by Viśvāmitra (namely the first main list of the group), and to maximise the importance of the group of Saptarṣis headed by Marīci (namely the second main list of the group). It will also be noted that there is an attempt in the first of these passages to increase the number of members of the group from seven to eight. Both of these attempts are thus fully consistent with similar tendencies -- both to emphasise the second main list of the group and to increase the number of members of that group -- which have been noted elsewhere in the Epic and Purāṇic texts in preceding Chapters.

(9) Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.6.70.

(10) Vāyu Purāṇa 1.7.67-69.

Section 3 : The Saptarsis within the Manvantara Theory.

(a) The Function and Appearance of the Saptarsis within the Manvantara.

The main function of each of the Saptarsi groups within each Manvantara is to establish Dharma upon the earth - whereupon they depart from the earth to their abode, which is usually stated to be in Maharloka (see sub-section (c) below). Thus it is said for example in a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa that there are groups of seven Maharsis in every Manvantara, who establish Dharma and then depart to the highest abode:

"manvantaresu sarvesu sapta sapta maharsayah ||  
kṛtvā dharmavyavasthānam prayānti paramam padam" | (11)

This same process occurs not once but in each of the 71 Mahāyugas within a single Manvantara: and it is said for example that when each new Satya or Krta Yuga comes (but see also next sub-section), the Saptarsis then reappear to instruct the new people in Dharma:

"utpannāḥ kaliśiṣṭeṣu prajāḥ kṛtāyugās tathā |  
....  
saha saptarsibhir ye tu tatra ye ca vyavasthitāḥ |  
....  
tesāṃ saptarsayo dharmam kathayantiḥa tesu ca ||  
....  
te tu dharmavyavasthānartham tiṣṭhantiḥa kṛte yuge ||  
manvantarādhikāresu tiṣṭhanti rsayas tu te" | (12)

A passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa relates that at the end of every four Yugas the Vedas disappear, whereupon the Saptarsis come to the earth in order to teach them again:

"caturyugānte vedānam jāyate kila viplavaḥ |  
pravartayanti tān etya bhuvi saptarsayo divaḥ" || (13)

According to a passage in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, the Saptarsis heard

(11) Matsya Purāṇa 9.30-31.

(12) Matsya Purāṇa 144.93-98 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.31.104-109 : etc.

(13) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 3.2.44.

the Vedas from the mouths of Brahmā, whereupon those Mind-born ones took the Vedas from him:

"utpannamātrasya purā brahmano 'vyaktojanmanah |  
purānam etad vedāś ca mukhebhyo 'muvinihsrtāh ||

....

vedān saptarsayas tasmāj jagrhuḥ tasya mānasāh" | (14)

A passage in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas adds that at the start of each new Tretā Yuga the Saptarsis, together with Manu, re-utter Śruti, Smṛti and Dharma, and people the worlds through the Rsi-Vamśas:

"ṛsivamśasprasamgena vyākulatvāt tathaiiva ca |  
atra tretāyugasyādan manuḥ saptarsayaś ca ye ||  
śrautam smṛtam ca te dharmam brahmanānupracoditam |  
dārāgnihotrāsambandham ṛgyajuhśāmāsamhitam ||  
ityādilakṣaṇam śrautam dharmam saptarsayo 'bruvan" | (15)

Thus each group of Saptarsis reappears again and again within each Mahāyuga in order to teach and establish Śruti, Smṛti and Dharma upon the earth.

The teaching function of each Saptarsi group is said to be carried on throughout the Manvantara. In the Manvantara system of the Purāṇic texts, each Manu and each Saptarsi group is said to exist for a complete Manvantara of (slightly more than) 71 Mahāyugas: and at the end of the Manvantara there then arises a new Manu and a new Saptarsi group. Thus it is said, for example in the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, that at the end of the Cākṣusa Manvantara and at the start of the Vaivasvata Manvantara the Saptarsis were born again:

"ādye manvantare 'tītāh sargaprēvartakās tu ye |  
svāyambhuve 'ntare purvam saptasān ye maharsayah ||  
cākṣusasyāntare 'tīte prāpte vaivasvate punah" | (16)

The passage continues by relating explicitly that those Saptarsis

(14) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 45.20-23.

(15) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.29.43-45 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.57.38-40.

(16) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.7-8 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.7-9.

were born again who had formerly - during the first or Svāyambhuva Manvantara - been the seven Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, namely Bhṛgu and the others:

"daksasya ca ṛṣiṇāṃ ca bhṛgvādīnāṃ mahaujasāṃ ||  
 ....  
 bhūyah saptarṣayas tv evaṃ utpannāḥ sapta mānasāḥ ||  
 putratve kalpitāś caiva svayam eva svayambhuva |  
 ṛṣayo jajñire dīrghe dvitīyam iti naḥ śrutam ||  
 bhṛgvaṅgīrā marīciś ca pulastyaḥ pulahaḥ kratuh |  
 atriś caiva vasisthaś ca hy aṣṭau te brahmaṇaḥ sutāḥ" || (17)

It will be noted that the passage contains several inconsistencies: notably inasmuch as it speaks of seven Ṛsis and Mind-born Sons, seven Ṛsis commencing with Bhṛgu, but eight Sons of Brahmā ( in effect including Bhṛgu in the second main list of the Saptarṣi group). This aspect of the passage has been discussed in Chapter 2. The passage also refers to only two births of these Saptarṣis: firstly in the Svāyambhuva age, and secondly "after a long time" at the end of the Cākṣuṣa and start of the Vaivasvata age. It may again be suggested that this passage witnesses to a stage in the formulation of the Saptarṣi Manvantara traditions wherein the different groups of Saptarṣis for each of the different Manvantaras had not yet been fully formulated: whence it is said in the above passage that the Saptarṣis were born only twice - namely in this context in the Svāyambhuva and Vaivasvata Manvantaras. Further such indications will be noted in the next sub-section.

A passage in the Matsya Purāṇa relates that both Manu and the Saptarṣis are called promoters of the universe and establishers of Dharma: and that each group of Saptarṣis tells (in the next Manvantara) what it has heard from the Saptarṣis of the preceding Manvantara - whence such knowledge is called "śruti":

(17) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.1.8-21 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.8-21 :  
 cf. Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.21.27-28.

"pūrvebhyo vedayitveha śrautam saptarṣayo 'bruvan ||  
 rco yajūmsi sāmāni brahmaṇo 'ṅāni vai śrutih |  
 manvantarasyātītasya smṛtvā tan manur abravīt ||  
 tasmāt smārtah smṛto dharmo varṇāśramavibhāgaśah |

....

manuḥ saptarṣayaś caiva lokasamtānakārinah |  
 tiṣṭhantīha ca dharmārtham tān cchīṣṭān sampracaksate ||

....

vijñeyah śravanāc chrautah smaranāt smārta ucyate" | (18)

Thus the continuation of Vedic knowledge is said to be effected by means of its passing from one group of Saptarṣis to another, throughout each of the 14 Manvantaras.

It may therefore be concluded in general terms that - according to the Manvantara system as it is presented in the early Purāṇic texts - each group of Saptarṣis acts as promoter and teacher of Śruti and Smṛti, and of Varṇāśrama-dharma: and that the knowledge of the Vedas which originates in the first Manvantara from the mouth of Brahmā himself is taken by the Saptarṣis, and is then passed on from one Saptarṣi group to the next throughout each of the successive Manvantaras.

(b) The Appearance of the Saptarsis within the Mahāyuga.

Somewhat divergent views are expressed within these texts as to the precise time at which the Saptarsis appear on earth within a Mahāyuga. On the one hand, as in certain of the passages quoted in the last sub-section, they are said to appear at the end of the Kali Yuga and at the start of the next Kṛta or Satya Yuga. On the other hand it is said in further passages that after the end of the Kali Yuga the Saptarsis continue to exist throughout the following Kṛta Yuga, and then incarnate themselves in the middle of the Tretā Yuga in order to promulgate the Rsi-Vamśas:

"ksīṇe kaliyuge caiva tiṣṭhantīti kṛte yuge |  
saptarsayas tu taiḥ sārḍham madhye tretāyuge punaḥ ||  
bījārthaiḥ vai bhaviṣyanti brahmakṣatrasya vai punaḥ" | (19)

Further passages again relate that it is at the start of the Tretā Yuga that the Saptarsis appear, along with Manu:

"saptarsīṇaṁ manoś caiva ādau tretāyuge tataḥ |  
abuddhipūrvakam tena sakṛtpūrvakam eva ca ||  
abhivṛttāḥ tu te mantrā darśanaṁ tārakādibhiḥ |  
....  
eco yajūṁsi sāmāni mantrāś cātharvanāś tu ye |  
saptarsibhiś ca ye proktāḥ smṛtāṁ tu manur abrevīt ||  
tretādaṁ saṁhataṁ vedāḥ kevalaṁ dharmasetavaḥ" | (20)

"atra tretāyugasyādau manuḥ saptarsayaś ca te ||  
śrāutaṁ smṛtāṁ ca te dharmaṁ brahmanānupracoditam" | (21)

"prāpte tretāyugamukhe punaḥ saptarsayas tv iha |  
pravartayanti ye varṇān āśramāṁś caiva sarvaśaḥ" || (22)

The Vāyu and Brahmandā Purāṇas somewhat confuse the matter in a further passage, by recounting a tradition that the group headed by Bhṛgu -- which according to these texts is the group of the

(19) Matsya Purāṇa 273.60-61 : cf. Brahmandā Purāṇa 2.3.74.254 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.435.

(20) Matsya Purāṇa 142.44-47.

(21) Brahmandā Purāṇa 1.2.29.43 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.57.39.

(22) Brahmandā Purāṇa 1.2.35.108 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.61.98.



Svāyambhuva Manvantara -- were the seven Maharsis who were born in the first Tretā Yuga of Manu Vaivasvata: or in other words, in the first Tretā Yuga within the first Mahāyuga of the Vaivasvata Manvantara:

"bhṛgvādāyāś ca ye sapta jajñire ca maharṣayaḥ |  
ādye tretāyuge pūrvam manor vaivasvatasya ca" || (23)

Thus, according to the passages discussed so far, while the Saptarṣis are considered to exist throughout every successive Mahāyuga and to give instruction in Dharma and in the Vedas at the start of the Kṛta Yuga, they are also considered in certain contexts to appear among men in incarnated form within the Tretā or second Yuga of a Mahāyuga.

A further passage in the Matsya Purāṇa relates a tradition that the Saptarṣis took birth not in the Kṛta or Tretā Yugas but in the Dvāpara Yuga, wherein they conquered death and thereby gained immortality:

"prajāisinaḥ saptarṣayo dvāpareṣv ila jajñire |  
santatiḥ te jaguṣante tasman mṛtyur jitas tu taiḥ" || (24)

Thus, according to different passages, the Saptarṣis appear within either the Kṛta, Tretā, or Dvāpara Yugas.

The tradition of the appearance of Saptarṣis in the Dvāpara Yuga may be in some measure derived from an association between the identities of certain of the Ṛsis in the Sāvarṇi Manvantara -- notably Drona, Aśvatthāman and Kṛpa -- and their well-known appearance as Kṣatriyas in the Mahābhārata war, which is constantly said to have taken place at the end of the Dvāpara Yuga and shortly before the start of the Kali Yuga -- the latter being said to have commenced in the 36th year after the Mahābhārata war, at the moment of Kṛṣṇa's death:

(23) Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.13.83 : Vāyu Purāṇa 1.30.76.

(24) Matsya Purāṇa 124.106.

"yadaiva bhagavadvisnor amśo yāto divam dvija |  
vasudevakulodbhūtas tadaiva kalir āgatah ||

....

tatyāja sānujo rājyam dharmaputro yudhiṣṭhirah ||

....

yāte kṛṣṇe cakārātha so 'bhisekam parīkṣite" || (25)

"satṭriṃśe tv atha samprāpte varṣe kauravanandanah |  
dadarśa viparītāni nimittāni yudhiṣṭhirah" || (26)

"vimṛśann eva kalam tam paricintya janārdanah |  
mene prāptam sa satṭriṃśam varṣam vai keśisūdanah" || (27)

The fact that these individuals are said in the Mahābhārata to have been born shortly before that war therefore implies that, according to this Yuga scheme, these individuals were born in the Dvāpara Yuga: whence arose the necessity to relate that certain of the Saptarṣi groups - notably that of the Sāvarni Manvantara, in which the above individuals are enumerated - are also at times born not only in the Kṛta or Tretā Yugas but also in the Dvāpara Yuga, as is stated in the passage quoted earlier from the Matsya Purāṇa.

It may be noted that several of the Ṛsis who are listed in the Saptarṣi group of the Sāvarni Manvantara are said in the Rāmāyana, in the Mahābhārata and in the early Purāṇic texts to have been literally fathered by Ṛsis who are listed in the Saptarṣi group of the Vaivasvata Manvantara: as for example Rāma by Jamadagni,<sup>(28)</sup> Drona and Aśvatthāman by Bharadvāja,<sup>(29)</sup> Kṛpa by Gautama,<sup>(30)</sup> and Gālava by Viśvāmitra.<sup>(31)</sup> Moreover the Saptarṣis of the Vaivasvata

(25) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.24.34-38.

(26) Mahābhārata 16.1.1.

(27) Mahābhārata 16.3.18: cf. 16.2.2.

(28) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.74.10ff : Mahābhārata 1.60.39-48: 1.98.1-5: 1.121.12-33: 3.83.14-40: 3.85.9-12: 3.115.9ff: 3.283.8: 12.49.1ff: etc.

(29) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.57.88-90: 1.61.63: 1.121.3-9: 3.42.19: 5.54.47-48: 7.159.2: 7.167.37ff: etc.

(30) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.57.88-90: 1.120.2-21: 5.54.47-48: 5.163.20-21: 15.30.6: etc.

(31) e.g. Mahābhārata 5.104.1-5.117.23 : Harivamśa 9.88-100 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.29.64-99 : Brahmandā Purāṇa 2.3.63.85ff: 2.3.66.35-77: etc.

Manvantara are themselves said to have been fathered by the Rsis listed in the Saptarsi group of the Svāyambhuva Manvantara - as has been seen in Chapter 3. Thus these three groups of Rsis would seem to be linked with one another in a way which does not occur with the other groups of Saptarsis in the Manvantara lists. The fact that such Rsis are said to be paternally and filially related to one another may be said to suggest the possibility that the Manvantara tradition of different Saptarsi groups arose in some measure from an earlier pre-Purānic and more generalised conception as to the traditional chronological succession of Rsis: wherein such groups were separated from each other by a period of relatively short duration, rather than - as in the Manvantara theory - by a period of some 71 x 12,000 years. It may further be noted that the Rsis who are listed for both the Vaivasvata and the Sāvarni Manvantaras are frequently associated in both the Epic and the early Purānic texts with kings and Ksatriyas who are reputed to be descended from Manu Vaivasvata, and thus to have lived during the Vaivasvata Manvantara: and indeed the Mahābhārata war is itself generally said to have occurred during the present or Vaivasvata Manvantara. Hence in one sense both of these groups of Rsis - listed in the Manvantara theory for the Vaivasvata and Sāvarni Manvantaras - should have lived during the Vaivasvata Manvantara. In this respect the Manvantara traditions of the Saptarsi groups may be considered as a development of earlier traditions wherein the period of time separating these different figures or individuals was first held to be of relatively short duration - as for example generally in the Epic texts - and only subsequently enlarged to very greatly increased proportions following the assimilation of such individuals within the Saptarsi groups in the Manvantara system of the early Purānic texts.

It may be noted at this stage that the Yuga Purāna of the

---

Gārgī-jyotiṣa - which, as discussed in the Introduction, may be considered as an early prototype of the later classical Purāṇas - knows the measures of the Yuga and of the Kalpa, but not of the Manvantara: thus for example it states that 1,000 Yugas constitute a Kalpa,<sup>(32)</sup> but it makes no mention of the Manvantara within this computational scheme. This lack of mention might therefore be interpreted as an indication that the period of the Manvantara was a relatively late addition to the earlier scheme of Yugas and Kalpas. A further such indication may be seen in the fact that, while the Kalpa is divided into exactly 1,000 Mahāyugas, no such exact division is evident in the number of Mahāyugas which constitute a Manvantara. Thus different Purāṇic and astronomical texts give the total as either 71, 71 and a fraction, or 72 Mahāyugas: and in precise mathematical terms, a complete Manvantara will last for  $1000/14 = 71.42$  Mahāyugas. Conversely, since a day of Brahmā is said to last for 12,000,000 divine years or 4,320,000,000 years of men, then each of the 14 Manvantaras will last for  $12,000,000/14 = 857,142 + 6/7$  divine years, which is the equivalent of  $12,000 \times 71 + 3/7$  years. Such a mathematical discrepancy in the number of Mahāyugas in a Manvantara is noted for example in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, which acknowledges the necessity of adding an additional fraction (sādhika) of a Yuga:

"caturyugānāṃ samkhyatā sādhikā hy ekasaptatiḥ |  
manvantaram tasya samkhyāṃ ...." | (33)

It would seem unlikely that such an inaccuracy and discrepancy in the theory would have arisen if the three units of the Yuga, the Kalpa and the Manvantara had been formulated at the same time: since they would otherwise have been combined in a more harmonious system, and the various texts would then have agreed upon the number of Mahāyugas in a Manvantara - just as they agree upon the number of Mahāyugas in a Kalpa.

(32) Yuga Purāṇa lines 234-235.

(33) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 46.34.

It may further be noted that a passage in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata -- which is one of the relatively few passages in the Epic to make any reference at all to either the Yuga or the Manvantara -- presents a somewhat divergent view from that in the early Purāṇic texts, and refers to a scheme wherein the four Yugas occupy the total length of the Kalpa -- thus making no mention whatever of the Manvantara. After speaking of the succession of the Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali Yugas, the Supreme Being ("Deva") relates that at the end of these he assumes the form of Kāla or Time and destroys the three worlds -- thereafter sleeping for a period which is equal to 1,000 times the length of the four Yugas:

"śvetah kṛtayuge varṇah pītas tretāyuge mama |  
 rakto dvāparam āsādyā kṛṣṇah kaliyuge tathā ||  
 trayo bhāgā hy adharmasya tasmīn kāle bhavanty uta |  
 antakāle ca samprāpte kālō bhūtvātidārunah |  
 trailokyam naśayāmy ekah kṛtsnam sthāvarajaṅgamam ||  
 ....  
 yāvād yugānāṃ vipraṇṣo sahasraparivartanam |  
 tāvat svapīmi viśvātmā sarvalokapitāmahaḥ" || (34)

The description in this passage continues with the start of a new Kṛta Yuga: yet this apparently does not occur within the same Kalpa, since the passage relates that when this new Kṛta Yuga arrives it is heralded by the birth of a Brahmin called Kalki who destroys all things as he brings the (former) Yuga to an end:

"yadā candraś ca sūryaś ca tathā tiṣyabrhaspatī |  
 ekaṛāśau sameśyanti prapatsyati tadā kṛtaḥ ||  
 ....  
 kalkir viśṇuṣā nāma dvijah kālapracoditah |  
 utpatsyate mahāvīryo mahābuddhiparākramah ||  
 ....  
 utthito brāhmaṇo dīptah kṣayāntakṛd udāradhīh |  
 sa saṅkṣopo hi sarvasya yugasya parivartakah" || (35)

(34) Mahābhārata 3.187.31-39.

(35) Mahābhārata 3.188.87-92.

Thus it would seem that, according to this passage, the reign of Kalki -- which occurs at the end of the Kali Yuga and at the start of a new Kṛta Yuga -- heralds the start not only of a new Yuga but also of a new creation: or in other words, the end of the Kali Yuga is here intended to designate the end of a Kalpa, which is followed by the destruction of all beings through the agency of Kalki.

Thus the view presented in these passages of the Vana Parvan would tend to suggest that a single succession of Kṛta, Tretā, Dvāpara and Kali Yugas constitutes the total extent of a Kalpa. They also suggest that while the basic unit of time for the Kalpa or day of Brahmā is regarded as the length of the four Yugas, that of the night of Brahmā is regarded as a thousand times this period -- an extent referred to also in the Yuga Parāna. The above passages make no mention, however, of the Manvantara as a unit of time.

A further passage in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata gives an account of the births of Brahmā in different Kalpas. According to the Manvantara scheme in the early Purāṇic texts, each of the 14 different Manus (and Saptarṣi groups) is said to live during a single Kalpa or day of Brahmā. However, in this Śānti Parvan passage, a widely divergent view is again evident. It is here related that during one Kalpa or day of Brahmā, Brahmā instructed Manu Svārocīṣa in the Vedas during the Kṛta Yuga, but the knowledge disappeared during the Tretā Yuga: this is repeated through successive births of Brahmā, until in his seventh birth Brahmā instructs Dakṣa in the Vedas at the start of the Kṛta Yuga, whence the knowledge passed to Aditi and to Vivasvat -- and at the start of the Tretā Yuga Vivasvat instructed his son Manu Vaivasvata:

"tataḥ prāvartata tadā ādau kṛtayugam śubham |  
 dharmapratiṣṭhāhetoḥ ca manum svārocīṣam tataḥ ||  
 ....  
 dharmapratiṣṭhāhetoḥ ca manum svārocīṣam tataḥ |

adhyāpāyāmasa tadā lokānāṃ hitakāmyayā ॥

....

tataḥ so 'ntardadhe bhūyaḥ prāpte tretāyuge punaḥ ॥

....

lṛtādaḥ kuruśārdūla dharmam etam adhītavān ॥

vīraṇaś cāpy adhītyainaṃ raucyāya manave dadau |

....

yad idam saptaṃ janna padmejaṃ brahmaṇo nṛpa |

tatraiṣa dharmā kathitā svayam nārāyaṇena hi ॥

pitāmahāya śuddhāya yugādaḥ lokadhārino |

pitāmahaś ca dakṣāya dharmam etam purā dadau ॥

tato jyesthe tu dauhitre prādād dakṣo nṛpottama |

āditye savitur jyesthe vivasvān jagrhe tataḥ ॥

tretāyugādaḥ ca punar vivasvān manave dadau" | (36)

The passage clearly indicates that only one Manu is considered to exist during each Kalpa or day of Brahmā -- or indeed, during an entire lifetime of Brahmā, prior to his continual rebirth: and it also suggests that such a Kalpa is thought of as consisting of only a single Mahāyuga or succession of the four Yugas, with Dharma being promulgated at the start of the Krta Yuga, being lost during the Tretā Yuga, and with the rebirth of Brahmā occurring at the end of each Kali Yuga to commence the new Kalpa. It may also be noted that the passage mentions Raucya Manu, placing him after Svārocīṣa and before Vaivasvata -- in marked contrast to the early Purāṇic Manvantara tradition, wherein he is the thirteenth Manu. This may be seen as yet another indication of the divergent theories presented in the Mahābhārata on the one hand and in the early Purāṇic texts on the other hand.

These passages quoted above from the Vana and Śānti Parvans of the Mahābhārata may accordingly be taken to indicate that the Mahābhārata holds to a different theory of Yugas, Kalpas and Manvantaras from that which is developed in the early Purāṇic texts: namely one wherein a single succession of the four Yugas constitutes

the total extent of a Kalpa or day of Brahmā, and wherein the length of such a Kalpa of four Yugas is also the period of a Manvantara (although the term itself is not used in the above contexts in the Mahābhārata) over which there presides a single Manu.

Since the period of the Manvantara is not referred to in the main passage on the Yugas in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata, it may be inferred that the Manvantara was not consistently considered in this work as being a constituent part of the units of Yuga and Kalpa: a conclusion which is suggested also by the omission of the Manvantara from the scheme in the Yuga Purāṇa. It may also be observed that neither the Mahābhārata nor the Yuga Purāṇa refers to the Vedas as being taught by the Saptar̥ṣis, as occurs in the Purāṇic Manvantara theory: and the Mahābhārata on the contrary relates that they were taught by Brahmā himself. This may accordingly be taken as a further indication that the assimilation of both the Saptar̥ṣis and the Manus into the scheme of Yugas and Kalpas occurred only at a relatively late post-Epic stage in the formulation of these traditions: while conversely such passages as those just discussed from the Mahābhārata may be seen as precursors of the developed Manvantara theory as it is to be found in the early Purāṇic texts.

According to the scheme in the Mahābhārata, the seventh birth of Brahmā -- which is said also to be the period of Manu Vaivasvata --



is considered as the present age within which there live the kings descended from that Manu, commencing with Ikṣvāku:

"tretāyugādaṁ ca punar vivasvān manave dadau |  
manuś ca lokabhūtyartham sūtāyekaśvākave dadau" || (38)

According to this passage, therefore, there must have occurred within this period of the seventh birth of Brahmā the births not only of the Saptarṣis headed by Viśvāmitra - who are consistently associated throughout the Epic and early Purāṇic texts with Ikṣvāku and the Aikṣvākas, hence also with the Tretā Yuga of this period - but also of those who are enumerated in the Purāṇic lists as the Saptarṣis of the Sāvarni Manvantara and who took part in the Mahābhārata war, and who are also said to have been the sons of the Ṛsis headed by Viśvāmitra. Thus while the Saptarṣis headed by Viśvāmitra are connected most closely with the Tretā Yuga - being referred to as Purohitas of Ikṣvāku and of his successors and contemporaries, who are said to have lived at the start of the Tretā Yuga - the group of Ṛsis in the Sāvarni Manvantara in the Purāṇic lists are connected with the Dvāpara Yuga, at the end of which occurred the Mahābhārata war in which they took part. Moreover, the Saptarṣis enumerated in the Purāṇic lists for the Svāyambhuva Manvantara (those headed by Marīci) - who are said to be the fathers of the Saptarṣis headed by Viśvāmitra - are consistently said to be those Sons first created by Brahmā before all other Gods, Demons and Men: and they are thus evidently to be associated with the start of a new creation, and thus with the first or Kṛta Yuga. It may therefore be suggested that at one stage in the formulation of this tradition - prior to the multiplication of Saptarṣi groups in the Manvantara lists of the early Purāṇic texts - each of these three groups was considered to have lived at different periods within the same Kalpa or day of Brahmā: just as the members

of all three groups are associated with kings who are said to have lived during the present age, which is the age or antara of Manu Vaivasvata. Hence, given the varying traditions in the early Purāṇic texts as to the appearance of different Saptarṣi groups during either the Kṛta, Tretā, or Dvāpara Yugas, it may be suggested that at an early pre-Purāṇic stage in the formulation of this tradition, each of these three groups was considered to have lived during different Yugas of the same Kalpa: such a Kalpa possessing only a single succession of the four Yugas, as occurs in the passages quoted previously from the Mahābhārata. Only at a subsequent stage, with the division of the Kalpa into 14 separate periods or Manvantaras within which occurred 71·42 Mahāyugas, was the tradition expanded, so that different groups of Saptarṣis were formulated and considered to appear within different Manvantaras. Nevertheless it may be said that a remnant of such an earlier tradition ascribing the appearance of different Saptarṣi groups to the different Yugas of the same Kalpa may still be observed in the varying traditions of the early Purāṇic texts ascribing the appearance of Saptarṣi groups to either the Kṛta, Tretā, or Dvāpara Yugas within a Manvantara.

An initial reason for the formulation of such a tradition, involving the multiplication of Saptarṣi groups, may be suggested to arise from the acknowledgement in the first instance of two main separate lists of the Saptarṣi groups: whence each group was ascribed to a different period of time in order to emphasise the distinction and separation between the two. Thus, once the acceptance of at least two different Saptarṣi groups was acknowledged, the way was thereafter open for the multiplication of the number of Saptarṣi groups which occurs within the Purāṇic Manvantara theory. Any number of Saptarṣi groups might then have been formulated: and the choice of such a number as 10 might have been a logical step, since then a Manvantara would have been divided into an exact number

---

of 100 Mahāyugas, given a total of 1,000 Mahāyugas in a Kalpa.

The choice of the number 14 would, however, appear to have been made partly due to the particular significance of the number 7.

In the passage from the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata which was referred to earlier, the present age of Manu Vaivasvata is termed the seventh birth of Brahmā: it is also considered as the final age, and no further births of Brahmā are there referred to. Given that the present age is considered as seventh age, the Manvantara theory of the early Purāṇic texts may be seen to propound that an equal length of time as has passed in the Kalpa is also to come about in the future. In other words, while the Mahābhārata views the present seventh age as being at the end of time, the Purāṇic Manvantara theory takes a different perspective and places the present seventh age at the centre of time: thereby adopting the Epic view that the present age is the seventh, and propounding the view that a further seven ages are yet to come. The Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa may here be seen to represent in a sense an intermediate stage between these two views: for it has been seen that they both list a total of 8 Saptarṣi groups in Manvantaras - namely the 7 Saptarṣi groups down to the "present age" and the Saptarṣi group headed by Viśvāmitra, together with one further group whose members, although they took part in the Mahābhārata war of the present age, are now considered to form a Saptarṣi group of a future age. In the other early Purāṇic texts the full number of  $2 \times 7$  Saptarṣi groups has been formulated, and the embryonic Manvantara theory of the Mahābhārata has reached a considerably fuller stage of development.

Thus three main stages of development in this tradition may be suggested in respect of the assimilation of the Saptarṣis to the theories of Yuga, Kalpa and Manvantara. The first main stage arises from the recognition that there were in existence more than one main group of Saptarṣis: namely the group headed by Viśvāmitra on the

one hand (the Ṛsis of the first main list), and the group headed by Marīci on the other hand (the Ṛsis of the second main list). The second main stage ascribes the appearance of each of these groups upon the earth to a different Yuga within a single Kalpa: namely the latter group to the Kṛta Yuga, and the former group to the Tretā Yuga; and this stage also formulates a further group of Saptarṣis - comprising Rāma, Kṛpa, Drona, Aśvatthāman and others - whose appearance is ascribed to the Dvāpara Yuga of the same Kalpa. This stage still presupposes the type of outlook which is presented in the Mahābhārata, wherein a single succession of the four Yugas constitutes the total extent of a Kalpa. The third main stage then assimilates all three of these groups to the developing scheme of 14 Manvantaras: thereby greatly increasing the length of time which separates the appearance of each of these groups upon the earth, and also formulating and introducing various other groups of Saptarṣis - firstly, as in the Harivamśa and the Matsya Purāṇa, for Manvantaras 2-6, and secondly, as in the other early Purāṇic texts, also for Manvantaras 9-14. It may be inferred that, while the first of these stages is evident in the Mahābhārata, the second and third of these stages are essentially post-Epic. Moreover, while the third stage is essentially that presented in the early Purāṇic texts, it nonetheless presupposes the second stage of development - traces of which may be discerned in the varying early Purāṇic traditions which ascribe the appearance of the Saptarṣi groups to either the Kṛta, Tretā, or Dvāpara Yugas.

---

209.

(c) The Abode of the Saptarsis.

It is evident that, according to the Manvantara cosmogony, the Saptarsis are considered to live elsewhere than upon the earth during a considerable portion of the time in which they preside over the Manvantara: for it is repeatedly said - as seen in the last sub-section - that they incarnate themselves upon the earth only in the Tretā - or less frequently in the Kṛta or Dvāpara - Yuga in order to instruct men in Śruti and Smṛti, thereafter departing once again from the earth. A passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa states that the Saptarsis came from heaven or the sky (div) to the earth:

"caturyugānte vedānāṃ jāyate kila viplavaḥ |  
pravartayanti tān etya bhuvi saptarsayo divaḥ" || (39)

In a similar manner a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa relates that in every Manvantara each group of Saptarsis establishes Dharma and then departs to the highest abode (paramam padam):

"manvantaresu sarvesu sapta sapta maharsayah |  
kṛtvā dharmavyavasthānam prayānti paramam padam" || (40)

Before examining the precise locality or Loka in which the Saptarsis are generally said to reside, it is instructive to examine first the references in the earlier texts to the loka which the Saptarsis are said to inhabit.

i. The cosmogony of the Brāhmanas and allied texts in general terms knows of only three principal worlds or lokas: namely Bhūr, Bhuvā, and Svar - respectively the Earth, the Atmosphere, and the Sky or Heaven. Reduced to its simplest form, men live on the earth while the Gods live in the sky: and throughout the Brāhmaṇa texts in particular there occur references which relate that the Gods, the Rsis and the sacrificer himself attain Svarloka by means of

---

(39) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 3.2.44.

(40) Matsya Purāṇa 9.30-31.

fire or the sacrifice. Such references will be examined in detail in section 3 of the following Chapter: but a few instances may be cited here in order to illustrate the point. Two passages in the Taittirīya Saṁhitā relate that the Gods went to Svargaloka by means of Agni or fire or by means of the sacrifice:

"agninā vai devāḥ suvargam lokam āyan" | (41)

"yajñena vai devāḥ suvargam lokam āyan" | (42)

A complete cycle of myths similarly relates how the Āṅgirasas and the Ādityas formerly went to Svargaloka through Agni - as is summarised for example in a passage in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa:

"ādityāś caivehāsan āṅgirasāś ca te 'gre 'gnināgnim ayajanta  
te svargam lokam āyan" | (43)

Further passages again relate how individual Ṛsis or the Ṛsis as a group attained Svargaloka. In such Brāhmaṇa contexts the highest realm to which the Gods, the Ṛsis and the sacrificer attain is variously referred to as Svarloka, Svargaloka, Suvargaloka, and also Div, Divam, and Sukrtasyaloka.

Similarly in the Sūtra texts, and again in the Dharma Śāstras, it is to Svargaloka that the Ṛsis and the Gods are said to have attained - and it is Svargaloka that the sacrificer himself seeks to attain:

"nākasya pr̥sthe svasge loke yajamāno astu" | (44)

"agnim anvārabhāmahe hotrvūrye purohitam  
yenāyann uttamam svar devā āṅgirasas divam iti" | (45)

"śrāddham kurvan svargam kṛttikāsu āpnoti" | (46)

Thus throughout these texts Svargaloka is generally regarded as being

(41) Taittirīya Saṁhitā 5.3.9.

(42) Taittirīya Saṁhitā 6.3.4.

(43) Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 1.16.

(44) Vaitāna Sūtra 2.1.

(45) Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra 24.12.7: Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra 1.3.28.

(46) Viṣṇu Dharma Śāstra 78.8 : cf. Yajñavalkya Dharma Śāstra 3.184-187.

the highest or supreme Loka, the realm of the Gods and of the Rsis.

ii. The Epic texts similarly relate how Rsis and others became stars in Svargaloka or Devaloka, particularly through the performance of tapas - as for example in the case of Triśaṅku, whom Viśvāmitra transferred in bodily form to the sky.<sup>(47)</sup> Arjuna again observes as he travels through Svargaloka that what are seen from the earth as stars in the sky are in fact the self-illuminated bodies of Rsis and others who have attained Svarga through the performance of tapas.<sup>(48)</sup> Within these Epic texts, however, a new view is presented: wherein the highest or supreme realm is no longer the third or Svarga Loka, but Brahmaloka or the realm of Brahma - the seventh Loka. In several contexts it would seem that the Epic texts draw little distinction - apart from that of the names - between Svarga and Brahma Lokas: thus for example one myth in the Anuśāsana Parvan of the Mahābhārata commences by telling of how the Saptarṣis sought to gain Brahmāloka by their tapas, and ends by telling of how they eventually gained their goal of Svargaloka:

"te vai sarve tapasyantaḥ purā cerur mahīm inām |  
samādhinopāśikṣanto brahmalokam sanātanam ||

....

naiva lobham tadā cakrus tataḥ svargam avāpuvan" || (49)

Other Epic passages imply, however, that the Saptarṣis have their abode in Brahmāloka:

"viśvāmitro jamadagnir bharaadvājo 'tha gautamaḥ |  
vasiṣṭhaḥ kaśyapo 'triś ca brahmalokam ninīṣavaḥ" || (50)

"pitamahāsutaś cāpi pulastyo manipuṅgavaḥ |  
mocayitvā daśagrīvaḥ brahmalokam jagāma ha" || (51)

(47) Rāmāyana 1.58.10 - 1.59.33.

(48) Mahābhārata 3.43.29-35.

(49) Mahābhārata 13.94.2 - 13.95.86.

(50) Mahābhārata 7.164.86-89.

(51) Rāmāyana 7.33.20.

Thus within these Epic passages there is no definitive distinction drawn between Svarga and Brahma Lokas: inasmuch as both are variously said to be the abode of the Saptarsis.

iii. In the early Purāṇic texts, the Saptarsis are on very few occasions said to have their abode in Svargaloka. One passage in which this does occur appears in both the Vāyu and the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas, where the Saptarsis are said to have gone to Divan or the sky after abandoning their clothes at a Tīrtha called Svargamārgaprade - or that which bestows the way to Svarga:

"svargamārgapradam nāme tīrthan sadyo varapradam |  
cīrāny utsrjya yasmims tu divam saptarsayo gataḥ" || (52)

Such passages are, however, relatively isolated in this group of texts. In the early Purāṇic texts, the cosmogonic scheme of Seven Lokas is fully enunciated, particularly in connection with the Manvantara theory: and the Saptarsis are accordingly located in a specific sphere or Loka. The Seven Lokas are the three of the earlier texts - namely Bhūr, Bhuvar, and Svar - together with Mahar, Jana, Tapo, and Satya or Brahma Lokas: the latter now being the highest or supreme Loka, the abode of Brahmā. In these texts generally - and particularly in passages relating to the Manvantara theory - the Ṛsis are said to reside in neither Svar nor Brahma Lokas, but rather in Maharloka:

"atītā vartamāṇāś ca tathaivānagatāś ca ye |  
devāḥ saptarsayaś caiva manavaḥ pitaras tathā ||  
sarve hy api kramātītā maharlokam samāśritāḥ" | (53)

At the end of the Kalpa or day of Brahmā, the three worlds (namely Bhur, Bhuvar and Svar Lokas) are burnt to ashes by the seven suns: whereupon these inhabitants of Maharloka are said to remove themselves to the next or Jana Loka:

(52) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.13.62 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.15.60.

(53) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.39.3-5 : Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.2.3-4 : etc.



"bhūrloko 'tha bhuvarlokaḥ svarlokaś ca vināśinah |  
 tathā vināśam āyati maharlokaś ca tiṣṭhati ||  
 tadvasino 'pi tāpēna janalokaṁ prayanti vai" | (54)

"brāhmayo naimittiko nāma tasyānte pratisamcarah |  
 tadā hi dahyate sarvaṁ trailokyam bhūrbhuvādikam ||  
 janam prayanti tāpārttā maharlokānivāsinah" | (55)

Following this conflagration, the worlds are then flooded to create but a single ocean, whereon sleeps Brahmā observed by the inhabitants of Janaloka:

"ekārnave tu trailokye brahmā nārāyaṇātmakah |  
 bhogīśayyagataḥ śete trailokyagrāsavrahitaḥ ||  
 janasthair yogibhir devaś cintayamāno 'bjasambhavaḥ |  
 tatpramāṇam hi tam rātriṁ tadante srjyate punah" || (56)

A passage in the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa relates that the Maharsis observe Brahmā in the form of Kāla or time asleep in Maharloka:

"caturyugasahasvānte sarvataḥ sa jalāvṛte |  
 brahmā nārāyaṇākhyas tu sa cakāśe bhavē svayam ||  
 caturvidhāḥ prajāḥ sarvā brahmaśaktyā tamovṛtāḥ |  
 paśyanti tam maharloke kālāṁ sūptāṁ maharṣayaḥ" || (57)

Thus here again the Maharsis are by implication considered to be in Jana rather than Mahar Loka.

According to a passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, when the worlds are flooded the waters reach as far as the abode of the Saptarsis, and then stop:

"saptarṣiṣṭhānam ākrāmya sthite 'mbhasi mahāmune |  
 ekārnavam bhavaty eva trailokyam akhilaṁ tataḥ" || (58)

Since the passage states that it is the three worlds which become a single ocean, this implies once again that the abode of the Saptarsis is considered to be in the fourth world, namely Maharloka.

(54) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 46.39-40.

(55) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.3.20-21.

(56) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.3.22-23 : cf. Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 46.40-41.

(57) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 1.2.6.68-69.

(58) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 6.4.1.

A further passage in both the Vāyu and Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇas relates a slightly different tradition: namely that the Ṛsis went to Janaloka immediately upon leaving the earth once their task of raising offspring had been completed:

"marīciḥ kaśyapo dakṣo vaśiṣṭhaś cāṅgiraḥ bhṛguḥ ||  
 pulastyaḥ pulahaś caiva krātur ityevamādayaḥ |  
 pūrvam te saṁprasūyante brahmano mānasaḥ iha ||  
 tataḥ prajāḥ pratisthāpyu janam evāśrayanti te" | (59)

Just as the passage gives an extended list of Mind-born Sons of Brahmā, rather than a list of Saptarṣis, so too it would tend to present a slightly variant tradition from that in the previously-quoted passages: wherein the Ṛsis have their abode constantly in Janaloka, as opposed to dwelling in Janaloka only after the conflagration of the three worlds has obliged them to move from Maharloka. In another passage in these two Purāṇas -- which is comparable to that quoted earlier from the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa alone -- it is related that the Saptarṣis, from their abode in Janaloka, observe Brahmā in the form of Kāla or time asleep during the night of Brahmā, and also observe Satya and the other seven Lokas:

"caturyugasahasrānte sarvataḥ salilāplute |  
 susupsur aprakāṣepsuḥ sa rātriṁ kurate prabhuh ||  
 caturvidhā yadā śete prajāḥ sarvāḥ layam gatāḥ |  
 paśyanti taṁ mahātmānam kālam sapta maharṣayaḥ ||  
 janalokam vivartās te tapasā labdhacaksuṣaḥ |  
 bhṛgvādayo mahātmānāḥ pūrve vyādhyaṭalaksanāḥ ||  
 satyādīn sapta lokān vai te hi paśyanti cakṣuṣā |  
 brahmānam te tu paśyanti sadā brāhmīsu rātrisu ||  
 saptarṣayaḥ prapaśyanti svapnam kālam svarātrisu" | (60)

Although these various textual traditions contain many common features, it must also be acknowledged that there are several inconsistencies within this group of texts. Thus, for example,

(59) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.2.47-49 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.39.49-51.

(60) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 3.4.1.184-188 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.38.188-193.

according to the passage just cited, the Saptarṣis are said to endure throughout the night of Brahmā, and to observe Brahmā as he sleeps - remaining in their abode in Janaloka. Yet a passage in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa relates that each Saptarṣi group is created in each Manvantara, and passes again to destruction along with the Manu, the Indra, the Gods and the Kings of that Manvantara:

"devāḥ saptarṣayaḥ sendrā manus tatsūnavo nṛpāḥ |  
manunā saha sṛjyante samhriyante ca pūrvavat" || (61)

A passage in the Matsya Purāṇa relates yet another tradition - namely that the Saptarṣis go to Nirvāṇa at the end of the day of Brahmā, when the entire universe sleeps within Brahmā and he alone remains by himself:

"prajānāṃ patayaś caiva sapta caiva maharṣayaḥ ||  
....  
pūrṇe yugasahasre tu brāhme 'hani tathāgate |  
nirvāṇe sarvabhūtānāṃ sarvotpātasamudbhave ||  
....  
samhṛtya lokān akhilān sadevāsura mānuṣān |  
kṛtvā susamsthāṃ bhagavān āsta eko jagadguruḥ" || (62)

Such inconsistencies may again be said to be due partly to the fact that the role of the Saptarṣis within the Manvantara theory - as indeed the Manvantara theory itself - was still in the process of formulation within these texts: thus giving rise to such fundamentally divergent conceptions as are evident in the examples cited above.

It may accordingly be concluded that, in the Manvantara theory of the early Purāṇic texts, the Saptarṣis are generally considered to have their abode in Maharloka, and to resort to Janaloka at the conflagration of the three worlds.

---

(61) Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa 46.33.

(62) Matsya Purāṇa 247.10-22.

#### Section 4 : Conclusion.

By way of conclusion to this examination of the Manvantara traditions of the Saptarsis, the main features of the Manvantara traditions which are generally followed by most or all of these early Purāṇic texts may here be briefly summarised.

Each Saptarsi group is considered to preside over one complete Manvantara, in which there occur (a little more than) 71 Mahāyugas. Within each Mahāyuga the Saptarsis appear on the earth in order to instruct men in the Vedas and in Dharma: their appearance being variously ascribed to the Krta, Tretā, or Dvāpara Yugas. As has been suggested in section 3(b), such a divergence of ascriptions may be traced to an earlier pre-Purāṇic form of the Manvantara theory, wherein the Saptarsis were considered to appear in different Yugas of the same Kalpa rather than in different Manvantaras - such a conception in turn arising partly due in the first instance to the recognition of the two fundamentally different lists of the Saptarsi group which first appear together in the Epic texts, and giving rise in the second instance to the listing of three Saptarsi groups appearing in the three different Yugas, prior to the multiplication of Saptarsi groups in the developed Manvantara theory of the early Purāṇic texts. Once the Saptarsis have completed their task on earth of giving instruction in Śruti and Smṛti and of creating offspring, they depart to Maharloka, resorting to Janaloka especially at the conflagration of the three worlds, and residing there at the end of the Kalpa and during the ensuing night of Brahmā (although, as noted in section 3(c), according to certain traditions they then go to destruction or to Nirvāṇa). At the commencement of the next Manvantara, the next group of Saptarsis - together with the next Manu, Indra, Gods and Kings - take over the task of instructing men in Dharma and the Vedas, having themselves gained such knowledge from the Saptarsis of the preceding Manvantara. This

---

process continues throughout the entire day of Brahmā, which consists of 14 Manvantaras: and following the night of Brahmā, the same process once again continues during the next 14 Manvantaras which thereafter constitute the next day of Brahmā.

---

CHAPTER 5 : The Saptarsis as Stars in the Sky.Section 1 : Introduction.

The primary aim of this Chapter is to examine some of the main traditions associated with the concept of the Saptarsis as stars in the sky. One such tradition has already been examined in the first Chapter: namely that whereby the Saptarsis were at one time called Rksas or bears. Sections 2-3 of this Chapter examine certain further references to the Saptarsis in the sky: and section 4 then examines the mythological explanations given in the texts of how the Saptarsis were thought to have been transferred from the earth to the sky. Section 5 is devoted to a detailed examination of the astronomical theory of the Saptarsi Yuga which arises from the same concept of the Saptarsis as stars in the sky: and the concluding paragraphs of this section connect the conclusions drawn in this section with those drawn especially in Chapter 3, thereby illustrating one of the main causes and processes of development of the later traditions of the Saptarsi group.

Section 2 : The Earlier Literature.

Two passages have been quoted in previous contexts -- particularly in Chapter 1 -- which refer to the Saptar̥sis in the sky. The first of these is from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, and refers to the R̥sis in connection with the Kṛttikās, saying of them that they were in former times called R̥ksas.<sup>(1)</sup> The second of these is from the R̥gveda, and refers to the R̥ksas which shine by night but disappear elsewhere by day.<sup>(2)</sup> Both of these passages have been quoted and discussed especially in Chapter 1 section 3(b).

One relatively late R̥gvedic passage -- which is quoted in part and with minor changes in the Atharvaveda -- contains a reference which was suggested in Chapter 1 to refer to the Saptar̥sis in the sky:

"sākamjanām sap̥tatham āhur̥ ekajam saḥ idyamā r̥sayo devajā itī |  
tesām iṣṭāni vihitāni dhāmasaḥ sthātṛe rejaṇte vikṛtār̥ rūpaśaḥ ||  
striyaḥ satīḥ tā u me pūṃsa āhuḥ paśyad akṣanvān na vi cetad andhaḥ" ||

The statement in this passage that "he who has eyes, sees -- not the blind" would appear to imply some form of visual observation: while "those who are really women, they show to me as men" would suggest that this latter is the immediate object of visual observation.

The arguments in favour of the six twins and one born alone as referring to the Saptar̥sis in the sky have been discussed in Chapter 1 section 2(c). It may be suggested that the second part of the above passage refers to the Kṛttikās: for while the Kṛttikās appear in most contexts as women -- and as the wives of the Saptar̥sis -- one passage in the Taittirīya Saṃhitā relates that the Kṛttikās are men, being the embodied form of the Gods:

"agninā vai devāḥ suvargam lokam āyan tā amūḥ kṛttikā abhavan" | (4)

(1) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 2.1.2.1-5.

(2) R̥gveda 1.24.10.

(3) R̥gveda 1.164.15-16 : cf. Atharvaveda 9.9.16: 10.8.5.

(4) Taittirīya Saṃhitā 5.3.9.

Since such an idea of the Kṛttikās being masculine in gender is not to be found in the subsequent literature, which invariably views the Kṛttikās as women, it may be inferred that the constellation of the Kṛttikās was initially thought of as representing seven men or Gods: while this concept came to be replaced by the period of the later Vedic Samhitās by the concept of seven women, who in the Brāhmaṇa literature - as in the passage referred to above from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa - are regarded as the wives of the Saptarṣis.

The passage from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa which speaks of the Kṛttikās as the wives of the Rṣis, and which refers to the Kṛttikās as residing in the east while the Rṣis rise in the north, may clearly be taken to refer to the Saptarṣis in the sky. Comparable to this is a further passage in the Rgveda which speaks of the Saptarṣis as oxen (Ukṣanas) and as going to the east for their enjoyment or pleasure:

"adhvaryubhiḥ pañcabhiḥ sapta viprāḥ priyaṃ rakṣante nihitaṃ padam venaḥ  
prāṇo madanty ukṣano ajuryā devā devānām anu hi vrataḥ guh" || (5)

This passage has already been discussed in Chapters 1 and 3, particularly in respect of the connection between this Vedic idea of the Saptarṣis as oxen and similar ideas in further Indo-European contexts.

Another Rgvedic passage may similarly be interpreted as referring to the Saptarṣis in the sky, as perhaps also to the Saptarṣis in the body (as the Prāṇas):

"viśvakarmā vimanā ādviḥayā dhātā vidhātā paramota sandrk  
tesāṃ istāni samisā madanti yatra sapta rṣīṇ para ekam ākuḥ" || (6)

In this passage, a dual interpretation may be suggested: whereby on the one hand "beyond the Saptarṣis" (in the sky) is the centre of the sky, the northern celestial pole or Dhruva: while conversely "beyond the Saptarṣis" (in the body) is the centre of the head,

(5) Rgveda 3.7.7.

(6) Rgveda 10.82.2 : cf. Taittirīya Samhitā 4.6.2 : Vājasaneyi Samhitā 17.26 : Maitrāyaṇī Samhitā 2.10.3.



which is elsewhere stated to be the abode of Brahman.<sup>(7)</sup>

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa contains a further reference to the Saptar̥sis in the sky, in a passage stating that the region of the living is that region between the rising of the Saptar̥sis (which is elsewhere said to be in the north<sup>(8)</sup>) and the setting of the sun (namely the west):

"eṣo ha jīvanāṃ digantarena sapta r̥sīnāṃ codāyanam ādityasya  
cāstamayanaṃ" | (9)

A passage in the Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa similarly connects the Saptar̥sis with the northern region, in stating that they are located at the "centre" of the sky:

"atha yatraite saptar̥sayas tad divo madhyam" | (10)

The interpretation of this passage has been discussed in detail in Chapter 3 section 3(a): where it was seen that the term madhyam in this context refers to the proximity of the Saptar̥si constellation to the "middle" of the sky, or the northern celestial pole. A passage in the Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa also implies a reference being made to the Saptar̥sis in the sky, through their mention alongside the Nakṣatras:

"te nu vā u vāyam uttareṇaiva parīṃ itī ha smāha kauṣītakiḥ |  
yajñasyānusamcaram sapta r̥sibhyo 'nantarhitā itī" || (11)

The Sūtra texts similarly refer on occasions to the Saptar̥sis as stars in the sky, in places mentioning also Arundhatī alongside the R̥sis. Thus for example in a passage in the Āśvalāyana Gr̥hya Sūtra a newly-wed bride is instructed to look at Dhruva, Arundhatī and the Saptar̥sis before requesting long-life for her husband and children for herself:

---

(7) e.g. Atharvaveda 10.2.26-27: 10.8.5-9.

(8) e.g. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 2.1.2.1-5.

(9) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 13.8.1.9.

(10) Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa 4.26.12.

(11) Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa 27.6.

"dhruvam arundhatīm saptarsīn iti dr̥ṣṭvā vācam visr̥jeta jīvaṣatnī  
prajāṃ vindeyati" || (12)

A passage in the Hiranyakeśin Gr̥hya Sūtra again makes reference to both the Saptarsis and the Kṛttikās - including Arundhatī - in connection with the ritual:

"saptarsayah prathamam kṛttikānam arundhatīm ye dhruvatām ha ninyuh  
satkṛttikāmukhyayogam vahantiyam asmākam bhṛājatv astamī ||  
iti saptarsīn upasthāya dhruvam upatiṣṭhate" | (13)

The reference in this context to Arundhatī as the eighth Kṛttikā - if the passage be so interpreted - would appear to arise from a confused understanding of the number of the Kṛttikās: but since the passage also refers to the six Kṛttikās (excluding Arundhatī, who is usually counted as the seventh of this constellation), it may be suggested that the term astamī refers to Arundhatī as being the eighth star conjoined to the Saptarsi constellation - wherein she appears, as was seen in Chapter 1, as the star Alcor close to § Ursa Major. A further passage in this same work gives instructions for arranging seats for the Saptarsis, for Arundhatī, and for Agastya: wherein the seat of Arundhatī is to be placed between those of Vasistha and Kaśyapa:

"vasisthakaśyapayor antarāle 'rundhatyai kalpayanti" | (14)

The full passage has already been quoted and discussed in Chapters 1 and 3. These Sūtra passages would appear to make it reasonably clear that Arundhatī is to be identified with the star Alcor, the small star beside § Ursa Major: hence that Vasistha is to be identified with § Ursa Major, the sixth star in the group of seven. Such identifications are made explicit in the Epic, early Purāṇic and astronomical texts (see next section). They are also suggested by the fact that, in the standard form of the first main list of

(12) Āśvalāyana Gr̥hya Sūtra 1.7.22.

(13) Hiranyakeśin Gr̥hya Sūtra 1.7.22.14.

(14) Hiranyakeśin Gr̥hya Sūtra 2.8.19.2.

the Saptarsi group in the earlier texts, Vasistha appears most frequently as the sixth Rsi in the group of seven: and it may thus be inferred that the seventh Rsi is Kaśyapa, who is to be identified with  $\eta$  Ursa Major; the fifth Rsi is Atri, who is to be identified with  $\epsilon$  Ursa Major (the "loner" of the group, as demonstrated in Chapter 1); and so forth for the other Rsis in the group.

The role of the Saptarsis as stars in the sky is thus a tradition which is to be found in the Vedic hymns, and which continues throughout the subsequent Brāhmaṇa and Sūtra texts.

Section 3 : The Later Literature.

Throughout the later literature of the Epic, early Purāṇic and astronomical texts, the tradition of the Saptarṣis as stars in the sky is well-known and well-attested. The references may be divided for convenience into three separate categories: namely poetical, mythological, and astronomical or observational.

(a) Poetical References.

These references are primarily in the form of a simile: likening something to the Saptarṣis in the sky. A passage in the Bāla Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, for example, refers to the decorations on sacrificial poles shining with a brilliance like that of the Saptarṣis:

"ecchādītās te vāsobhiḥ puṣpāir gandhaiś ca pūjitāḥ |  
saptarṣayo dīptimānto virājante yathā divi" || (15)

Similarly a passage in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata speaks of many Munis surrounding king Vīradyumna just as the Saptarṣis surround Dhruva:

"tatas te munayaḥ sarve parivārya nararṣabham |  
upaviśaṁ puraskṛtya saptarṣaya iva dhruvam" || (16)

In one of the plays ascribed to Bhāsa, namely the Svapnavāsavadattam, the Saptarṣis are likened to a group of cranes seen flying through the sky:

"vayasya paśyāmy anāṁ | rjvāyatām ca viralām ca natounatām ca |  
saptarṣivamśakutīlām ca nivartaneṣu ||  
nirmucyamaṇabhujagodaranimālasya | sīmām ivāmbaratālasya  
vibhujyamaṇām" || (17)

At one point in the Brhatsaṁhitā, Varāhamihira speaks of the Saptarṣis as protecting the northern region, and as being like a string of

(15) Rāmāyaṇa 1.13.21.

(16) Mahābhārata 12.126.25.

(17) Svapnavāsavadattam 4.2.

200.  
pearls or a wreath of white water-lilies adorning a young girl:

"saikāvalīva rājati sasitotpalamālinī sahāseva |  
nāthavatīva ca dig yaiḥ kauberī saptabhir munibhiḥ ||  
dhruvanāyakopadeśān narinarttīvottarā bhramadbhiś ca |  
yaiś cāram ahaṃ teṣāṃ kathayisye vṛddhagargamatāt" || (18)

Such references as these lead in turn to the next category of references: which speak in mythological terms of the Saptarṣis in the sky, and which also account in mythological or similar terms for both individual Rṣis and also the Saptarṣi group being transferred to the sky and appearing as stars.

(b) Mythological References.

General references in the earlier literature relate that the Rsis - or variantly the Āṅgirasas, concerning whom there occurs an entire myth-cycle in the Vedic Saṁhitās and the Brāhmaṇa texts - gain heaven (Divam, Svar, Svargaloka and similar) through the performance of sacrifice or tapas or through the chanting of hymns (see next section). Much the same idea is to be found also in the later literature: as for example in a passage in the Vāyu and Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇas, which relates that the Saptarṣis went to heaven (Divam) after abandoning their clothes at a Tīrtha called Svargamārgapradā or "that which bestows the way to heaven":

"svargamārgapradam nāma tīrtham sadyo varapradam |  
cīrāṇy utsrjya yasmims tu divam saptarṣayo gataḥ" || (19)

A more general passage in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata speaks of the stars in the sky as being the self-illuminated bodies of Rsis and others: explaining that they have attained such a status on account of their performance of tapas and of good deeds:

"svayaiva prabhayā tatra dyotante punyalabdhayā ||  
tārārūpaṇi yāniha drśyante dyutimanti vai |  
dīpavaḥ viprakṛstatvād aṁbūni sumahānty api ||  
tāni tatra prabhāsvanti rūpavanti ca pāṇḍavaḥ |  
dadarśa svesu dhīṣṇyesu dīptimanti svayarcīṣa ||  
tatra rajarsayaḥ siddha vīraś ca nihata yudhi |  
tapasā ca jitasvargāḥ sampetuh śatasamghaśaḥ ||  
...  
ete sukr̥tināḥ pārtha svesu dhīṣṇyesv avasthitāḥ |  
yān dr̥ṣṭavan asi vibho tārārūpaṇi bhūtaḥ" || (20)

The passage may be seen to express a particular cosmological view, as to the nature of the stars in the sky: and it may accordingly be related to the allied idea of how the Saptarṣis themselves became transferred to the sky through their performance of sacrifice, of good deeds, and of tapas (see further in the following section).

(19) Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.13.62 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.15.60.

(20) Mahābhārata 3.43.29-35.

237

The myth of Viśvāmitra transferring Triśaṅku to the sky in bodily form is related on several occasions in the Epic texts.<sup>(21)</sup> In its basic form, the myth commences by telling that Triśaṅku sought to gain in bodily form a place in the sky (variously referred to as Divam, Devaloka, Svargaloka): and that Viśvāmitra granted his desire - in opposition to the wishes of Vasiṣṭha - through the performance of a sacrifice. The accounts of this myth then relate that Indra refused to allot Triśaṅku a place in the sky: whereupon Viśvāmitra became filled with anger, and created another set of Saptarṣis and Nakṣatras in the southern region:

"srjan daksināmārgasthān saptarṣīn aparān punah ||  
nakṣatramālām aparām asrjat krodhamūrchitah" | (22)

"ati nakṣatravamsāms ca kruddho nakṣatrasampadā |  
prati śravanapūrvāni nakṣatrāni sasarja yah" || (23)

It may be noted that the Epic accounts of the myth of Triśaṅku end by relating that Indra eventually allowed Triśaṅku to remain in bodily form in the sky: and that the Gods also permitted the new group of Nakṣatras and of Saptarṣis created by Viśvāmitra so to remain. Thus Viśvāmitra makes his request that they should remain as long as the worlds endure:

"nakṣatrāni ca sarvāni māmakāni dhruvāny atha ||  
yāval lokā dharisyanti tiṣṭhantv etāni sarvaśah" |

to which the assembled Gods reply:

"evam bhavatu bhadram te tiṣṭhantv etāni sarvaśah |  
gagane tāny anekāni vaiśvānarapathād bahih ||  
nakṣatrāni munisrestha tesu jyotiḥsu jājvalan" | (24)

The references in these passages to the creation by Viśvāmitra of another Saptarṣi group, and of another system of Nakṣatras commencing with Śravanā, lead to the consideration of a further issue: namely

(21) e.g. Rāmāyana 1.56.10-1.59.73 : Mahābhārata 1.165.20-42: 13.3.9.

(22) Rāmāyana 1.59.20-21.

(23) Mahābhārata 1.65.34.

(24) Rāmāyana 1.59.25-28.

that of the different reckonings - as between the Epic, Purāṇic and astronomical texts - of the astronomical system of the Saptarṣi Yuga. The full details of this system will be examined in detail in section 5 of this Chapter: but in the present context, two particular points may be singled out which arise from the above-quoted passages.

In the first place, the fact that Viśvāmitra is said to create another Saptarṣi group - as also another set of Nakṣatras - in the southern region, in contrast to the more usual situation of the Saptarṣi group in the northern region (see Chapter 3), may be taken to suggest that such an alternative series of Saptarṣis and Nakṣatras was in some way connected with the southern region. Such a suggestion would thus be parallel to the further suggestions advanced on other grounds in Chapter 3 that the second main list of the Saptarṣi group is itself associated especially with a regional and cultural context which is of a more southern orientation than that evident in the earlier texts. Such a question of regional association will be returned to at the end of section 5.

In the second place, it may be noted that Viśvāmitra is in the above-quoted passages said to create both a new Saptarṣi group and also a new group of Nakṣatras commencing with Śravanā. It has already been seen that there are two main groups of the Saptarṣis evident in the literary traditions: one of which appears only from the Epic texts onwards - which are also the texts which speak of the creation of such a "new" group of Saptarṣis by Viśvāmitra. It may also be noted that these same texts give evidence of two different enumerations or orderings of the Nakṣatras. As already indicated, the full details of these two different systems are implicated in the chronology of the Saptarṣi Yuga: and they will accordingly be examined in detail in section 5. In the present context the evidence for two such variant systems may be set out, prior to its detailed

---



consideration in that section.

The passages quoted above imply that, whereas the system of Nakṣatras was usually considered to commence with Kṛttikā - as from the Yajurveda texts onwards - that created by Viśvāmitra began with Śravaṇā, which was earlier called Śronā and listed as either the 20th of the 27 Nakṣatras or the 21st of the 28 Nakṣatras. On a mythological level, similar information is conveyed by those passages which tell that Skanda allotted the Kṛttikās a place in the sky which was formerly occupied by Abhijit.<sup>(25)</sup> In the early lists of 28 Nakṣatras,<sup>(26)</sup> Abhijit immediately precedes Śronā/Śravaṇā: thus in this account Abhijit is omitted from the list of Nakṣatras - thereby leaving only 27 - and the Kṛttikās adopt a position immediately adjacent to that of Śravaṇā. The passage in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata which gives this account also relates that Brahmā created the Nakṣatras as commencing with Dhanisthā - which was earlier called Śraviṣṭhā, and listed as either the 21st of the 27 Nakṣatras or the 22nd of the 28 Nakṣatras:

"dhanisthādis tadā kālo brahmaṇā parinirmītaḥ" | (27)

Thus with this passage, there are now two alternative commencements of the Nakṣatras: one with Śravaṇā, and the other with Dhanisthā.

The astronomer Vrddha Garga observed that in his day - namely around the end of the 1st century B.C. - there were two alternative enumerations of the Nakṣatras: one commencing with Kṛttikā, used in sacrifices, and another commencing with Śraviṣṭhā/Dhanisthā, used in other reckonings:

"tesāṃ ca sarveṣāṃ nakṣatrāṇāṃ karmasu kṛttikāḥ prathamam ācakṣate | śraviṣṭhā tu saṃdhyāyāḥ pūrve lagnāṇāṃ" || (28)

Varāhamihira similarly implies in several passages in his works that

(25) Mahābhārata 3.219.1-11.

(26) e.g. Maitrāyaṇī Saṃhitā 2.13.20 : Taittirīya Saṃhitā 3.1.1.1-2: 3.1.4.1ff : Atharvaveda 19.7.1: 19.8.2: etc.

(27) Mahābhārata 3.219.10.

(28) quoted by Somākhara on Vedāṅga-jyotiṣa 5.

Dhanisthā is to be considered as the first of the Nakṣatras:

"diggrahabhāgaiḥ septabhir ūnam śaśibham dhanisthādyam" || (29)

"śeṣaṁ trinavakabhaktān nakṣatram tad dhanisthādi" || (29a)

A passage in the Āśvamedhika Parvan of the Mahābhārata similarly states that, in its opinion, the Nakṣatras commence with Śravisthā:

"śravisthādīni rksāni rtavaḥ śīśirādayaḥ" || (30)

This latter passage is further complicated by the fact that 12 of the 28 manuscripts referred to in the BORI Critical Edition of the text read "śravanādīni ...." in place of "śravisthādīni ..": thereby illustrating the different variant reckonings as to the commencement of the Nakṣatras with either Śronā/Śravanā or Śravisthā/Dhanisthā.

The full implications of these passages will be considered in detail in section 5: but in the present context it may be concluded that the reference to the creation by Viśvāmitra of new groups of both Saptarṣis and Nakṣatras may be interpreted as more than a merely poetical or mythological reference.

Several further mythological references implicating the Saptarṣis in the sky relate to Dhruva: who, after performing severe tapas, is given by Brahmā a place in the sky in front of the Saptarṣis:

"tasmai brahmā dadau prītaḥ sthānam ātmasanam prabhuh |  
acalam caiva purataḥ saptarṣīṇaṁ prajāpatiḥ" || (31)

A passage in the Matsya Purāṇa further relates that Dhruva is established above the realm of the Saptarṣis, and constitutes the third foot of Viṣṇu:

"ūrdhvottaram ṛṣibhyas tu dhruvo yatrānusamsthitaḥ |  
etat viṣṇupadaṁ divyaṁ tṛtīyaṁ vyomni bhāsvaram" || (32)

A passage in the Anuśāsana Parvan of the Mahābhārata refers to

(29) Pañcasiddhāntikā 12.3.

(29a) Brhajjātaka 26.15, cf. 26.16.

(30) Mahābhārata 14.44.2.

(31) Harivamśa 2.10-13 : cf. Matsya Purāṇa 4.36-37 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 1.11.29-56.

(32) Matsya Purāṇa 124.111 : cf. Brahmānda Purāṇa 1.2.21.175-176 :  
Vāyu Purāṇa 1.50.221 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 2.8.93.

Viśvāmitra as shining in the middle of the Brahmarṣis and Dhruva,  
and as always frequenting the northern region:

"dhrūvasya<sup>u</sup>ttānāpādasya<sup>u</sup> brahmarsī<sup>u</sup>ṇām<sup>u</sup> tathai<sup>u</sup>va ca<sup>u</sup> |  
madhye<sup>u</sup> jvalati<sup>u</sup> yo<sup>u</sup> nityam<sup>u</sup> adicī<sup>u</sup>n<sup>u</sup> āśrito<sup>u</sup> diśam<sup>u</sup>" || (33)

A further passage in the Vana Parvan speaks of all the Saptarṣis as  
shining in the sky - a status which they obtained by honouring the  
law enjoined by Dhātṛ in the Purāṇas:

"dhātṛā<sup>u</sup> vidhir<sup>u</sup> yo<sup>u</sup> vihitā<sup>u</sup> purāṇais<sup>u</sup> tam<sup>u</sup> pūjayanto<sup>u</sup> narevarya<sup>u</sup> santah<sup>u</sup> |  
saptarṣayah<sup>u</sup> pārtha<sup>u</sup> divi<sup>u</sup> prabhānti<sup>u</sup> neśe<sup>u</sup> balasyeti<sup>u</sup> careḍ<sup>u</sup> adharma<sup>u</sup>m" || (34)

Other passages speak of Arundhatī in connection with the Saptarṣis  
in the sky. One passage in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata relates  
that Arundhatī, by insulting the Muni Vasistha who goes in the  
middle of the Saptarṣis, became a little star next to him:

"arundhatī<sup>u</sup> paryaśaṅkad<sup>u</sup> vasistham<sup>u</sup> rṣisattamam<sup>u</sup> ||  
vikuddhabhāvam<sup>u</sup> atyantam<sup>u</sup> sadā<sup>u</sup> priyahite<sup>u</sup> ratam<sup>u</sup> |  
saptarṣimadhyagam<sup>u</sup> vīram<sup>u</sup> avamene<sup>u</sup> ca<sup>u</sup> tam<sup>u</sup> munim<sup>u</sup> ||  
apadhyānena<sup>u</sup> sā<sup>u</sup> tena<sup>u</sup> dhūmaruṇasamaprabhā<sup>u</sup> |  
lakṣyā<sup>u</sup>lakṣya<sup>u</sup> nābhirūpā<sup>u</sup> nimittam<sup>u</sup> iva<sup>u</sup> lakṣyate<sup>u</sup>" || (35)

One sign of the disturbance of the natural order is said to be  
when Arundhatī hides or eclipses Vasistha:

"yā<sup>u</sup> caisā<sup>u</sup> viśrūtā<sup>u</sup> rājans<sup>u</sup> trailokyē<sup>u</sup> sādhusammatā<sup>u</sup> |  
arundhatī<sup>u</sup> tayāpy<sup>u</sup> eśa<sup>u</sup> vasisthaḥ<sup>u</sup> prsthataḥ<sup>u</sup> kṛtāḥ<sup>u</sup>" || (36)

One further group of mythological references relate to events at the  
end of each Manvantara and Kalpa: when the Saptarṣis are said to  
move from Mahar to Jana Loka.<sup>(37)</sup> Such references may be said to refer  
to the Saptarṣis as figures involved in a particular cosmological  
view: and they have been discussed in detail in Chapter 4.

(33) Mahābhārata 13.3.15.

(34) Mahābhārata 3.26.13.

(35) Mahābhārata 1.224.27-31.

(36) Mahābhārata 6.2.31.

(37) e.g. Brahmānda Purāṇa 2.3.1.7-21; 3.4.1.185-188; 3.4.2.47-55;  
3.4.2.130-140; Vāyu Purāṇa 2.4.8-22; 2.28.189-193; 2.39.48-58;  
Viṣṇu Purāṇa 6.4.1ff; etc. (see further refs. in Ch.4 sec.3(c)).

(c) Astronomical or Observational References.

A passage from the Brhatsamhitā has already been cited under the heading of Poetical References: and it relates of the Saptarsis that they protect the northern region, and that the entire northern region appears to be dancing around them; and that they are like a string of pearls or a wreath of white water-lilies adorning a young girl. The same passage thereafter continues to relate that they rise constantly in the north-east, together with Arundhatī: and it then enumerates and identifies each of the Saptarsis, commencing with Marīci at the eastern end (who is thus identified with  $\eta$  Ursa Major), next to whom is Vasistha with Arundhatī adjacently positioned, and so forth for the other Rsis. It may be noted that the passage thus equates Vasistha with  $\zeta$  Ursa Major, and Arundhatī with the star Alcor next to him:

"prāguttarataś caite sadodayante sasādhvīkāḥ ||  
pūrve bhāge bhagavān marīcir apare sthito vasistho 'smāt |  
tasyāṅgirās tato 'tris tasyāsannah pulastyaś ca ||  
pulahah kratur iti bhagavān āsannā anukramena pūrvādyāḥ |  
tatra vasistham munivaram upāśritārundhatī sādhvī" || (38)

The passage has already been discussed in Chapter 2 section 2(c): and it need not be further commented upon at this stage.

A passage in the Śānti Parvan of the Mahābhārata gives an instruction that soldiers should fight with the Saptarsis at their back - that is to say, with their backs to the north and facing towards the south:

"saptarsīn prsthataḥ kṛtvā yudhyerann acalā iva" | (39)

A passage in the Kāma Sūtra similarly makes reference to the Saptarsis in the sky: and relates that, after intercourse, the man should point out to the woman the collection of Nakṣatras and the garland of Arundhatī, Dhruva and the Saptarsis. It terms such a

(38) Brhatsamhitā 13.1-6.

(39) Mahābhārata 12.101.16.

sight the "consummation of pleasure":

"tadañkasamlīnāyāś candramasam paśyantyā naksatrapañktivyakṭikaranam ||  
arundhatīdhruvasaptarsimālādarśanam ceti ratāvasānikam" || (40)

A passage in the Yājñavalkya Dharma Śāstra describes various constellations in the sky, and speaks of those many Munis in Devaloka who inhabit the region between the Nāgavīthī and the Saptarsis:

"saptarsināgavīthyante devalokam samāśritāḥ |  
tāvanta eva munayah sarvārambhavivarjitāḥ" || (41)

According to Varāhamihira and other writers,<sup>(41a)</sup> the Nāgavīthī represents the course of Venus or the Moon through the Nakṣatras Svāti (or Aśvinī), Bharanī, and Kṛttikā: hence the passage may accordingly be interpreted as indicating that the Munis inhabit either the space which is in a direct line through Dhruva ( = Draconis) between the two sets of star-groups (along the 30°-210° longitudinal axis), or the space which is between the latitudes of the Saptarsis (55°-60° north) and the said Nakṣatras (0°, i.e. on both the ecliptic and the equator. An idea corresponding to the latter concept is to be found in several of the early Purāṇic texts: which relate that the path of the Devas lies to the north of the sphere of Savitṛ, to the north of the Nāgavīthī, and to the south of the Saptarsis; and which also relate that the inhabitants of that region include Siddhas, Brahmacārins and others:

"nāgavīthyuttaram yac ca saptarsibhyaś ca daksinam |  
uttarah savituh panthā devayānaś ca smṛtaḥ ||  
tatra te vāsinah siddhā vimalā brahmacārinaḥ" | (42)

The early Purāṇic texts also contain several further references to the position of the Saptarsis in the sky: usually stating that

(40) Kāma Sūtra 2.10.21-22.

(41) Yājñavalkya Dharma Śāstra 3.187.

(41a) e.g. Brhatsamhitā 9.1-2.

(42) e.g. Visnu Purāṇa 2.8.85-86 : Brahmandā Purāṇa 1.2.21.168-169 :  
Vāyu Purāṇa 1.50.216-217.

this is 100,000 Yojanas above the position of Śani (Saturn), while Dhruva in turn lies above the realm of the Saptarsis:

"ūrdhvaṃ śatasahasraṃ tu yojanānāṃ śanaīscarāt ||  
saptarsimandalam kṛtsnam uparisthāt prakāśate |  
ṛsibhyas tu sahasraṇāṃ śatād ūrdhvaṃ vibhāsyate ||  
yo 'sau tāramaye divye vimāne hrasvarūpake |  
uttanapādaputro 'sau medhībhūto dhruvo divi" || (43)

Such passages may in turn be linked with the Mythological References which speak of Dhruva as being established above the realm of the Saptarsis. They may also be taken to indicate that the Saptarsis in the sky represent the constellation Ursa Major, closest to Dhruva or the symbolic "centre" of the sky - the fixed point around which all the other stars and constellations would appear to be turning.

It may be noted that in several contexts in the early Purāṇic texts the term Saptārcis would appear to be used as a synonym of the Saptarsis. A passage in the Brahmandā Purāṇa, for example, relates that certain verses of praise were resorted to by the Saptārcis or Seven Bright Ones and by the Ganas of Brahmarsis:

"etaḍ uktaṃ ca saptārcirbrahmarsigaṇasevitam" | (44)

A further passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa refers to the Saptārcis as bestowers of boons, an epithet which is similarly applied to the Saptarsis:

"saptārciṣaṃ pravakṣyāmi sarvakāmapradam śubham ||  
....  
saptarsīnāṃ pitṛnāṃ ca tān namasyāmi kāmadaṇ" || (45)

Thus it may be inferred that in such contexts the term Saptārcis is used in order to designate the Saptarsi group: and it may be noted that such a term is itself implicated in the concept of the Saptarsis as stars in the sky, through referring to their shining

(43) e.g. Brahmandā Purāṇa 3.4.2.133-135; 1.2.24.122 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.39.134-135; 1.53.97 : Viṣṇu Purāṇa 2.7.9-10 : Matsya Purāṇa 128.74.

(44) Brahmandā Purāṇa 2.3.11.30.

(45) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.12.20-22.

or bright nature.

Several further references to the Saptarsi group are to be found in various of the astronomical works:<sup>(46)</sup> but since such references are mainly of a technical nature, they need not be cited in the present context.

---

(46) e.g. Sūrya Siddhānta 13.309 : Mahāsiddhānta 1.11: 2.9 :  
Brhatsamhitā 2.5: 11.33-34: 47.12: 48.55ff.

Section 4 : The Transference of the Saptarṣis to the Sky.

(a) The Intermediary Role of Fire.

The elemental principle of fire is characterised primarily as being that force which, rising from the earth, ascends to the sky which is the abode of the Gods. As such, fire is one of the principal links and means of communication between the earth and the sky, and between men and the Gods: and in this capacity it is sanctified through incorporation within a sacrificial cult, wherein the sacrificial fire is revered as that which forms a bond between men on the earth and the Gods in the sky. Agni - the fire personified - has as one of his chief roles the task of conveying the sacrifices of men to the Gods: and as such he is the intermediary between men and the Gods, between the world of men and the world of the Gods.

Throughout the Vedic Saṃhitās and the Brāhmaṇas in particular, Fire or Agni not only conveys the sacrifices to the Gods: he is also the means whereby first the Gods, and subsequently the Ṛsis, attain a place in the sky or in heaven, which is the abode of the Gods (Svar, Svargaloka, Suvargaloka, Devaloka and similar). A passage in the Taittirīya Saṃhitā relates for example that the Gods went to Suvargaloka by means of Agni or Fire:

"agninā vai devāḥ suvargam lokam āyan" | (47)

Further passages similarly relate that the Gods went to Suvargaloka by means of the sacrifice:

"yajñena vai devāḥ suvargam lokam āyan" | (48)

In like manner a passage in the Atharvaveda relates that it was through Agni that the Gods went to Svar:

"yena devāḥ svar āruruhur hitvā śarīram amṛtasya nābhim" | (49)

(47) Taittirīya Saṃhitā 5.3.9.

(48) Taittirīya Saṃhitā 6.3.4 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.6.2.1.

(49) Atharvaveda 4.11.6.



Thus Fire appears in such contexts not merely as an active intermediary between heaven and earth, moving between the two and conveying sacrifices from the earth to the sky: it is also a passive principal, acting as the means which enables others to move between heaven and earth and to gain transference from the earth to the sky.

---

(b) Fire as the Means whereby the Rsis attain Svargaloka.

The myth-cycle of the Sacrifice of the Ādityas and Aṅgirasas relates, in many varied forms, how first the Ādityas or Gods and after them the Aṅgirasas or Rsis attained Svargaloka through the performance of sacrifice. Such accounts are given throughout the Vedic Samhitās, the Brāhmanas and the Sūtras; and the basic form recounts that the Ādityas and Aṅgirasas sacrificed with Agni/Fire to Agni, and thereby went to Svargaloka:

"ādityāś caivehaśan aṅgirasāś ca te 'gre 'gnināgnim ayajanta  
te svargam lokam āyan" | (50)

"agnim auvārabhāmahe hotrvūrye purohitam |  
yenāyann uttamam svar devā aṅgirasas divam iti" || (51)

A great many variants of this theme occur throughout these texts. Thus for example it is said in some versions that the Ādityas, having attained Svargaloka through sacrifice, gave to the Aṅgirasas as a Dakṣiṇā the sun in the form of a white horse:

"ādityāś ca vā aṅgirasāś ca svarge loka 'spardhanta .... athaitebhya  
etam ādityā adityam evāśvam śvetam bhūtam aśvābhidhānyabhihitam  
ānāyann imam u vai pratigrhṇīteti .... tato vā ādityāḥ pūrve svargam  
lokam agacchann ahiyantāṅgirasas sa yo bhrātrvyavān syād yo  
'bhicared ya spardheta sa etena yajeta hiyate 'sya pāpmā bhrātrvyo  
gacchati svargam lokam" || (52)

It is similarly said in some passages that the sacrificer himself will attain Svargaloka by performing such a sacrifice:

"ādityāś caṅgirasāś ca svarge loka 'spardhanta ta ādityāḥ pūrve  
svargam lokam agacchann ahiyantāṅgirasas iti sa ya etena procyā  
bhrātrvyāya yajate sa eva bhavati parāsyā dviṣan bhrātrvyo  
bhavati" | (53)

(50) Aitareya Brāhmana 1.16.

(51) Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra 24.12.7 : Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra 1.3.28.

(52) Jaiminīya Brāhmana 2.115-117 : cf. Śatapatha Brāhmana 3.5.1.13-23 :  
Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmana 16.12.1-4 : Jaiminīya Brāhmana 3.187-188 :  
Aitareya Brāhmana 6.34-35 : Kausītaki Brāhmana 30.6 : Taittirīya  
Brāhmana 3.9.21.1 : Śākāyana Śrauta Sūtra 12.19.1-5.

(53) Jaiminīya Brāhmana 2.122-124.

Further variants of this same myth-cycle expand upon the basic theme: <sup>(54)</sup> and also tell how individual Āṅgirasas attained Svargaloka. <sup>(55)</sup>

Moving on from this particular myth-cycle, other passages relate how the Ṛsis in general attained Svargaloka. Several passages relate that the Gods, having attained Svargaloka by sacrifice, hid the traces of sacrifice in the Yūpa - fearing lest men might follow them and equal them; but that the Ṛsis then discovered that Loka through the Yūpa:

"yajñena vai devāḥ suvargam lokam āyan te 'manyanta manuṣyā no 'nvābhaviṣyantīti te yūpena yopayitvā suvargam lokam āyan tam ṛsayo yūpenaivānu prajānan tad yūpasya yūpatvam" || (56)

Another version in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa relates that the Ṛsis, while searching for the traces of sacrifice which the Gods had hidden, came to the place whence the Gods had gone to Svargaloka and there discovered the sacrifice crawling in the form of a tortoise; this they eventually sacrificed to Agni, and thereby attained their goal of Svargaloka:

"yajñena vai devāḥ | imāṃ jitiṃ jigryur yaiśāṃ iyaṃ jitis te hocuḥ katham na idaṃ manuṣyair anabhyārohyam syād iti te yajñasya rasam dhītṛvā yathā madhu madhukṛto nirdhayeyur viduḥya yajñam yūpena yopayitvā tiro 'bhavan .... || te (ṛsayah) 'rcantah śrāmyantaś ceruḥ | .... preta tadesyāmo yato devāḥ suvargam lokam samāśnuvateti te kim prarocate kim prarocata iti cerur et purodāśam eva kūrmaṃ bhūtvā sarpantam te ha sarva 'eva menire 'yam vai yajña iti || te hocuḥ |

(54) e.g. Taittirīya Saṃhitā 2.6.3.2-4: 3.1.9: 5.2.8.4-5: 5.4.2: 5.4.3: 5.7.2: 6.1.1: 6.1.3: 6.2.6 : Maitrāyaṇī Saṃhitā 3.6.7: 3.8.4 : Atharvaveda 18.1.61 : Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 4.17: 4.32: 5.14 : Kauṣītaki Brāhmaṇa 18.10 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 12.2.2.9ff : Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa 1.224 : Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 16.14.2: 24.2.2: 24.16.2 : Śāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra 14.40.1.

(55) e.g. Taittirīya Saṃhitā 7.1.4 : Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 3.24 : Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa 1.183: 2.235: 3.56: 3.76-77: 3.216 : Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 8.9.5: 12.3.23: 12.5.16: 12.6.12: 12.11.10-11: 13.11.22: 14.5.25: 14.10.9: 15.5.11: 20.11.3-4.

(56) Taittirīya Saṃhitā 6.3.4.

.... agnaye tisthēti tatas tasthāv agnaye vā asthād iti tam agnāv  
 eva parigrhya sarvahutam ajuhavur āhutir hi devānām tata 'ebhyo  
 yajñah prarocata .... || yatkāmā vā etam rsayo 'juhavuh sa ebhyah  
 kāmah samardhyata" || (57)

Thus in such passages it is through Agni or Fire in the context of  
 sacrifice that the Rsis attain their wish of gaining Svargaloka.

Fire itself may be said to be compounded of two primary  
 elements: namely heat and light. On occasions only one of these  
 elements is said to act as the means for attaining Svargaloka -  
 as for example in a passage in the Taittirīya Samhitā, where the  
 Gods, the Ādityas and others are said to have gone upwards through  
 light, by which also the Āṅgirasas are said to have attained  
 greatness:

"yena devā jyotiṣordhvā udāyan yēnādityā vasavo yena rudrāḥ |  
 yēnāṅgirasas mahimānam ānāsus tenai tu yajamānah svasti" || (58)

A further passage in the same work similarly relates that when the  
 Āṅgirasas attained Svargaloka, they gave to the Rsis accomplishment  
 of sacrifice, which became gold - and it is through golden light  
 that the sacrificer attains Svargaloka:

"āṅgirasas suvargam lokam yanto yā yajñasya niskṛtir āsīt tām  
 rsibhyah pratyauhan tad dhīranyam abhavat yad dhīranyaśalkaiḥ  
 prokṣati yajñasya niskṛtyai atho bhesajam evāsmāi karoti ||  
 atho rūpenaivainam samardhayati atho hiraṇyajyotiṣaiva suvargam  
 lokam eti" || (59)

The elements of heat and light appear not only in the external  
 form of the sacrifice, but also - and more especially in the Epic  
 and early Purāṇic texts - in the internal form of asceticism or  
tapas: namely in the performance of austerities which internalise  
 heat (tap), thereby affording a further means whereby the Rsis  
 attain Svargaloka. Thus a passage in the Jaiminīya Brāhmaṇa relates

(57) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.6.2.1-7.

(58) Taittirīya Samhitā 5.7.2.2.

(59) Taittirīya Samhitā 5.4.2.3-4.

that the Saptarsis attained Svargaloka after performing tapas,  
śrama and vrata:

"rsayo ha vai svargam lokam jigryuh śramena tapasā vratacaryena  
te 'kamayanta prajā asmil loke vidhāya svargam lokam gacchemeti  
.... tato vai te prajā asmil loke vidhāya svargam lokam agacchan  
prajā evāsmil loke vidhāya svargam lokam gacchati ye evam  
veda" | (60)

In a similar manner a passage in the Anuśāsane Parvan of the  
Mahābhārata continues the same basic idea, in relating that the  
Saptarsis sought to attain Brahmaloka through the performance of  
tapas:

"kaśyapo 'trir vasisthaś ca bharadvāja 'tha gautamaḥ |  
viśvamitro jamadagniḥ sādhvī caivāpy arundhatī ||  
....  
te vai sarve tapasyantah purā cerur mahīm imām |  
samādhinopāśikṣanto brahmalokam sanātanam" || (61)

So too a more general passage in the Vana Parvan relates that when  
Arjuna travels through Svarga or the sky, he observes that what are  
seen from the earth as stars are in fact the self-illuminated bodies  
of Ṛsis and others who have attained Svarga through the performance  
of tapas and of good deeds:

"svayaiva prabhayā tatra dyotante punyalabdhayā ||  
tārārūpaṇi yāniha drśyante dyutimanti vai |  
....  
dadarśa svesu dhisnyesu dīptimanti svayārcisā ||  
tatra rājarsayah siddhā vīrāś ca nihatā yudhi |  
tapasā ca jitasvargāḥ sampetuh śatasamghaśah ||  
....  
ete sukr̥tinah pārtha svesu dhisnyesv avasthitāḥ |  
yān dr̥ṣṭavān asi vibho tārārūpaṇi bhūtale" || (62)

Thus it is through the medium of Fire - both as the external heat

(60) Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa 2.218-221.

(61) Mahābhārata 13.94.4-6.

(62) Mahābhārata 3.43.29-35.

and light of the sacrifice, and also as the internal heat and light of tapas or asceticism - that the Rsis are transferred from the earth to the sky, to take up their abode in the world of the Gods and to shine as stars in the sky.

---

(c) The Rsis as embodiments of Fire-Agni.

Agni is frequently said to have been given birth by the Rsis. In places -- from the Rgveda onwards -- his birth is ascribed to an individual Rsi, such as Atharvan:

"tvam agne puskerād adhy atharvā nīramanthata |  
mūrdhno viśvasya vāghatah" || (63)

In other contexts -- as in a passage in the Atharvaveda -- it is said that the Saptarṣis gave birth to Agni:

"agne jāyasvādītir nāthiteyam brahmaudanam pacati putrakāmā |  
sapta ṛṣayo bhūtakṛtas te tvā manthantu prajāyā saheha ||

....

sapta ṛṣayo bhūtakṛtas te tvājījanam asyai rayim sarvavīram ni yaccha" || (64)

Agni is also said to possess seven Rsis, just as he possesses seven tongues and similar:

"sapta te agne samidhaḥ sapta jihvāḥ sapta ṛṣayaḥ sapta dhāma priyāni" || (65)

On other occasions Agni is very frequently identified with the Rsi Angiras, and is called the first Angiras:

"tvam agne prathamo aṅgirā ṛṣir devo devānām abhavaḥ śivah sakha" || (66)

A still closer identification between Agni and the Rsis occurs in a passage in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa; where it is said that the Rsis, as the Prāṇas, constitute the very being of Agni:

(63) Rgveda 6.16.13 : Taittirīya Samhitā 3.5.11: 4.1.3: 4.4.4 :  
Vājasaneyi Samhitā 11.32: 15.22 : Aitareya Brāhmaṇa 1.16 :  
Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 6.4.2.2.

(64) Atharvaveda 11.1.1-3.

(65) Taittirīya Samhitā 1.5.3 : Maitrāyaṇī Samhitā 1.6.2 : Vājasaneyi Samhitā 17.79.

(66) Rgveda 1.31.1 : cf. Rgveda 1.31.17: 1.75.2: 4.3.15: 4.9.7: 5.8.4: 5.10.7: 5.11.6: 5.21.1: 6.2.10: 6.16.11: 8.60.2: 8.74.11: 8.75.5: 8.84.8: 8.102.17 : Taittirīya Samhitā 1.2.12: 1.3.14: 2.5.8: 2.6.11: 4.1.4: 4.2.1: 4.4.4: 5.1.5: 6.2.7 : Vājasaneyi Samhitā 11.45: 12.117: 15.28: 34.12 : Maitrāyaṇī Samhitā 1.7.1: 2.7.4: 2.7.6: 2.7.8: 2.13.7: 3.1.3 : Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 1.4.1.25: 3.5.1.32: 6.1.4.4: 6.7.3.6: 7.3.2.8: 6.3.3.3-4: 6.4.1.1-2: 6.3.1.38-41: 6.4.4.14: etc.

"etad vai yatra itam prāṇaḥ ṛsāyo 'gre 'gnim samaskurvams tad  
asminn etam purastad bhāgam akurvata tasmāt purastad bhāgah" | (67)

All of these passages suggest a relatively early identification of Agni with the Ṛsis: and indeed an assimilation of Agni - the principle of Fire - to the Ṛsis, whereby Fire is seen as a constituent element within the nature of the Ṛsis.

The role of the Ṛsis as embodiments of Agni remains an important theme throughout the mythological traditions of the Saptarṣis: and the Ṛsis - either individually or as a group - are frequently envisaged as embodiments of Fire, containing within themselves that combination of heat and brilliance which is the result of severe asceticism or tapas. The following Epic passages may be cited in illustration of this point.

i. When Viśvāmitra performs severe tapas while attempting to attain the status of a Brahmarshi, the Gods go in fear to Brahmā, complaining that the three worlds are troubled and the sun dimmed by Viśvāmitra who resembles Agni in appearance: and that, just as Kāla or time in the form of Fire consumes the entire universe at the dissolution, so too will Viśvāmitra:

"bahubhiḥ kṛṣṇair deva viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ |  
....  
tāvāt prasādyo bhagavaṇ agnirūpo mahādyutiḥ ||  
kālagṇinā yathā pūrva trailokyam dahyate 'khilam |  
devarājyam cikīrṣeta dīyatam asya yan matam" || (68)

In a passage in the Ādi Parvan of the Mahābhārata, Menakā similarly complains to Indra that Viśvāmitra is like a blazing fire, with eyes that resemble both sun and moon, and can burn the three worlds through the power of his tejas or fiery energy:

"mahātejāḥ sa bhagavaṇ sadaiva ca mahātapaḥ |  
....

(67) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 7.2.3.5: 9.1.2.21.

(68) Rāmāyaṇa 1.64.5-18.



tejasā nirdahel lokān kampayed dharanīm padā |  
 samkṣipecc ca mahāmerum tūrnām āvartayet tathā ||  
 tādṛśam tapasā yuktaṁ pradīptam iva pāvakam |  
 katham asmadvidhā bālā jitendriyam abhispr̥set ||  
 hutāśanamukhaṁ dīptam sūryacandrāksitārakam" | (69)

ii. When the sons of Vasistha are slain, Vasistha in grief attempts on five occasions to kill himself: but when he throws himself into the rivers and the ocean they reject him, and the river Śatadru mistakes him for Agni and flees from him:

"tadāgnim iddhvā bhagavān samviveśa mahāvane ||  
 tam tadā susamiddho 'pi na dadāha hutāśanaḥ |  
 dīpyamāno 'py amitraghno śīto 'gnir abhavat tataḥ ||  
 ....  
 tataḥ sa punar evarsir nadīm haimavatiṁ tadā |  
 candagrāhavatiṁ dr̥stvā tasyaḥ srotasy avāpatat ||  
 sā tam agnisamam vipram anucintya saridvarā |  
 śatadhā vidrutā yasmāc chatadrur iti viśrutā" | (70)

iii. When Agni goes to a wood to perform tapas, Angiras takes his place and becomes Agni - heating the worlds, destroying darkness, and carrying oblations to the Gods. Agni thereupon becomes distressed, thinking that Brahmā has installed another Agni and that his own status as Agni has been destroyed; but Angiras persuades him to reassume his former role, in return for giving him a son:

"yathā kruddho hutavahas tapas taptum vanam gataḥ ||  
 yathā ca bhagavān agniḥ svayam evāṅgirā 'bhavat |  
 samtāpayamś ca prabhayā nāśayams timirāṇi ca ||  
 āśramastho mahābhāgo havyavāhaṁ viśesayan |  
 tathā sa bhūtvā tu tadā jagat sarvaṁ prakāśayan ||  
 tapaś caramś ca hutabhuk samtaptas tasya tejasā |  
 bhr̥śam glānaś ca tejasvī na sa kim cit prajajñivān ||  
 atha samcintayāmāsa bhagavān havyavāhanaḥ |

(69) Mahābhārata 1.65.27-38.

(70) Mahābhārata 1.166.42 - 1.167.9.

anyo 'gnir iha lokānām brahmanā sampravartitah |  
 agnitvam vipranastam hi tapyamanasya me tapah ||  
 katham agnih punar aham bhaveyam iti cintya sah |  
 apasyad agnival lokams tapayantam mahamunim ||  
 sopāsarpac chanair bhītas tam uvāca tadāṅgirāḥ |  
 śighram eva bhavesvāgnis tvam punar lokabhāvanah |

....

kuru puṇyam prajāsvargyam bhavāgnis timirāpahah |  
 mām ca deva kuruśvāgne prathamam putram añjasā" || (71)

In a similar myth it is again related that Atharvan once took the place of Agni.<sup>(72)</sup>

iv. Just as the waters of the earth are said to be consumed by Agni at the dissolution of the three worlds - in his form as Kālāgni - so too Aṅgiras, like Agastya, is said to have drunk the ocean through the power of his tejas as if it were milk:

"apibat tejasā hy āpah svayam evāṅgirāḥ purā ||  
 sa tāḥ piban ksīram iva nātrpyata mahātāpāḥ" || (73)

v. It is related of the Sons created by Brahmā that their splendour is equal to that of Fire and the sun:

"asṛjad brāhmanān eva pūrvam brahmā prajāpatih |  
 ātmatejo 'bhinirvṛttān bhāskarāgnisamaprabhān" || (74)

All of these passages thus demonstrate that the Rsis are themselves regarded as embodiments of Agni: inasmuch as they possess an equal brilliance and heat, which has been acquired through the performance of severe tapas.

(71) Mahābhārata 3.207.6-20.

(72) Mahābhārata 3.212.1-30.

(73) Mahābhārata 13.138.3-4 : cf. 13.139.9-30.

(74) Mahābhārata 12.181.1.

(d) The Rsis as Suns.

One of the main functions of Agni or Fire is to disperse darkness and lighten the worlds, in addition to heating them; as for example Agni is told by Āngiras:

"tvam agne prathamah sṛṣṭo brahmanā timirāpahah |

....

kuru pūṇyam prajāsvargyam bhavāgnis timirāpahah" | (75)

Agni thus shares this role or function with the sun, the destroyer of darkness and the heater of the worlds: and just as the Rsis are said to be embodiments of - and to take the place of - Agni or Fire, so too they are on occasions said to be embodiments of - and to take the place of - the Sun. Several instances will have been noted in the passages in the last sub-section: and the following further passages may be cited in illustration of this point.

i. In the Rg and Atharva Vedas and throughout the Brāhmaṇa texts, Atri is said to have rediscovered, rescued and restored the sun after it had been struck by Svarbhānu:

"atrir sūryasya divi cakṣur ādhāt svarbhānor apa māyā aghukṣat" | (76)

"ādityam hi tamo jagrāha tad atrir apamunoda tad atrir anvapaśyat" | (77)

In the Mahābhārata, Atri not merely rescues the sun: in a passage in the Ādi Parvan, when the sun disappears, Atri himself takes its place and becomes visible:

"yaś cedito bhāskare 'bhūt prajāste so 'py atrātrir bhagavān ājagāma" | (78)

Another passage in the Anuśāsana Parvan relates that both Soma and Sūrya were pierced with arrows by Svarbhānu, and the worlds fell into darkness: whereupon Atri, at the request of the Gods, himself

(75) Mahābhārata 3.207.6-20.

(76) Rgveda 5.40.5-9.

(77) Gopatha Brāhmaṇa 1.2.17 : cf. Atharvaveda 13.2.4, .12, .36 :  
Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa 24.3 : Satapatha Brāhmaṇa 4.3.4.21 :  
Peñcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa 6.6.8-10: 14.11.14.

(78) Mahābhārata 1.114.39-42.

became Candramas and Sūrya, creating brilliance through his tapas  
and becoming the darkness-destroying one:

"avidhyata śarais tatra svarbhānuḥ somabhāskarau ||  
atha te tamasā grastā nihanyante sma dānavaiḥ |  
....  
apaśyanta tapasyantam atrim vipram mahāvane ||  
.... (astrir uvāca:)  
katham rakṣāmi bhavatas te 'bruvamā candramā bhava |  
timiraghnaś ca savitā dasyuhā caiva no bhava ||  
evam uktas tadātris tu somavat priyadarśanaḥ |  
apaśyat saumyabhāvam ca sūryasya pratidarśanam ||  
dr̥stvā nātīprabham somam tathā sūryam ca pāṛthiva |  
prakāśam akarod atris tapasā svena samyuge ||  
jagad vitimiram cāpi pradīptam akarot tadā |  
vyajayac chatrusaṅghāmś ca devānāṃ svena tejasā ||  
atrinā dahyamānāms tām dr̥stvā devā mahāsuraṇ" || (79)

ii. When Vasistha acts as an intermediary between king Saṃvarana  
and Vivasvat - the Sun - he is himself said to possess the brilliance  
of the sun:

"jagāma manasā caiva vasistham ṛṣisattamam |  
purohitam amitraghnaś tadā saṃvarano nṛpaḥ ||  
....  
sa tasya manujendrasya paśyato bhagavaṇ ṛṣiḥ |  
urdhvam ācakrame dr̥stum bhāskaram bhāskaradyutiḥ" || (80)

On further occasions Vasistha is again said to possess the brilliance  
of the sun:

"vasistham śreṣṭham āsīnam ṛṣīnam bhāskaradyutiḥ |  
papraccha janako rāja jñānam naiḥśreyasaṃ param" || (81)

His splendour is in one passage said to transcend that of the sun:

"yam mānasam vai pravradanti putram pitamahasyottamabuddhiyuktam |  
vasistham agryam tapaso nidhānam yaś cāpi sūryam vyatiricya bhāti" ||  
(82)

(79) Mahābhārata 13.141.1-11.

(80) Mahābhārata 1.162.10 - 1.163.10.

(81) Mahābhārata 12.291.7-9.

(82) Mahābhārata 12.337.47.

Similar descriptions are also given of other Ṛsis: as for example of Viśvāmitra, who on one occasion is said to have become like the sun through his tejas:

"tejasā bhāskarākāro gādhijah samapadyata" || (83)

iii. In two separate passages in the Nirukta the Septarṣis are identified with the seven rays of the sun:

"saptāsmāi raśmayo rasān abhisannāmayanti |  
saptainam ṛṣayah stuventīti vā" | (84)

"sapta ṛṣayah pratihitāḥ śarīre | raśmaya āditye" | (85)

iv. The Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa relates a tradition that in the after-part of the night, the sun is called Āgiras - while at the time of the Ārṇihotra it is called Bhrgu:

"virātre bhavo bhavasy apararātre 'āgira agnihotravelāyām bhrguḥ" | (86)

v. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa the tortoise (kūrma) is identified with the sun, which is said to be a form of Prajāpati: and it is also identified with Kaśyapa (= tortoise), whence Kaśyapa is said to be the father of all creatures:

"sa yat kūrmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṃ kṛtvā prajāpatiḥ prajā  
asṛjata yad asṛjatakarot tad yad akarot tasmāt kūrmaḥ kaśyapo  
vai kūrmas tasmād ānuḥ sarvāḥ prajāḥ kaśyapya iti || sa yah  
sa kūrmo 'sau sa ādityah" | (87)

The idea of Kaśyapa as the sun appears again in several further contexts. He is in particular associated with the seven suns: thus for example a passage in the Atharvaveda relates that the seven suns

(83) Mahābhārata 9.39.26-27.

(84) Nirukta 4.27 (4.4.6).

(85) Nirukta 12.37 (12.4.3).

(86) Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa 4.5.3.

(87) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 7.5.1.5-6.

are placed together in Kaśyapa, who is bright, full of lustre, and of wondrous light:

"yat te candram kaśyapa rocanāvad yat samhitam puskalam citrabhānu |  
yasmin sūrya ārpitāḥ sapta sākam" | (88)

A passage in the Taittirīya Samhitā relates the birth of Kaśyapa from the golden waters (āpah):

"hiranyavarnāḥ śucayah pāvaka yāsu jātaḥ kaśyapo yāsv indrah |  
agnim yā garbham dadhire virūpās tā na āpah śam syonā bhavantu" || (89)

A corresponding passage is to be found in the Atharvaveda - but here Kaśyapa has been replaced by Savitr:

"hiranyavarnāḥ śucayah pāvaka yāsu jātaḥ savitā yāsv agnih |  
yā agnim garbham dadhire suvarnās tā na āpah śam syonā bhavantu" || (90)

Thus a close connection between Kaśyapa and the Sun is again evident here. A passage in the Taittirīya Āraṇyaka continues the tradition of Kaśyapa as shining with light, and further relates that Kaśyapa is the eighth sun in whom the other seven suns are placed together. It further adds that all these seven suns derive their light from Kaśyapa, as does also Soma or the moon:

"ārogo bhrājah patarah pataṅgaḥ | svarṇaro jyotiśīmān vibhāsaḥ |  
te asmai sarve divam ātapanti | ... kaśyapo 'stamah | ... tasyaiśā  
bhavati | yat te śilpam kaśyapa rocanāvat indriyāvat puskalañ  
citrabhānu | yasmin sūrya arpitāḥ sapta sākam || ... te asmai  
sarve kaśyapāḥ jyotir labhante | tān somah kaśyapād adhinirdhamati" |

The same passage also relates a tradition that the seven suns are to be identified with the seven Prāṇas - with which, as was seen in Chapter 1, are identified the Saptarśis:

"prāṇo jīvanīndriyajīvanī | sapta śīrsanyāḥ prāṇāḥ | sūrya  
ity ācāryāḥ" | (91)

(88) Atharvaveda 13.3.10.

(89) Taittirīya Samhitā 5.6.1.

(90) Atharvaveda 1.33.1.

(91) Taittirīya Āraṇyaka 1.7.1-12.

Although this idea of the Saptarsis as being identical with the seven suns is not generally to be found in further contexts -- as, for example, the seven suns which burn the worlds to ashes at the end of the Kalpa are not identified with the Saptarsis -- it is nevertheless of interest as a further indication of a perceived connection between the Saptarsis on the one hand and the seven suns on the other hand, both emanating equal portions of heat and light.

All of these passages thus demonstrate that the Rsis are here regarded as being equal to or embodiments of the sun: radiating the same heat and brilliance, which has been gained primarily from their wealth of tapas.

---

(e) The Transference of the Saptarṣis to the Sky.

On the basis of the passages which have been cited and discussed in this section, it may be concluded that the Ṛsis are themselves regarded as being endowed with a brilliance - a heat and light - which is equal to that of Fire/Agni and the Sun. As such, they not only contain within themselves the attributes of Fire and the Sun, but they may be said to be embodiments of both Fire and the Sun - containing within themselves the dual principles of heat and light which have been gained primarily through the pursuit and performance of tapas. Just as Fire/Agni acts as an intermediary between the world of men and the world of the Gods, so too the Ṛsis are in one sense intermediaries between men and the Gods. In the early Purāṇic texts this idea is formulated into the cosmogonic scheme - associated especially with the Manvantara traditions, as was seen in Chapter 4 - wherein the Saptarṣis, created by Brahmā, are those who complete the work of creation and who give birth to men before returning to the world of the Gods - thus acting as intermediaries between the creator and his creation.

It is through Fire - and through their nature as embodiments of Fire - that the Ṛsis attain Svargaloka or the realm of the Gods: and it is also through Fire that the Ṛsis become stars in the sky, shining on account of their innate tejas or fiery energy which has been acquired through the performance of tapas. As has been noted, it is not the Saptarṣis alone who become stars in this way: for it is said in several contexts that any man may - through the performance of tapas and good deeds - become a shining object in the sky, shining on account of the light of acquired merit and through a wealth of tapas:

"yasyaitā upadhīyante suvargam eva lokam eti gacchati prakāśam  
citram eva bhavati" | (92)



"tatra yo punyakṛtas teṣāṃ prakṛtayah purā jvalantya upalabhyante ||  
 syāt tu karmāyavāna tapasā vā kaś cit saśarīro 'ntavantam  
 lokam jayati ...." || (93)

"tatra rājarsayah siddhā vīrāś ca nihatā yudhi |  
 tapasā ca jitasvargāḥ sampetuh śatasamghaśah ||  
 ....  
 ete sukr̥tinaḥ pārtha sveṣu dhiṣṇyesv avasthitāḥ |  
 yān dr̥ṣṭavān asi vibho tārārūpāni bhūtale" || (94)

Just as in the earlier texts the Gods and the Ṛsis go to the sky - to Svargaloka, to the world of the Gods - through the medium of Fire and the sacrifice, so too at a later stage they are seen to attain the same position - as stars in the sky - not so much through external sacrifice as through the amassing of internal heat or tapas, which is in turn manifested through their own external light and brilliance. Thus the idea of the Saptar̥sis as stars in the sky - far from being isolated from their role as performers of sacrifice and tapas on the earth - is indeed in mythological terms the logical outcome of that very role as performers of sacrifice and tapas.

(93) Āpastamba Dharma Sūtra 2.9.24.12-14.

(94) Mahābhārata 3.43.29-35.

Section 5 : The Saptarsi Yuga.

(a) Introduction.

One further group of passages remains to be considered in connection with the idea of the Saptarsis as stars in the sky. All of these passages refer to the Saptarsi Yuga, and to the bhoga of the Saptarsis with the Nakṣatras: the term bhoga designating both sexual pleasure - as the Saptarsis are said to have enjoyed when "in" the Kṛttikā - and also astronomical conjunction. The Saptarsi Yuga is used as a method of chronological computation: it rests upon the theory that the Saptarsis remain "in" or conjoined with each of the 27 Nakṣatras in turn for a period of 100 years - thus completing a full cycle in a period of 2700 years. Varāhamihira remarks in this respect that:

"ekaikasminn rkṣe śatam śatam te caranti varṣānām" | (95)

In the early Purāṇic texts the same basic idea is put forward and elaborated upon - as may be seen from the following passage, which is to be found in several of these texts:

"saptaviṃśatiparyante kṛtsne nakṣatramandale |  
saptarsayas tu tiṣṭhanti paryāyena śatam śatam ||  
saptarsīnām yugam tv etad divyayā samkhyayā smṛtam |  
māsā divyāḥ smṛtāḥ sad ca divyābdāś caiva sapta hi ||  
tebhyaḥ pravartate kālo divyāḥ saptarsibhis tu taiḥ |  
saptarsīnām tu yau pūrvau drśyate uttarādiśi ||  
tayoṛ madhye ca nakṣatram drśyate yat samam divi |  
tena saptarsayo yuktā jñeyā vyomni śatam samāḥ ||  
nakṣatrānām rsīnām ca bhogasyaitan nidarśanam" | (96)

Thus, according to this Purāṇic theory, the Saptarsis are believed to stay for 100 years in each of the Nakṣatras, whose total number is 27 - rather than 28, as in the earlier Nakṣatra lists in certain

(95) Brhatsamhitā 13.4.

(96) Brahmānda Purāṇa 2.3.74.231-235 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.413-417 :  
Matsyā Purāṇa 273.40-44 : cf. Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.24.33-39.

of the Vedic Samhitās, the Brāhmanas and the Sūtras: whereby they are thought to set in motion Divine Time for the Nakṣatras, which consists of seven Divine years and six Divine months. It is said elsewhere that one Divine year is equal to 360 years of men - as for example in a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa:

"trīṇi varṣaśatāny evaṃ saptir varṣās tathaiva ca |  
divyah samvatsaro hy eṣa mānuṣena prakīrtitah" || (97)

Hence on this basis  $7\frac{1}{2}$  Divine years will be equal to 2700 years of men - as is also stated in the first śloka of the above passage. The theory - as given in the above passage - also maintains that the Saptarṣis remain conjoined with a Nakṣatra when such a Nakṣatra is to be seen in a position between the two first or more eastern stars of the Saptarṣi group - which, according to Varāhamihira's enumeration of the group (see section 3(c)), may be taken to be Marīci ( η Ursa Major) and Vasistha ( ζ Ursa Major). The theory is in effect founded upon something of a misconception: since it is observationally and astronomically incorrect to hold that the stars of Ursa Major move their position in this way relative to each of the Nakṣatras or Lunar Mansions. Various attempts have thus been made to explain this supposed phenomenon: as for example by Kamalākara in the Tattvaviveka who, while observing that no such motion of the stars was perceptible, concluded that since the authority of the Purāṇas which affirmed such a motion was irrefutable, the stars themselves might be fixed but the Saptarṣis must be invisible deities who performed such a motion in the specified period.<sup>(98)</sup>

In view of the observational inaccuracy of the theory, it might be inferred that the theory of the Saptarṣis' remaining conjoined with the different Nakṣatras for a period of 100 years represents an attempt to bring the Saptarṣis - as the stars of Ursa Major - into some form of connection with what was originally a

---

(97) Matsya Purāṇa 142.12.

(98) cf. H.T. Colebrooke - Miscellaneous Essays, vol.2 p.316.

quite separate system of chronological reckoning in terms of centennial cycles: and it would seem possible that such a system was originally associated with -- and perhaps employed the names of -- the Naksatras. The subsequent association of the Saptarsis with this system might on this basis be seen as a further elaboration of an idea which occurs in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa: namely that the Saptarsis had at one time in the past been the husbands of the Kṛttikās, but had subsequently moved away from or "divorced" their wives, who rose in the east while they themselves rose in the north.<sup>(99)</sup> Thus the theory of the Saptarsis' remaining conjoined with a Nakṣatra -- enjoying bhoga, namely both astronomical conjunction and sexual pleasure, with them -- may be traced in origin to such Brāhmaṇa contexts, even though such a conjunction does not occur in astronomical terms: and the development of this theory may thus be said to have occurred upon conceptual and mythological rather than observational grounds. The fact that the theory employs a centennial cycle is a point well worthy of note: for it provides evidence both of a cyclical mode of reckoning -- as opposed to further chronological reckonings which are based upon a particular non-recurrent date, such as Kali 3102 B.C., Samvat 58 B.C., or Śaka A.D. 78 -- and also of the currency of the concept of a century, from a relatively early time in India.

Despite the observational inaccuracy of the theory, such a system of chronological reckoning has in practice remained of importance from at least the early Purāṇic texts to the present day: for such a system still remains in use, particularly in North-West India and in Kashmir where it is variously referred to by such names as the Lok-Kāl, the Saptarsi-Kāl, and the Pahāri-Samvat or hill-era. Further names for the system include the Saptarsi Yuga (as used for example in the early Purāṇic texts), the Pāṇdu-Kāl (a term used especially by Albīrūnī), and the Laukika (a term used by both Kalhana

(99) Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa 2.1.2.1-5.

and Albīrūnī, and used also in certain inscriptional contexts).

The Saptarsi Yuga - by which name it will here be referred to - is of considerable importance not only through its use as a method of chronological computation, and through its documentation in the early Purāṇic and astronomical texts which are presently under review. It is also of importance due to the fact that two rival versions of the system - and two methods of putting the theory into practice - may be discerned: both in the early literary texts and also in later accounts and uses of the system. The remainder of this Chapter will accordingly attempt to elucidate the precise natures of these two different versions of the system.

---

An account of the Saptarsi Yuga may commence by noting a statement of Varāhamihira that the Saptarsis were in Maghā when Yudhisthira was ruling, which was 2526 years before the Śaka era:

"āsan maghāsu munayah śāsati prthivīm yudhisthire nṛpatau |  
saddvikapañcadviyutah śakakālas tasya rajñas ca" || (100)

The same verse is almost literally copied by Kalhana in a passage in the Rājatarāṅginī.<sup>(101)</sup> Taking the Śaka era as commencing in A.D. 78,<sup>(102)</sup> it may be seen that according to this reckoning of Varāhamihira the Saptarsis were thought to have been in the Nakṣatra Maghā during the reign of Yudhisthira, which was 2526 years before the Śaka era - namely in 2448 B.C. In further contexts Varāhamihira details computations which place the date of the Mahābhārata war in 2449 B.C. - thus indicating that, according to his reckoning, the year 2448 B.C. represents the first year of the reign of Yudhisthira.

Varāhamihira - together with other astronomers, such as Parāśara and Āryabhata - also accepts the date of 3102 B.C. as denoting the start of the Kali Yuga. All of these astronomers are therefore obliged to make allowance for the additional period of approximately 650 years which is necessary to bridge the resulting gap between the period of Yudhisthira on the one hand and the date of the start of the Kali Yuga on the other hand. It may be noted here - and will be referred to in subsequent contexts - that Varāhamihira, by accepting that the Saptarsis were in Maghā when Yudhisthira was ruling in 2448 B.C., therefore does not accept that the Saptarsis were in Maghā at the start of the Kali Yuga, which he places in 3102 B.C.

(100) Brhat-saṁhitā 13.3.

(101) Rājatarāṅginī 1.56.

(102) It is to be noted that, with this and all subsequent dates, a margin of 1 year must be allowed for: due to the fact that such eras commence usually during the course of a year according to the Christian calendar, namely during the month of Caitrā or March-April.

The later astronomers - namely those such as Varāhamihira around the Gupta period, as opposed to earlier astronomers such as Vrddha Garga around the start of the Christian era - give detailed computations for establishing the motions of the planets and constellations, including those of the Saptarṣis. Āryabhata, for example, gives the following figures which may be presented in summary form:

- a. The total number of years in a Kalpa is 4,320,000,000.<sup>(103)</sup>
- b. The total number of complete revolutions or cycles of the Saptarṣis in a Kalpa is 1,599,998.<sup>(104)</sup>
- c. Between the dawn of the Kalpa and the start of the Kali Yuga, the total number of years elapsed is 1,972,944,000.<sup>(105)</sup>
- d. To discover the position of a planet or constellation at the start of the Kali Yuga, multiply the total number of revolutions in a Kalpa by 4567 and divide by 10,000.<sup>(106)</sup>

It may be noted in (b) that, since 1 complete revolution of the Saptarṣis is said to occur in 2700 years, then a total of 1,600,000 revolutions will in fact occur in 4,320,000,000 years: hence Āryabhata here adds an additional 1 year every 800,000 years. It may be noted in (d) that the fraction 4567 : 10,000 is equal to the fraction 1,972,944,000 : 4,320,000,000.

Applying these computations to the revolutions of the Saptarṣis, this results in a figure of 730,719.0866. In other words, at the start of the Kali Yuga the Saptarṣis had completed 730,719 full cycles and 0.0866 of another cycle. Taking the full cycle as consisting of 2700 years, then the Saptarṣis had completed  $2700 : 0.0866 = 3.11778$  years of another cycle. Accepting for the moment that the complete

---

(103) Mahāsiddhānta 1.15-16.

(104) Mahāsiddhānta 1.11: 2.9.

(105) Mahāsiddhānta 1.19.

(106) Mahāsiddhānta 2.10.

cycles of the Saptarṣis should commence with Kṛttikā - as in the lists throughout the Vedic Samhitās, the Brāhmaṇas and the Sūtras (see below) - then accordingly at the start of the Kali Yuga the Saptarṣis should have just entered Kṛttikā at the start of a new cycle. Given that - on the basis of the statement of Varāhamihira - the Saptarṣis were in Maghā in 2448 B.C., it may be seen that they would have been in Kṛttikā some 600 to 700 years earlier than this: Kṛttikā being the 1st Nakṣatra in the Nakṣatra lists, and Maghā being the 8th. In other words, the start of the Kali Yuga is on this basis indicated as being in 3102 B.C. - as is stated to be the case by Āryabhata in several further contexts. According to the computations of Āryabhata, the Saptarṣis should have been in Kṛttikā for only some 3 years before the start of the Kali Yuga, thus entering Kṛttikā in 3105 B.C. However, if they had entered Kṛttikā in 3105 B.C., then they would similarly have entered Maghā in 2405 B.C. or some 700 years later: yet this would contradict the statement of Varāhamihira that they were in Maghā in 2448 B.C. On the other hand, Cunningham recorded several accounts given by 19th century informants to the effect that the Saptarṣis had already spent 75 years in a Nakṣatra at the start of the Kali Yuga: (107) and it will be seen below that their entry into a Nakṣatra is consistently considered to have occurred in the year 76 of each Christian century B.C. It may thus be inferred that the computations of Āryabhata are some 71 years incorrect over a period of 1,972,944,000 years. On this basis, therefore, there will accordingly have occurred an interval of approximately 650 years between the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. and the time of Yudhiṣṭhira and the Mahābhārata war in 2449-2448 B.C. Kalhana, following Varāhamihira, also accepts the necessity of positing such an interval, and states in one passage in the Rājatarāṅginī that 653 years of the Kali Yuga had passed when the Kurus and Pāṇḍavas flourished on the earth:

---

(107) cf. A. Cunningham - A Book of Indian Eras, p.12.



"śateṣu śaṭsu sārdeṣu tryadhikeṣu ca bhūtale |  
kaler gateṣu varṣāṇām abhūvan kurupāṇḍavāḥ" || (108)

The figure of 653 years deducted from the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. accordingly gives a date of 2449 B.C. for the time when the Kurus and Pāṇḍavas flourished on the earth.

Varāhamihira claimed to be following the theories of his predecessor Vṛddha Garga in describing the motion of the Saptarṣis:

"yaiś cāram ahaṃ teṣāṃ kathayisye vṛddhagargamatāt" || (109)

Yet Vṛddha Garga held that at the twilight between the Dvāpara and Kali Yugas the Saptarṣis were in the Nakṣatra sacred to the Pitṛs:

"kalidvāparasandhau tu sthitās te pitṛdaivatam |  
munayo dharmanirataḥ prajānāṃ pālāne rataḥ" || (110)

Since Maghā is the Nakṣatra sacred to the Pitṛs, it may be seen that Vṛddha Garga - at around the end of the 1st century B.C. - held to the theory that the Saptarṣis were in Maghā at the start of the Kali Yuga. Thus Varāhamihira - who holds that the Saptarṣis were in Kṛttikā at the start of the Kali Yuga, which he places in 3102 B.C. - has emended this statement of his predecessor to exclude any mention of the start of the Kali Yuga, and to assert that the period of Yudhiṣṭhira and the Mahābhārata war is to be placed in 2449-2448 B.C. - at which time he holds that the Saptarṣis were in Maghā. Thence arises in turn the interval of approximately 650 years between the start of the Kali Yuga and the time of the Mahābhārata war and reign of Yudhiṣṭhira.

The Epic and early Purāṇic texts know of no such interval between these two occurrences: and on the contrary place the commencement of the Kali Yuga at a time after that of the Mahābhārata war. A passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, for example, states explicitly that the Kali Yuga commenced after the Mahābhārata war, while the

---

(108) Rājatarāṅginī 1.51.

(109) Brhatsaṃhitā 13.2.

(110) quoted by Bhaṭṭotpala on Brhatsaṃhitā 13.3.

Saptarṣis were in Maghā, and at the moment when Kṛṣṇa's feet left the earth - whereupon Yudhiṣṭhira renounced his throne, and consecrated Parīkṣit as king:

"to tu parīkṣitam kāle maghāsv āsan dvijottama |  
tadaṁ pravṛttaṁ ca kalir dvādaśābdaśatātmakeṇ ||  
yadaiva bhagavadviṣṇor aṁśo yāto divam dvija |  
vasudevakulodbhūtas tadaiva kalir āgataḥ ||

....

tatyāje sāmūjo rājyaṁ dharmaputro yudhiṣṭhiraḥ ||  
viparītāni drṣtvā ca nimitṭāni sa pāṇḍavaḥ |  
yāto kṛṣṇo cakārātha so 'bhīṣekaṁ parīkṣite" || (111)

Thus according to the Viṣṇu and other Purāṇas, the Saptarṣis were in Maghā at the start of the Kali Yuga: which was also the time of Yudhiṣṭhira and of the Mahābhārata war. It will be demonstrated below that the time accepted for such a period by the early Purāṇic texts is around 2448 B.C. - in other words, the period as stated by Varāhamihira, and not the period of 3102 B.C. elsewhere stated to represent both the start of the Kali Yuga and also the time of the Mahābhārata war. In this respect, Varāhamihira and the later astronomers may be said to attempt to bridge two traditions: by accepting both the period of 2448 B.C. for the Mahābhārata war, and also the period of 3102 B.C. for the start of the Kali Yuga. Yet it is evident that there are two originally quite separate and distinct systems of dating being referred to. That used by Varāhamihira may first be examined in detail - ignoring for the moment his attempt to harmonise this system with the Kali Yuga date of 3102 B.C. - as based upon the statement that the Saptarṣis were in Maghā at the start of the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira in 2448 B.C.

It is possible to construct a reasonably precise chronology for events in and around this period, on the basis of references in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts: and individual events in this reconstructed chronology will be referred to below in order to

illustrate the acceptance by Purāṇic writers in particular of this particular chronological scheme. It may be noted that this chronology reflects the views of the Epic and early Purāṇic writers; and that it is a fictive rather than objectively valid chronology.

The Epic and early Purāṇic texts agree in terming Parīkṣit the son of Abhimanyu and grandson of Arjuna: Arjuna being the brother of Yudhiṣṭhira, and Parīkṣit being the successor of Yudhiṣṭhira to the throne of Hastināpura. Several passages in the Mahābhārata relate that the death of Kṛṣṇa, abdication of Yudhiṣṭhira and accession of Parīkṣit occurred in the 36th year after the Mahābhārata war:

"satṭriṃśe tv aṭha saṃgrāpte varṣe keuravanandanah |  
dadarśa viparītāni nimitṭāni yudhiṣṭhirah" || (112)

"satṭriṃśe 'tḥa tato varṣe vṛṣṇīnām anayo mahān |  
anyonyam musalais te tu nijagmuh kēlacoditāh" || (113)

"vimṛśam eva kalam tam paricintya janārdanah |  
meno prāptam sa satṭriṃśam varṣam vai keśisūdanah" || (114)

It may be noted that the sight of viparītāni nimitṭāni referred to in the first of these passages is mentioned also in the passage cited earlier from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa - where it additionally heralds the start of the Kali Yuga. Given the above-noted date of 2440 B.C. for the Mahābhārata war, then the death of Kṛṣṇa, abdication of Yudhiṣṭhira and accession of Parīkṣit - as also the start of the Kali Yuga - may accordingly be placed some 35 years later, namely in 2414 B.C. Both the death of Abhimanyu and the birth of his son Parīkṣit are said to have occurred during the course of the Mahābhārata war: thus in the case of the latter it is related that Aśvatthāman slew Parīkṣit while he was still in his mother's womb, but that Parīkṣit was subsequently revived by Kṛṣṇa.<sup>(115)</sup> Thus according to

(112) Mahābhārata 16.1.1.

(113) Mahābhārata 16.2.2.

(114) Mahābhārata 16.3.18.

(115) Mahābhārata 10.16.1ff : death of Abhimanyu in Drona Parva.

this chronology, both the birth of Parīksit and the death of Abhimanyu may be placed in 2449 B.C. At his accession, therefore, Parīksit was thought to be 35 years old. The death of Parīksit is said to have occurred as the result of a snake-bite; and in this connection the Rsi Kāśyapa is said to have sought to cure Parīksit, and to have been dissuaded from doing so by the Nāga Takṣaka.<sup>(116)</sup> Upon the death of Parīksit, his son Janamejaya Parīksita is said to have succeeded to the throne while he was still a child:

"nṛpaṃ śiṣuṃ tasya sutaṃ pracakṛire sametya sarve puravāsino janāḥ |  
nṛpaṃ yam āhuḥ tam amitraghātinaṃ kurupravīraṃ janamejayaṃ janāḥ ||  
sa bāla evāryamatir nṛpottamaḥ sahaiva teir mantripurohitaḥ tadā" | (117)

Thus according to this chronology, the death of Parīksit and accession of Janamejaya - to which reference will subsequently be made - may be placed close to c.2400 B.C.: when Parīksit would have been 48 years old, and Janamejaya perhaps ten or so. Such a date for the accession of Janamejaya would also agree with a further passage which speaks of the Brahmins at the court of Janamejaya as having witnessed the Mahābhārata war with their own eyes:

"kurūṇāṃ pāṇḍavāṇāṃ ca bhavān pratyakṣadarśivān |  
teṣāṃ caritaṃ icchāmi kathyamānaṃ tvayā dvija" || (118)

Janamejaya's request to hear of that war is followed by the recitation of the entire Mahābhārata epic by those Brahmins.

Referring again to the date of the Mahābhārata war in 2449 B.C., then according to this chronology the exile of the Pāṇḍavas will have occurred some 13 years prior to this date, namely in 2462 B.C. Since Abhimanyu is said to have been born prior to the exile and to have fathered Parīksit in 2449 B.C., his birth may be ascribed to approximately 2470 B.C.: while the birth of his father Arjuna may be ascribed to approximately 2490 B.C. Hence, since Arjuna is said to be the third of the sons of Pandu and Yudhiṣṭhira the first, then

(116) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.3.188-189: 1.37.1-1.39.20: 1.46.14-22.

(117) Mahābhārata 1.40.6-7.

(118) Mahābhārata 1.54.18.

the birth of Yudhiṣṭhira may according to this chronology be assigned to approximately 2492 B.C. On this basis, Yudhiṣṭhira would have been born in c. 2492 B.C.: he would have been 30 years old at the time of the exile in 2462 B.C.: he would have been 53 years old at the time of the Mahābhārata war in 2449 B.C., and 54 years old when he acceded to the throne of Hastināpura in 2448 B.C.: and he would have been 78 years old when he abdicated the throne in favour of Parīkṣit in 2414 B.C. Such an approximate chronology - as suggested by the Epic and early Purāṇic texts and by the chronological statement of Varāhamihira - would thus appear to provide reasonable periods of time in respect of the lengths of reign and the ages of the rulers concerned. It would also place the start of the Kali Yuga in 2414 B.C., in the 36th year after the Mahābhārata war of 2449 B.C.

As has been noted, according to this chronological scheme the Saptarṣis were thought to have been in Maghā during at least part of this period: namely in 2448 B.C., when Yudhiṣṭhira was thought to have acceded to the throne of Hastināpura. Since the Saptarṣis are said to remain for 100 years in each Nakṣatra, then their period of stay in Maghā would accordingly have spanned a considerable part of the period just discussed. The exact chronology of the Saptarṣi Yuga may in fact be accurately ascertained to within a single year in the case of the later usages of this system.

Kalhana states in the Rājatarāṅginī that he writes in the year 24 Laukika or 1070 Śaka:

"laukike 'bde caturviṃśe śakakālasya sāmpratam |  
saptatyā 'bhyadhikam yātam sahasram parivatsarāḥ" || (119)

He similarly states that he completed the work in the year 25 Laukika or 1071 Śaka. (120) Given that the year 24 Laukika corresponds to the year 1070 Śaka, then the first year of the Laukika will accordingly

(119) Rājatarāṅginī 1.52.

(120) Rājatarāṅginī 8.3404.

correspond to the year 1047 Śaka, or to the year A.D. 1125. Hence, since the Laukika or Saptarṣi Yuga is a centennial cycle - the Saptarṣis remaining for 100 years in each Nakṣatra - it therefore follows that on this basis the first year of each Saptarṣi cycle in which the Saptarṣis enter a different Nakṣatra will correspond to the year 25 of each Christian century A.D.

Kalhana first makes use of the Laukika era from the fourth book of the Rājatarāṅginī onwards: the first reference being to the effect that the brothers-in-law of Lalitāpīḍa ruled unrestrained from the year 89 Laukika to the year 26 Laukika.<sup>(121)</sup> By totalling the lengths of reign for each of the kings of Kashmir between the time of Lalitāpīḍa and the time of Kalhana's writing in the year 1070-1071 Śaka, it is clear that the above-mentioned dates must fall within the 9th century A.D. At this point it may be noted that an inscription in the temple of Baijnāth in the district of Mandi records the twin dates of 89 Laukika and 735 Śaka, as also the twin dates of 80 Laukika and 725 Śaka.<sup>(122)</sup> In both cases the year 1 Laukika will be equivalent to the year 647 Śaka, or to the year A.D. 725. Similarly, Kalhana's date of 89 Laukika will accordingly refer to the Laukika cycle of A.D. 725-825, thus denoting the year A.D. 813: while his date of 26 Laukika will refer to the following Laukika cycle of A.D. 825-925, thus denoting the year A.D. 850.

Albīrūnī also gives a detailed account of how to compute the Saptarṣi Yuga. Taking as an example the date of the fall of Somnāth - which occurred in January of A.D. 1026 - he says that he has seen Indians write down the figures 242, 606 and 99, which they add together to give the Śaka year of 947. Albīrūnī suggests that the figure 242 shows the number of Śaka years which preceded the period when the Indians first started to use this cycle: while the figure 606 shows the number of complete centennial cycles of 101 years each, and the figure 99 shows the number of years elapsed of the current

(121) Rājatarāṅginī 4.703.

(122) cf. Cunningham - Book of Indian Eras, p.6.

Saptarṣi cycle.<sup>(123)</sup> However, while Albīrūnī suggests that the figure 606 represents the number of 6 centennial cycles of 101 years each, it must be noted in opposition to such an interpretation that all of the Indian literary sources are unanimous in stating that each cycle of the Saptarṣis is of only 100 years duration. In disagreeing also with this interpretation of Albīrūnī, Cunningham has plausibly suggested<sup>(124)</sup> that the figure 6 in the above computation should be taken to denote the number of years which had elapsed between the establishment of the Gupta era in A.D. 319-320 - some 242 years after the start of the Śaka era in A.D. 78 - and the commencement of the new Saptarṣi cycle in A.D. 325: to which figure is added the total of 6 complete cycles elapsed, to A.D. 925, plus 99 years of the current cycle elapsed: and since the 99th year is said to have already elapsed, therefore the cycle must be in its 100th year, namely in A.D. 1025-1026.

It has been demonstrated by Bühler, Cunningham and others that the same reckoning was followed also in Kashmir in the 19th century A.D., whereby the start of each centennial cycle of the Saptarṣis was considered to correspond to the year 25 of each Christian century A.D. Bühler also demonstrated that the Kashmiri Brahmins of the 19th century A.D. reckoned that the Laukika era had commenced in the year 3076-3075 B.C., namely some 25 years after the start of the Kali Yuga which they placed in 3102-3101 B.C. In this respect Bühler cited a verse - whose source he could not ascertain - which was related to him by a Kashmiri Brahmin:

"kaler gataih sāyakanetravarṣaiḥ saptarṣivaryās tridivam prayātāḥ |  
loke hi samvatsarapatṭrikāyām saptarṣimānam pravadanti santāḥ" || (125)

The "arrows and eyes" in the above śloka are used in the Kashmiri reckoning to denote the numeral 25. Cunningham independently obtained

(123) Albīrūnī - India, ch.49 : trans. E. Sachau, vol.2 pp.9-10.

(124) Cunningham - Book of Indian Eras, p.16.

(125) G. Bühler - A Detailed Report of a Tour in search of Sanskrit Manuscripts, pp.59-60.

similar information through his enquiries in Kashmir.<sup>(126)</sup> The arguments put forward by Bühler and Cunningham are sufficient to establish that the traditional chronological reckoning of the Saptarsi Yuga used in Kashmir in the 19th century A.D. equated the commencement of each centennial cycle of the Saptarsi Yuga with the month of Caitra or March-April in the year 25 of each Christian century A.D. It may similarly be noted that the Brahmins of Kashmir in the 19th century A.D. reckoned the start of the Saptarsi Yuga from the date 3075 B.C. Such a commencing date would seem likely to be due in part to the more general reckoning of dates from the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. It does not necessarily follow from such 19th century accounts that the same date was regarded as denoting the commencement of the Saptarsi Yuga in earlier times: and it must indeed be noted that such a date is not recorded by either Kalhana or Albīrūnī, nor is it given in the early Purāṇic texts or in the works of the astronomers.

On the basis of all the above passages and references, it may be inferred that the initial year of each centennial cycle of the Saptarsi Yuga was considered in all of the above contexts to correspond to the year 25 of each Christian century A.D.: and thus to the year 76 of each Christian century B.C.<sup>(127)</sup>

Referring once again to the statement of Varāhamihira that the Saptarsis were in Maghā when Yudhisthira was ruling in 2448 B.C., it may accordingly be inferred that the Saptarsis were thought on this basis to have been in Maghā during the period 2476-2376 B.C. This conclusion may now be set out in tabulated form: giving the initial year according to the Christian calendar for each centennial cycle of the Saptarsi Yuga through each of the Nakṣatras in turn. Two further points must first be noted. The first of these is that,

(126) Cunningham - Book of Indian Eras, pp.6-15.

(127) It is again to be noted that a margin of 1 year must be allowed for in such calculations, due to the commencement of such cycles during March-April of the Christian calendar: cf. note 102.



as has already been indicated, this version of the Saptarsi Yuga assumes that there is a total of 27 rather than 28 Nakṣatras:

"saptaviṃśatiparyante kṛtsne nakṣatramandale |  
saptarsayas tu tiṣṭhanti paryāyena śatam śatam" || (128)

The second point concerns the commencement of the complete cycles of the Saptarsis through the Nakṣatras. It is to be noted that the Nakṣatra system as it is presented throughout the Vedic Saṃhitās, the Brāhmaṇas and the Sūtras invariably commences with Kṛttikā: and Maghā is thus the 8th of the 27 Nakṣatras.<sup>(129)</sup> In his account of the Saptarsi Yuga, Cunningham considered each complete cycle of the Saptarsis through the Nakṣatras as commencing with Āśvinī. Yet the commencement of the Nakṣatra lists with Āśvinī first occurs only in the Sūrya Siddhānta,<sup>(130)</sup> and was not fully accepted until much later times: and indeed Varāhamihira himself variously lists the Nakṣatras as commencing with either Kṛttikā or Āśvinī,<sup>(131)</sup> thereby suggesting that the change in commencement from Kṛttikā to Āśvinī had still not been fully effected or accepted in the mid-6th century A.D. In the opinions of Macdonell, Keith, Colebrooke, Weber and others,<sup>(132)</sup> the commencement of the Nakṣatra lists with Āśvinī was not adopted until around the 6th century A.D.: and it was adopted at around that date because the vernal equinox then coincided with the star  $\gamma$  Piscium being on the borders of Revatī and Āśvinī. On this basis, therefore, it may be suggested that any reconstruction of the Saptarsi Yuga which is intended to trace the system to a period earlier than around the 6th century A.D. should accordingly

(128) e.g. Brahṃanda Purāṇa 2.3.74.231-235 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.413-417 : Matsya Purāṇa 273.40-41 : cf. Pañcasiddhāntikā chs.2, 12 etc.: Brhatsaṃhitā chs.14, 15 etc.

(129) e.g. Taittirīya Saṃhitā 4.4.10.1-3 : Maitrāyaṇī Saṃhitā 2.13.20 : Kāthaka Saṃhitā 39.13 : Atharvaveda 19.7.1ff : Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa 1.5.1: 3.1.4.1ff: etc.

(130) e.g. Sūrya Siddhānta 8.9ff.

(131) e.g. Brhat-jātaka 16.1ff (Āśvinī): Brhatsaṃhitā 14.1ff: 15.1ff (Kṛttikā) : cf. G.R. Kaye - Hindu Astronomy.

(132) cf. Macdonell-Keith - Vedic Index vol.1 p.421 : H.T. Colebrooke - Miscellaneous Essays vol.2 pp.231ff : A. Weber - Indische Studien vol.10 p.234.

not commence the list of Nakṣatras with Aśvinī: and since all previous lists of the Nakṣatras in the Vedic texts commence with Kṛttikā, it would seem logical that any such reconstructed form of the Saptarṣi Yuga should commence each complete cycle with Kṛttikā. The accounts of the Saptarṣi Yuga in the early Purāṇic texts may be ascribed to a period almost certainly earlier than the 6th century A.D. (see Introduction, and below): and the complete cycles may accordingly be deemed to commence with Kṛttikā in the system as used in these texts. The accounts of the Saptarṣi Yuga in the works of Varāhamihira fall within the 6th century A.D.: and as noted, in different contexts Varāhamihira lists the Nakṣatras as commencing with either Kṛttikā or Aśvinī. However, since he claims to be following the system of the Saptarṣi Yuga laid down by his predecessor Vṛddha Garga (kathaviṣṣye vṛddhagargamatāt) before his time - and hence before the 6th century A.D. - it may be deemed at this stage that the version of the Saptarṣi Yuga used by Varāhamihira accordingly commenced each complete cycle of the Saptarṣis with Kṛttikā. It may at the same time be noted that any subsequent adjustments which may be made to this version of the system may affect the numbering or positioning of each of the Nakṣatras, and may necessitate the provision of a different starting-point of the complete Saptarṣi cycles with a different Nakṣatra: but they will not affect the period during which the Saptarṣis were thought to be in each Nakṣatra.

Following the Table detailing the period of the Saptarṣis in each Nakṣatra in the version of the Saptarṣi Yuga according to Varāhamihira, there is presented a further Table (Table 8) embodying the conclusions drawn earlier in this sub-section in respect of the relative chronology which is given in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts for events during the century in which the Saptarṣis were thought to have been in Maghā. The details and dates in both of these

---

Tables will be referred to during the course of the discussion in the following sub-sections.

---

Table 7 : The Period of the Saptarsi Yuga, according to Varāhamihira.

1.	Kṛttikā	8576 B.C.	5876 B.C.	3176 B.C.	476 B.C.
2.	Rohinī	8476	5776	3076	376
3.	Mṛgaśīras	8376	5676	2976	276
4.	Ārdra	8276	5576	2876	176
5.	Punarvasū	8176	5476	2776	76
6.	Puṣyā	8076	5376	2676	25 A.D.
7.	Āślēsā	7976	5276	2576	125
8.	Maghā	7876	5176	2476	225
9.	Pūrva-phalgunī	7776	5076	2376	325
10.	Uttara-phalgunī	7676	4976	2276	425
11.	Hastā	7576	4876	2176	525
12.	Citrā	7476	4776	2076	625
13.	Svātī	7376	4676	1976	725
14.	Viśākhā	7276	4576	1876	825
15.	Anurādhā	7176	4476	1776	925
16.	Jyēsthā	7076	4376	1676	1025
17.	Mūlā	6976	4276	1576	1125
18.	Pūrvāśādhā	6876	4176	1476	1225
19.	Uttarāśādhā	6776	4076	1376	1325
20.	Śravanā	6676	3976	1276	1425
21.	Dhanīsthā	6576	3876	1176	1525
22.	Śatabhiśā	6476	3776	1076	1625
23.	Pūrva-bhādrapadā	6376	3676	976	1725
24.	Uttara-bhādrapadā	6276	3576	876	1825
25.	Revatī	6176	3476	776	1925
26.	Āśvinī	6076	3376	676	2025
27.	Bharanī	5976	3276	576	2125

Table 8 : The Saptarsis in Maghā and associated events, according to the Epic and Purānic texts.

c. 2492 B.C.	Birth of Yudhiṣṭhira.
c. 2490	Birth of Arjuna.
2476	Saptarsis enter Maghā.
c. 2469	Birth of Abhimanyu.
2462	Exile of Pāṇḍavas.
2449	Mahābhārata War. Death of Abhimanyu. Birth of Parīkṣit.
2448	Accession of Yudhiṣṭhira.
2414	Death of Kṛṣṇa. Abdication of Yudhiṣṭhira. Accession of Parīkṣit. Start of the Kali Yuga.
c. 2400	Death of Parīkṣit. Accession of Janamejaya Pārīkṣita.
2376	Saptarsis leave Maghā.

(c) The Saptarsi Yuga according to the Early Purāṇic Texts.

The accounts of the Saptarsi Yuga as given in each of the early Purāṇic texts may next be examined in detail. In the following analysis, the text as given in the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa<sup>(133)</sup> will be quoted: minor variants in the Vāyu<sup>(134)</sup> and Matsya<sup>(135)</sup> Purāṇas will be noted in footnotes, while major variants - constituted especially by the text of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa<sup>(136)</sup> - will be quoted separately. Since the Bhāgavata Purāṇa<sup>(137)</sup> is the only other Mahāpurāṇa which contains a detailed account of this topic, reference will also be made where relevant or useful to the text of this work, which in general closely follows the Viṣṇu Purāṇa in its account of the Saptarsi Yuga. The accounts in these various texts are given in five main ślokas: each of which may be examined separately.

- i. "mahānandābhisekāt tu<sup>(138)</sup> janma yāvat parīkṣitah<sup>(139)</sup> |  
etad<sup>(140)</sup> varṣasahasraṁ tu jñeyam pañcāśaduttaram" ||

The śloka may be translated as: "From the anointing of Mahānanda to the birth of Parīkṣit: this (period) is to be known as (consisting of) 1050 years".

Taking the birth of Parīkṣit as having occurred in 2449 B.C. - as demonstrated in the last sub-section - this would give a date of 1399 B.C. for the accession of Nanda. It may be seen from Table 7 that the Saptarsis would then have been "in" the Nakṣatra Pūrvāṣādhā: and this is confirmed by a variant passage in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa:

---

(133) Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa 2.3.74.227-236.

(134) Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.409-418.

(135) Matsya Purāṇa 273.30-45.

(136) Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.24.32-40.

(137) Bhāgavata Purāṇa 12.2.26-33.

(138) Vāyu "mahādevābh-" : Matsya "mahāpadmābh-".

(139) Matsya "yāvaj janma parīkṣitah".

(140) Matsya "evam".

"prayāsyanti yadā caite pūrvāśādhā maharṣayah |  
tadā nandāt prabhṛty eṣa kalir vṛddhiṁ gamiṣyati" ||

In other words, the Kali Yuga will be at its nadir from the time of Nanda onwards, which will be when the Saptarṣis will be in the Nakṣatra Pūrvāśādhā. The Viṣṇu Purāṇa also gives a further variant sloka which differs significantly from those in the other Purāṇas:

"yāvat parīkṣito janma yāvan nandābhiṣecanam |  
etaḥ varṣasahasraṁ tu jñeyaṁ pañcadaśottaram" ||

The information is much the same as in the other Purāṇic passages; but the interval between the birth of Parīkṣit and the consecration of Nanda is here stated to be 1015 years, rather than 1050 years. The same reckoning is given also in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. According to this chronology, therefore, the accession of Nanda is to be placed in 1434 B.C. - namely some 1015 years after the birth of Parīkṣit in 2449 B.C.

The second main śloka is as follows:

ii. "pramāṇam vai tathā vaktum<sup>(141)</sup> mahāpadmottaram<sup>(142)</sup> ca yat |  
antaram ca śatāny aṣṭau<sup>(143)</sup> satṭriṁśac ca samāḥ smṛtāḥ<sup>(144)</sup>" ||

The Matsya Purāṇa differs markedly in its account of the first part of this śloka:

"paulomās tu tathāndhrās tu mahāpadmāntare punaḥ" |

The first of these versions may be rendered as: "The measure of the interval of Mahāpadma (Nanda) is said to be 836 years"; and the second: "The interval from Mahāpadma to Pauloma Andhra is 836 years". In both versions the intended meaning would appear to be that an interval of 836 years elapsed after the time of Mahāpadma Nanda; and the Matsya Purāṇa proposes that such a period elapsed between

(141) Vāyu "coktam".

(142) Vāyu "mahāpadmāntaram".

(143) Vāyu "tāc chatāny-"; Matsya "anantaram" and omit "ca".

(144) Matsya "satṭriṁśat tu samāś tathā".

Nanda and Pauloma Andhra. Given the date of Nanda in either 1399 B.C. or 1424 B.C. -- according to the first main śloka -- then an interval of 836 years after Nanda would give a date of either 563 B.C. or 598 B.C.: when the Saptarṣis would be in either Bharanī or Aśvinī respectively. According to the individual chronologies given for each dynasty in the Purāṇic texts, a period of 836 years would be consistent with the sum of the years for each of the dynasties from the Nandas through the Mauryas, Śuṅgas and Kanvas to the end of the Andhras. Yet at the same time it is known with reasonable certainty that the Andhras ruled especially in the early centuries A.D.: and not in the 6th century B.C., as is implied in the Matsya passage. This must have been well-known also to the authors of these Purāṇic texts, writing at a period contemporary with or shortly after that of the Andhra dynasty; and the third main śloka would appear to attempt to clarify the situation:

iii. "tat kalāntaram bhāvyam andhrāntādyāḥ<sup>(145)</sup> prakīrtitaḥ |  
bhaviṣyais tatra saṁkhyātāḥ<sup>(146)</sup> purāṇajñaiḥ śrutarṣibhiḥ" ||

The Matsya Purāṇa again differs in its account of the first part of the śloka:

"tāvat kalāntaram bhāvyam andhrāntādaḥ parīkṣitaḥ" |

As Pargiter has noted in commenting on these passages, there would clearly seem to have been some corruption between these two versions: due partly perhaps to the fact that the meaning of the text is not immediately clear in either version. The first version might be interpreted as: "This same interval of time is to separate the beginning and end of the Andhras", or "The first and last (rulers) of the Andhras are said (to occupy) this same future period of time"; the second part of the śloka reading: "These have been reckoned by future Śrutarṣis learned in the Purāṇas". The second version might

(145) Vāyu "bhāvyā andhrāntā ye".

(146) Matsya "bhaviṣyo te prasaṁ-".



be interpreted as: "Such an interval of time is to come about, as for the beginning and end of the Andhras, so for Parīksit"; continuing: "Those in the future have been reckoned by Śrutarsis learned in the Purāṇas". Both versions would appear to imply that the same interval (antaram) as previously referred to is to separate the time previously stated from the time of the end of the Andhra dynasty. The interval referred to must be one of either 1050/1015 or 836 years: and since the term antaram has been used only in connection with the period of 836 years - in the śloka which immediately precedes this one - it would accordingly seem more likely that it is this period to which reference is here intended. Hence a further period of 836 years after the previously-given date of either 563 B.C. or 593 B.C. would give a date of either A.D. 273 or A.D. 238 for the end of the Andhra dynasty, according to this chronology.

It may be noted at this point that numismatic and inscriptional evidence would tend to favour the earlier of these two dates for the end of the Andhra dynasty: namely the date of A.D. 238 (as given in the reckonings of the Viṣṇu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas) rather than the date of A.D. 273 (as given in the reckonings of the Brahmāṇḍa, Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas); both dates being given for the end of the Andhra dynasty on the basis of the intervals separating the birth of Parīksit (2449 B.C.), the accession of Nanda (either 1434 B.C. or 1399 B.C.), and the end of the Andhra dynasty. The reason for the difference of 35 years between the two sets of texts - which has been seen to arise from the different versions given of the first main śloka - may be suggested to have come about due to the fact that the Viṣṇu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas are here following the Epic tradition previously quoted in the last sub-section that the Kali Yuga commenced in the 36th year after the Mahābhārata war: while the Brahmāṇḍa, Vāyu and Matsya Purāṇas are in effect confusing

the date of the commencement of the Kali Yuga with the date of the Mahābhārata war - during which occurred the birth of Parīkṣit, which is the event in question from which the intervals are being reckoned. In other words, the reading pañcāśad- in the latter group of texts already includes a period of 35 years: while such a period has been additionally added in the pañcadaśa- of the former group of texts. This accordingly gives rise to the variant reckonings with a difference of 35 years between the two groups of texts: while in their extant forms it is the reckoning given in the Viṣṇu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas which in this instance retains the correct mode of reckoning, thereby placing the end of the Andhra dynasty in A.D. 238. This reckoning will accordingly be adopted in the following discussion.

The fourth main śloka in these texts is as follows:

iv. "saptarsayas tadā prāptāḥ pitṛye parīkṣite śatam<sup>(147)</sup> |  
saptaviṃśaiḥ śatair bhavyā andhrāṇāṃ te 'nvayāḥ punaḥ<sup>(148)</sup>" ||

This śloka may be rendered as: "The Saptarsis then achieved 100 (years) in (the Nakṣatra) dedicated to the Pitṛs (i.e. in Maghā) in the time of (Janamejaya) Parīkṣita: they will again be linked in the future (to Maghā) (at the time) of the Andhras after 2700 years". Pargiter has again noted textual corruption in the case of this śloka: and by suggesting his own emended reading, he would seem to have in fact added to the confusion. Thus he suggests a reading for the first part of the śloka as:

"saptarsayas tadā puṣye pratīpe rājñi vai samam" |

and translates accordingly:<sup>(149)</sup> yet such a reading is found in

(147) Matsya "prāṃśu pradīptenāgninā samāḥ" : Vāyu "prāḥuh pratīpe rājñi vai".

(148) Matsya "saptaviṃśatibhavyāṇāṃ āndhrāṇāṃ tu yadā punaḥ".

(149) cf. F.E. Pargiter - The Purāṇa Text of the Dynasties of the Kali Age, pp.59 (text + note 46) and 75 (translation).

none of the texts, and cannot be said to entirely resolve the obscurity of the textual variants in any conclusive - or necessarily persuasive or meaningful - manner. Following again the version in the *Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*, this would imply that while the Saptarṣis completed their stay in Maghā during the time of (Janamejaya) Pārīksita, they will again be in Maghā at the end of the Andhra dynasty. The information in the second part of the śloka is given also in the *Vāyu Purāṇa*: while that in the first part of the śloka is presented in a different form in the *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*:

"te tu pārīksitam kāle maghāsv āsan dvijottama" |

Thus the period separating the time of Pārīksit from that of the end of the Andhra dynasty is deemed to constitute a complete cycle of the Saptarṣis, or 2700 years. At this point reference may again be made to Table 7: and it will be seen that the Saptarṣis were thus thought to have been in Maghā from 2476 B.C. to 2376 B.C., leaving Maghā during the reign of Janamejaya Pārīksita (as demonstrated in the last sub-section and in Table 8), and again entering Maghā some 2700 years later in A.D. 225 - leaving Maghā subsequently in A.D. 325. Thus the statements in preceding ślokas that the end of the Andhra dynasty should be placed in A.D. 238 (= 1015 + 836 + 836 years after the birth of Pārīksit in 2449 B.C.) are fully consistent with the statement that the Saptarṣis would again be in Maghā at the end of the Andhra dynasty: since the date of A.D. 238 clearly falls within the period of A.D. 225-325 when the Saptarṣis were thought to be once again in Maghā.

The fifth main śloka in these texts would appear to confirm in some measure the validity of these interpretations:

v. "saptarsayo hy athāyuktāḥ<sup>(150)</sup> kāle parīkṣite<sup>(151)</sup> śatam |  
andhrāṁśe sacaturvimśe<sup>(152)</sup> bhaviṣyanti śatam samāḥ<sup>(153)</sup>" ||

This śloka may be rendered: "The Saptarsis were thus joined (to Maghā) in the time of Parīkṣit for 100 years: they will be the same (i.e. in the same position, namely joined to Maghā) for 100 years in (the time of) the 24th part (i.e. ruler) of the Andhras". Pargiter has suggested that the second part of this śloka should be emended to read "andhrānte—": and interprets the śloka as meaning: "It (the Saptarsis) will be in the 24th constellation 100 years at the termination of the Andhras"<sup>(154)</sup> According to the previously-examined system of chronology, such an interpretation is however untenable. In the first place, all the texts agree in stating that the Saptarsis will be in Maghā — the 8th Nakṣatra — at the end of the Andhra dynasty, namely some 2700 years after the time of Parīkṣit: and in the second place, it may be seen from Table 7 that the Saptarsis would be in the 24th Nakṣatra (Uttara Bhādrapadā) in 876 B.C., and in the 24th Nakṣatra after Maghā (Punarvasū) in 76 B.C. Neither of these dates or periods would agree with the date of A.D. 238 which is given in the preceding ślokas for the end of the Andhra dynasty: nor would they agree with the approximate period for the end of that dynasty which is given on the basis of numismatic and inscriptional evidence. Moreover, the expression samāḥ bhaviṣyanti following athāyuktāḥ/maghāyuktāḥ would clearly appear to imply that the Saptarsis will again be in the same position, namely joined to Maghā, at the end of the Andhra dynasty — rather than in the 24th Nakṣatra; while the mention in the fourth main śloka that the Saptarsis will again be in Maghā at the end of the Andhras after a further 2700 years from the time of

(150) Vāyu "maghāyuktāḥ", also Matsya.

(151) Matsya "parīkṣite".

(152) Matsya "brāhmaṇās tu caturvimśe".

(153) Vāyu "mate mama".

(154) Pargiter — Dynasties of the Kali Age, pp.61 and 75.

Parīksit (i.e. after one complete cycle) would again appear to convey the same implication.

If the śloka be interpreted accordingly as meaning that the Saptarsis would again be in Maghā in the time of the 24th ruler of the Andhras, then it is next necessary to enquire as to the identity of the 24th ruler of the Andhras. The Brahmānda, Vāyu and Viṣṇu Purāṇas all state that there was a total of 30 Andhra kings: while the Matsya Purāṇa states their total number to be 19. In the actual enumeration of the individual rulers, however, the Brahmānda Purāṇa lists 16 kings: the Vāyu Purāṇa lists 17 kings: the Viṣṇu Purāṇa lists 24 kings: and the Matsya Purāṇa lists 30 kings.<sup>(155)</sup> It has been seen that all these texts agree in stating that the end of the Andhra dynasty coincided with the Saptarsis being in Maghā. Accordingly, since the texts have been referring to the end of the Andhra dynasty in preceding ślokas, it may be suggested that the term "the 24th ruler of the Andhras" is similarly intended in this context to designate the last ruler of the Andhra dynasty. This inference is supported by the fact that the Viṣṇu Purāṇa lists 24 rulers of the Andhra dynasty: also by the fact that the Matsya Purāṇa - which is the only text to actually list more than 24 rulers - reads brāhmaṇas tu caturvimśe bhaviṣyanti in place of andhrāṃśe sacaturvimśe bhaviṣyanti: thereby indicating that, since it has listed more than 24 Andhra rulers in other contexts, it does not accept the figure 24 as referring to the last ruler of the Andhra dynasty. It would thus appear that the information presented in this śloka is intended to convey the meaning that the Saptarsis will again be in Maghā in the time of the 24th ruler of the Andhras, which is also the time of the end of the Andhra dynasty.

The information which is presented in these five main ślokas may be summarised in the following form:

---

(155) Brahmānda Purāṇa 2.3.74.161-170 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.342-352 :  
Viṣṇu Purāṇa 4.24.12-13 : Matsya Purāṇa 273.1-17.

- i. The Saptar̥sis were in Maghā in the time of Parīksit̥.
- ii. The Saptar̥sis left Maghā in the time of (Janamejaya) Pārīksitḁ.
- iii. The Saptar̥sis will again be in Maghā at the end of the Andhra dynasty, which will be 2700 years after the time of Parīksit̥.
- iv. The Saptar̥sis will be in Pūrvāsādhā in the time of Nanda.
- v. The interval between the birth of Parīksit̥ and the coronation of Nanda is 1015 years.
- vi. The interval between Nanda and the end of the Andhra dynasty is  $2 \times 836$  years, or 1672 years.
- vii. Hence the interval between the birth of Parīksit̥ and the end of the Andhra dynasty is  $1015 + 1672 = 2687$  years.

The further passage quoted from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa in the last subsection may similarly be seen to contain the following information:

- i. Yudhiṣṭhira was ruling before the start of the Kali Yuga.
- ii. When Kṛṣṇa died, the Kali Yuga commenced.
- iii. When the Kali Yuga commenced, Yudhiṣṭhira renounced his throne and consecrated Parīksit̥.
- iv. The Saptar̥sis were still in Maghā when (Janamejaya) Pārīksitḁ was ruling.

All of the preceding statements may thus be seen to accord with the previously-outlined chronological system of the Saptar̥si Yuga, as reconstructed from the statement of Varāhamihira and as set out in Table 7.

If it were to be proposed that the Purāṇic writers accepted the date of 3102 B.C. for the start of the Kali Yuga, then it must similarly be held that they placed the times of Yudhiṣṭhira, Parīksit̥ and the Mahābhārata war before this date. Thus on this basis the

Mahābhārata war and the birth of Parīkṣit would be placed some 35 years earlier than this date, namely in 3137 B.C.: the consecration of Nanda would be placed in  $3137 - 1015 = 2122$  B.C.: and the end of the Andhra dynasty would be placed in  $2122 - 1672 = 450$  B.C. Similarly, by the further argument, the end of the Andhra dynasty must then be placed within the century some 2700 years after the period of 3176-3076 B.C., namely between 476 and 376 B.C. Such dates are thus some 650 years earlier than the known period of the end of the Andhra dynasty, close to which time these texts are usually held to have been composed: and they also contradict the statement of Varāhamihira that Yudhiṣṭhira was ruling 2526 years before the Śaka era, namely in 2448 B.C. - a statement which witnesses that such a scheme of chronology as has been followed in the above analysis was known in at least Gupta times, namely again at a period close to which these texts are usually held to have been composed and scarcely a century after the end of the Andhra dynasty which is itself mentioned in these texts.

It may accordingly be inferred from the above observations that the Purāṇic texts follow the same system of chronology of the Saptarṣi Yuga as that used by Varāhamihira. According to this system, the Saptarṣis are to be placed in Maghā from 2476 B.C. to 2376 B.C., and again from A.D. 225 to A.D. 325; similarly the Mahābhārata war and the birth of Parīkṣit are to be placed in 2449 B.C., and the start of the Kali Yuga in 2414 B.C.: the reign of Nanda in  $2449 - 1015 = 1434$  B.C.: and the end of the Andhra dynasty in  $1434 - 1672 =$  A.D. 238.

The accounts of the Saptarṣi Yuga in the early Purāṇic texts form the concluding section to the lists of Kings of the Kali Yuga. Since these accounts themselves speak of the end of the Andhra dynasty, which they place in A.D. 238, it may be concluded that the incorporation of the Saptarṣi Yuga within these texts occurred

---

at some time after A.D. 238. Moreover, since the lists of Kings in these texts fail to make any noteworthy mention of the Gupta dynasty - the Matsya Purāṇa for example completely omitting to make any mention at all of that dynasty - it would seem likely that these sections of the Purāṇic texts were composed at a period prior to or very shortly after the founding of the Gupta dynasty in A.D. 320 - or conversely that they were composed in a region well outside the main influence of the Gupta dynasty. The likelihood may therefore be expressed that the accounts of the Saptarṣi Yuga in the early Purāṇic texts were incorporated into those texts between approximately A.D. 250 and 350: the former of these dates being perhaps the more likely, in view of the extent to which these accounts are closely connected with the ending of the Andhra dynasty which is placed by these accounts in A.D. 238. It may accordingly be inferred that this system of chronology of the Saptarṣi Yuga is likely to have been known and in use by at least the end of the 2nd century A.D., prior to its incorporation within the Purāṇic texts.

---



(d) The Saptarsi Yuga according to Vrddha Garga.

Attention may now be turned to the date of 3102 B.C. which is alternatively proposed as being the date of the start of the Kali Yuga. As was noted in sub-section (b), the later astronomers such as Parāśara, Āryabhata and Varāhamihira all accept this date as designating the start of the Kali Yuga: while at the same time attempting to harmonise this date with the later dates of Yudhiṣṭhira and the Mahābhārata war - placed for example by Varāhamihira in 2449-2448 B.C. - by proposing a time-interval of approximately 650 years between the start of the Kali Yuga and the time of Yudhiṣṭhira and the Mahābhārata war. Such a scheme is clearly at variance with the Epic and Purāṇic traditions, both of which maintain that the Kali Yuga commenced after - rather than before - the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira, upon the death of Kṛṣṇa and with the accession of Parīkṣit, in the 36th year after the end of the Mahābhārata war.

It is thus evident that in the times of Parāśara, Āryabhata and Varāhamihira there were already two rival dates for the start of the Kali Yuga: one of which - namely the date of 2414 B.C. - had been adopted in the early Purāṇic texts, probably before the establishment of the Gupta dynasty in A.D. 320. It may also be seen that Varāhamihira and the other astronomers, while agreeing with the system adopted in the early Purāṇic texts that the Mahābhārata war and the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira belong to the years 2449-2448 B.C., nevertheless disagree with the Purāṇic equation of that period with the start of the Kali Yuga and accept instead the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. Thus, by accepting that the Saptarsis were in Maghā during the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira in 2448 B.C., Varāhamihira therefore disagrees with his predecessor Vrddha Garga - whom he claims to be following - who states that the Saptarsis were in Maghā at the start of the Kali Yuga (see sub-section (b)). For according to the system of chronology adopted by both Varāhamihira and the

early Purāṇic texts, the Saptar̥sis would have been in Kṛttikā at the date of 3102 B.C. which Varāhamihira and the later astronomers hold as being the date of the start of the Kali Yuga (see Table 7). It may accordingly be inferred that the system of chronology which the early Purāṇic texts reject - by placing the Mahābhārata war and the start of the Kali Yuga in 2449 B.C. and 2414 B.C. respectively - and which the later astronomers accept only in part - by accepting the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C., but nonetheless placing the Mahābhārata war in 2449 B.C. - placed the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C., placed the Mahābhārata war some 35 years earlier in 3137 B.C., and thus placed the Saptar̥sis in Maghā from 3176 B.C. to 3076 B.C. On the basis that Maghā is the 8th Nakṣatra according to the Nakṣatra lists of the Vedic Saṃhitās, the Brāhmaṇas and the Sūtras, it may be seen that according to this system the start of the complete cycle of the Saptar̥sis would have commenced in Kṛttikā some 700 years earlier than these dates, namely in 3876 B.C.

In order to examine the precise natures of - and the differences between - the two systems, the statements of Vṛddha Garga and of the Epic texts may at this stage be consulted once again. As was seen in section 3(b) of this Chapter, passages in several different contexts speak of the existence of two main separate orderings or listings of the Nakṣatras. On the one hand, the Nakṣatras are thought of as commencing with Kṛttikā - as in the lists in the Vedic texts. On the other hand, further contexts speak of them as commencing with either Śravisthā/Dhanisthā or Śronā/Śravaṇā. Vṛddha Garga, writing around the end of the 1st century B.C., observed that the list commencing with Kṛttikā was used in sacrifices, while another list commencing with Śravisthā was used in other reckonings:

"tesāṃ ca sarvesāṃ nakṣatrāṇāṃ karmasu kṛttikāḥ prathamam ācakṣate |  
śravisthā tu saṃkhyāyāḥ pūrvā lagnāṇāṃ" || (156)

Varāhamihira similarly indicates in several passages in his works that

Dhanisthā is to be considered as the first of the Nakṣatras:

"diggrahabhāgaiḥ saptabhir ūnam śaśibhaṁ dhanisthādyaṁ" || (157)

"śeṣam trinavakabhaktān nakṣatraṁ tad dhanisthādi" || (157a)

When - according to a passage in the Vana Parvan of the Mahābhārata - the Kṛttikās are allotted a place in the sky by Skanda, they are said to take the place formerly occupied by Abhijit, namely the place adjacent to Śravaṇā; (158) and in this same context it is said that Brahmā originally created the Nakṣatras as commencing with Dhanisthā:

"dhanisthādis tadā kālō brahmaṇā pariniraitaḥ" | (159)

A further passage in the Āśvamedhika Parvan of the Mahābhārata once again opines that the Nakṣatras commence with Śraviṣṭhā - although many manuscript recensions read Śravaṇā in place of Śraviṣṭhā:

"śraviṣṭhādīni rksāni ṛtavah śiśirādayaḥ" || (160)

The BORI Critical Edition of the Mahābhārata refers to 28 Manuscripts: 14 of these contain the reading śraviṣṭhā -, these being 4 Kashmiri, 1 Bengali, and all 9 Southern recensions; and 12 of these contain the reading śravaṇā -, these being 1 Śāradā, 4 Bengali, and 7 Devanāgarī Manuscripts. Of the remaining 2 Manuscripts, 1 Kashmiri contains the variant reading bhaviṣyā - : and 1 Devanāgarī contains the variant reading avisthā -. In addition to these 28 Manuscripts, the Commentary of Vādirāja (ex MSS from Madras) reads śraviṣṭhā - : while it may also be noted that in the cases of 1 Devanāgarī and 1 Kashmiri Manuscript, a later hand has added the reading aśvinyā - in the margin of the text. Thus there would appear to be good evidence in favour of both readings śraviṣṭhā and śravaṇā.

The Epic myth of Triśaṅku relates that Viśvāmitra created in the

(157) Pañcasiddhāntikā 12.3.

(157a) Brhājñātaka 26.15: cf. 26.16.

(158) e.g. Mahābhārata 3.219.1-11.

(159) Mahābhārata 3.219.10.

(160) Mahābhārata 14.44.2.

southern region a second set of Saptarṣis and Nakṣatras, the latter of which is said to have begun with Śravanā:

"srjan daksinamārgasthān saptarṣin aparān punah ||  
nakṣatramalān aparān asrjat krodhamūrchitah" | (161)

"ati nakṣatravamsāś ca kruddho nakṣatrasampadā |  
prati śravanapūrvāni nakṣatrāni sasarja yāh" || (162)

As was quoted in section 3(b), the Gods subsequently decree that the new set of Saptarṣis and Nakṣatras created by Viśvāmitra should remain as long as the worlds endure. (163)

It may accordingly be inferred from all of these references and passages that from at least the time of Vṛddha Garga around the end of the 1st century B.C. there were considered to be two main separate enumerations of the Nakṣatras: and that while one was deemed to be that commencing with Kṛttikā, the other was deemed to commence with either Śraviṣṭhā/Dhanīṣṭhā (the 22nd of the 28 Nakṣatras, or the 21st of the 27 Nakṣatras) or Śronā/Śravanā (the 21st of the 28 Nakṣatras, or the 20th of the 27 Nakṣatras).

The differing systems or versions of the Saptarṣi Yuga may accordingly be seen to correspond to the differing systems of enumeration of the Nakṣatras. It has been seen that one version of the Saptarṣi Yuga places the Saptarṣis in Maghā for the start of the Kali Yuga in 2414 B.C. -- namely during the period 2476-2376 B.C.: while the other version places them in Maghā for the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. -- namely during the period 3176-3076 B.C. Similarly one version of the Nakṣatra lists is deemed to commence with Kṛttikā, and the other with either Śraviṣṭhā/Dhanīṣṭhā or Śronā/Śravanā. Therefore the period of the Saptarṣis being in Kṛttikā in the one version of the Saptarṣi Yuga should on this basis correspond to the period of the Saptarṣis being in either Śraviṣṭhā/Dhanīṣṭhā or Śronā/Śravanā in the other version of the Saptarṣi Yuga.

(161) Rāmāyana 1.59.20-21.

(162) Mahābhārata 1.65.34.

(163) Rāmāyana 1.59.25-28.

Referring to Table 7, it will be observed that - according to the version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga followed by Varāhamihira and the early Purāṇic texts - the Saptar̥ṣis are in Kṛttikā in 5376 B.C., in 3176 B.C., and in 476 B.C.: they are in Śravisthā/Dhanisthā in 6576 B.C., in 3876 B.C., and in 1176 B.C.: and they are in Śronā/Śravanā in 6676 B.C., in 3976 B.C., and in 1276 B.C.

The version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga referred to by Vṛddha Garga - which places the Saptar̥ṣis in Maghā during the period 3176-3076 B.C. - thus opines that the Saptar̥ṣis are in Kṛttikā in 6576 B.C., in 3876 B.C., and in 1176 B.C.: that they are in Śravisthā/Dhanisthā in 4576 B.C., in 1876 B.C., and in A.D. 825: and that they are in Śronā/Śravanā in 4676 B.C., in 1976 B.C., and in A.D. 725.

It may thus be seen that there occurs an exact correspondence on this basis between Kṛttikā in the one version and Śravisthā in the other version: in the case of Kṛttikā in the version followed by Vṛddha Garga, and Śravisthā/Dhanisthā in the version followed by Varāhamihira and the early Purāṇic texts. This is moreover the only such correspondence to occur between the two versions. It may accordingly be concluded that the version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga in which the Nakṣatras are said to commence with Śravisthā is that which was adopted in practice by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts: as opposed to the version used by Vṛddha Garga, in which the Nakṣatras commenced with Kṛttikā.

It may next be asked whence arose the apparent confusion between the commencement of the "new" set of Nakṣatras with either Śravisthā/Dhanisthā or Śronā/Śravanā, corresponding to Kṛttikā in the "old" version of the system followed by Vṛddha Garga. It will be observed that, in both versions, the Saptar̥ṣis are in Śravanā during the century preceding that in which they are in Śravisthā: and they are thus in Śravanā in the version followed by Varāhamihira during the century preceding that in which they are in Kṛttikā in

the version followed by Vṛddha Garga. However, dates have been established for only one complete cycle of the Saptar̥sis: namely for that in which they are in Kṛttikā-Śravisthā in 3876 B.C., as based upon the dates during which they were in Maghā at the start of the Kali Yuga according to each of the two different versions. It may accordingly be suggested that the correspondence referred to in the passages cited earlier as between the Saptar̥sis being in Kṛttikā in the one version at the same time as they were in Śravanā - rather than Śravisthā - in the other version arises from the fact that there occurs a difference of 100 years, or one Nakṣatra, between the two versions during a complete cycle of the Saptar̥sis. In other words, one of the versions employs a total of 27 Nakṣatras, while the other version employs a total of 28 Nakṣatras.

It has already been seen in preceding sub-sections that the version of the Saptar̥si Yuga used by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts employs a total of 27 Nakṣatras - as is stated explicitly for example in the early Purāṇic texts:

"saptaviṃṣatiparyante kṛtsne nakṣatramandale |  
saptar̥sayas tu tiṣṭhanti paryāyena śatam śatam" || (164)

Similarly in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts it is invariably related that Soma/Candra gains as wives 27 - rather than 28 - of the daughters of Dakṣa, who are the Nakṣatras.<sup>(165)</sup> Therefore, since the version followed by Varāhamihira and the early Purāṇic texts employs a total of 27 Nakṣatras, it may be inferred that the version followed by Vṛddha Garga employs a total of 28 Nakṣatras, with the addition of Abhijit. Such a conclusion may be seen to be implied in the statement of Vṛddha Garga that the list of Nakṣatras commencing with Kṛttikā is that used in connection with sacrifices (karmasu). For the Nakṣatra lists of the Vedic Samhitās, the Brāhmaṇas and the

(164) e.g. Brahman̄ḍa Purāṇa 2.3.74.231 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.37.413 : Matsya Purāṇa 273.40 : cf. Br̥hat-saṃhitā chs. 14, 15 : etc.

(165) e.g. Mahābhārata 1.60.15-18: 1.70.7-10: 12.200.17-28: 12.329.46: Harivamśa 2.47 : Brahman̄ḍa Purāṇa 1.2.37.44 : Vāyu Purāṇa 2.40-42 : etc.

Sūtras - namely in the sacrificial literature - invariably commence with Kṛttikā, and generally employ a total of 28 Nakṣatras<sup>(166)</sup> - in common with the Chinese Sieou and Arabic Manāzil systems. Similarly Vṛddha Garga's use of the term Śravisthā (as it appears in the early Nakṣatra lists) rather than Dhanisthā (as it appears in the later Nakṣatra lists, and as is used by Varāhamihira) might be seen to imply that Vṛddha Garga is speaking with reference to the earlier or sacrificial lists of Nakṣatras.

It may also be noted that, of the later astronomers, Āryabhata continues to use in places all 28 of the Nakṣatras in his calculations, with the inclusion of Abhijit:<sup>(167)</sup> while, as has been noted above, Varāhamihira generally uses only 27. Moreover, Brahmagupta in one passage in the Brāhmasphuṭasiddhānta refers to the Jain tradition of there being 2 suns, 2 moons, and 54 Nakṣatras:

"bhāni catuspañcāśad dvau dvāv arkaindavau jinoktam yat" | (168)

Yet while Brahmagupta refers to a system of 54 (= 2 x 27) Nakṣatras, it is noteworthy that most Jain texts on cosmography refer to there being 56 (= 2 x 28) Nakṣatras in Jambudvīpa.<sup>(169)</sup> Thus it might be inferred that Brahmagupta - as also Varāhamihira - attempted to assert that the number of Nakṣatras was 27 - rather than 28, as had been held by most Vedic texts, and as may be suggested to have been held by the earlier astronomer Vṛddha Garga, just as it was held by the later astronomer Āryabhata whose ideas were themselves greatly criticised in many respects by Brahmagupta.<sup>(170)</sup>

(166) e.g. Maitrāyaṇī Saṃhitā 2.13.20 : Taittirīya Saṃhitā 3.1.1-2: 3.1.4.1ff : Ātharvaveda 19.7.1: 19.8.2 : Śākhāyana Grhya Sūtra 1.26; etc.

(167) e.g. Āryabhaṭīya 12.1-8.

(168) Brāhmasphuṭasiddhānta 11.3.

(169) e.g. Jīvābhigamasūtra 875ff : cf. W. Kirfel - Die Kosmographie der Inder, pp.270ff.

(170) e.g. Brāhmasphuṭasiddhānta ch.11.

On the basis that the version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga followed by Vṛddha Garga employs a total of 28 Nakṣatras, and places the Saptar̥ṣis in Maghā during the period 3176-3076 B.C. (namely for the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C.), then it may be seen that the complete cycle of the Saptar̥ṣis will commence with Kṛttikā in 3876 B.C.: while the preceding complete cycle will commence some 2800 years earlier, with the Saptar̥ṣis in Kṛttikā in 6676 B.C.: and the following complete cycle will commence with the Saptar̥ṣis in Kṛttikā in 1076 B.C. Thus the Saptar̥ṣis would have been in both Kṛttikā - according to the version followed by Vṛddha Garga - and also Śṛavanā - according to the version followed by Varāhamihira and the early Purāṇic texts - in 6676 B.C.: while at the start of the next complete cycle there would be a difference of 100 years between the two versions (with Kṛttikā in the one version corresponding to Śṛaviṣṭhā/Dhanīṣṭhā in the other version): and at the start of the next complete cycle after that there would be a difference of 200 years between the two versions.

Such a conclusion would imply that the date of 6676 B.C. was in some sense regarded as being a starting-point of Indian chronology. Confirmation of this inference is provided in part by Greek and Roman writers. Pliny for example makes the observation that:

"Colliguntur a Libero Patre ad Alexandrum Magnum reges eorum  
CLIV, annis sex millia CCCCLI adjiciunt et menses tres" (171)

"From Father Liber/Bacchus to Alexander the Great they reckon the number of their kings to have been 154, and they reckon (the time as) 6451 years and 3 months".

Since Alexander entered the Panjāb in 326 B.C. and left again at the end of the same year, Pliny's statement therefore indicates that the first king was thought to have reigned in India in  $6451\frac{1}{2} + 326 = 6777$  B.C. Solinus also makes a similar observation: stating that 6451 years and 3 months were reckoned from Father Bacchus - the first



who invaded India - to Alexander the Great, and that 153 kings were thought to have reigned in the intermediate period. (172)

Arrian also makes a comment on such chronology. The text is unfortunately somewhat corrupt at this point, but reads as follows:

" ἀπὸ μὲν δὴ Διονύσου βασιλέας ἡρίθμεον Ἴνδοι εἰς Σανδράκοττον τρεῖς  
καὶ πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατὸν ἕτεα δὲ δύο καὶ τεσσαράκοντα καὶ  
ἑξακισχίλια· ἐν δὲ τούτοις τρεῖς τὸ πᾶν εἰς ἐλευθερίην \* \* τὴν δὲ καὶ  
εἰς τριηκόσια· τὴν δὲ εἴκοσι τε ἐτέων καὶ ἑκατὸν· " (173)

"From Dionysos to Sandrocottos the Indians count 153 kings, and more than 6042 years: and during this time thrice for liberty \* \* this for 300 years, the other for 120 years".

Although the text is somewhat unclear as to which represents the total number of years to be counted between Dionysos (i.e. the first king) and Sandrocottos (i.e. Candragupta Maurya), it may be inferred that the first king was on this basis thought to have reigned in India between 6042 years before Sandrocottos on the one hand, and  $6042 + 300 + 120 = 6462$  years before Sandrocottos on the other hand. Taking again a date of 326 B.C. as the provisional date of Sandrocottos - corresponding to the date of Alexander as given in the works of Pliny and Solinus - the first king was thus thought to have reigned in India between 6368 B.C. and 6788 B.C. It may be noted that Arrian's date of 6788 B.C. is only some 11 years earlier than the date of 6777 B.C. given by Pliny and Solinus: and it may be suggested that, since Arrian reckons to Sandrocottos rather than to Alexander (as do Pliny and Solinus), it is possible that Arrian may here be preserving a tradition wherein Sandrocottos or Candragupta Maurya was thought to have come to the throne some 11 years after the campaigns of Alexander in 326 B.C. In this event, all three writers would thus be in agreement on the point that the first king was thought to have reigned in India in 6777 B.C. Since all three

---

(172) Compendium 52.5.

(173) Indica 9.9.

writers most probably derived their accounts from Megasthenes, who resided at the court of Candragupta Maurya, it would therefore seem possible that Arrian preserves in this instance a further tradition recorded by Megasthenes to the effect that Candragupta or Sandrocottos became an undisputed ruler in 326 - 11 = 315 B.C. The present state of preservation of the text of the Indica would unfortunately seem to make it impossible to draw any more definite conclusions on this point.

It will be observed that the date of 6777 B.C. which is given by these writers comes to within virtually a single century of the date of 6676 B.C. which is suggested in the Indian texts to represent a starting-point of Indian chronology, as based upon the system of the Saptarṣi Yuga. It may accordingly be inferred that such a date was indeed regarded - from at least the 4th century B.C. - as being a starting-point of Indian chronology: namely when the Saptarṣis were thought to have been in the Nakṣatra Kṛttikā according to one version of the system, and in the Nakṣatra Śravanā according to the other version of the system. Subsequently, when dates were more generally reckoned from the start of the Kali Yuga - which fell within the next complete cycle of the Saptarṣis - the starting-point of the system was accordingly transferred to the following complete cycle: namely when the Saptarṣis were thought to have been in the Nakṣatra Kṛttikā according to one version of the system, and in the Nakṣatra Śraviṣṭhā according to the other version of the system. This accordingly gave rise in turn to the different reckonings of the start of the Nakṣatras with either Kṛttikā, Śravanā, or Śraviṣṭhā.

The version of the Saptarṣi Yuga followed by Vṛddha Garga - which places the Saptarṣis in Maghā at the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. - may now be set out in tabulated form, giving the initial year of each Christian century during which the Saptarṣis were thought to enter each of the 28 Nakṣatras in turn. The order

---

of enumeration of each of the 27 Nakṣatras in the version of the Saptarṣi Yuga followed by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts may also be set out again in tabulated form, this time commencing with Śravanā - thus highlighting the correspondences and divergences between the two different versions of the Saptarṣi Yuga.

---

Table 9 : The Period of the Santarsi Yuga, according to Vrddha Garga.

1.	Kṛttikā	6676 B.C.	3876 B.C.	1076 B.C.
2.	Rohinī	6576	3776	976
3.	Mṛgaśīras	6476	3676	876
4.	Ārdra	6376	3576	776
5.	Punarvasū	6276	3476	676
6.	Puṣya	6176	3376	576
7.	Āśleṣa	6076	3276	476
8.	Maghā	5976	3176	376
9.	Pūrva-phalgunī	5876	3076	276
10.	Uttara-phalgunī	5776	2976	176
11.	Hastā	5676	2876	76
12.	Citrā	5576	2776	25 A.D.
13.	Svatī	5476	2676	125
14.	Viśākhā	5376	2576	225
15.	Anurādhā	5276	2476	325
16.	Jyesthā	5176	2376	425
17.	Mūlā	5076	2276	525
18.	Pūrvāṣādhā	4976	2176	625
19.	Uttarāṣādhā	4876	2076	725
20.	Abhijit	4776	1976	825
21.	Śravana	4676	1876	925
22.	Dhanisthā	4576	1776	1025
23.	Śatabhiṣā	4476	1676	1125
24.	Pūrva-bhādrapadā	4376	1576	1225
25.	Uttara-bhādrapadā	4276	1476	1325
26.	Revatī	4176	1376	1425
27.	Āśvinī	4076	1276	1525
28.	Bharanī	3976	1176	1625

Table 10 : The Period of the Santarsi Yuga, according to Varahamihira  
and the Purāṇic texts. (Commencing with Śravana).

1.	Śravana	6676 B.C.	3976 B.C.	1276 B.C.
2.	Dhanisthā	6576	3876	1176
3.	Śatabhiṣā	6476	3776	1076
4.	Pūrva-bhādrapadā	6376	3676	976
5.	Uttara-bhādrapadā	6276	3576	876
6.	Revatī	6176	3476	776
7.	Āśvinī	6076	3376	676
8.	Bharanī	5976	3276	576
9.	Kṛttikā	5876	3176	476
10.	Rohinī	5776	3076	376
11.	Mṛgaśīras	5676	2976	276
12.	Ārdra	5576	2876	176
13.	Punarvasū	5476	2776	76
14.	Puṣyā	5376	2676	25 A.D.
15.	Āśleṣā	5276	2576	125
16.	Maghā	5176	2476	225
17.	Pūrva-phalgunī	5076	2376	325
18.	Uttara-phalgunī	4976	2276	425
19.	Hastā	4876	2176	525
20.	Citrā	4776	2076	625
21.	Svātī	4676	1976	725
22.	Viśākhā	4576	1876	825
23.	Anurādhā	4476	1776	925
24.	Jyesthā	4376	1676	1025
25.	Mūlā	4276	1576	1125
26.	Pūrvāṣādhā	4176	1476	1225
27.	Uttarāṣādhā	4076	1376	1325

(e) Conclusion: The Two Versions of the Saptarsi Yuga.

i. On the basis of the observations and demonstrations in this section, it may be concluded that the system of chronology of the Saptarsi Yuga commencing with the Saptarsis in Kṛttikā in 6676 B.C. employed a total of 28 Nakṣatras, and placed the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. This version of the Saptarsi Yuga was in use in India from at least the 4th century B.C., as witnessed by the statements of Greek and Roman writers; and it was also the version used by Vṛddha Garga around the end of the 1st century B.C.

At a period prior to that of Vṛddha Garga, there had come into use a further version of the Saptarsi Yuga, which employed a total of 27 Nakṣatras, and which placed the start of the Kali Yuga in 2414 B.C. This version also used a method of computation wherein the start of the complete cycle of the Saptarsis in Kṛttikā in 6676 B.C. in the former version corresponded to the Saptarsis being in Śravana in this further version; while the start of the next complete Saptarsi cycle with Kṛttikā in 3876 B.C. in the former version corresponded to the Saptarsis being in Śravisthā/Dhanisthā in this further version. The further version is also that followed in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts.

Thereafter the later astronomers such as Varāhamihira, Parāśara and Āryabhata attempted to harmonise these two versions: by accepting the date of 3102 B.C. as the start of the Kali Yuga (as given in the former version) while yet in practice using the further version of the Saptarsi Yuga. They were consequently obliged to introduce a period of approximately 650 years as the interval separating the start of the Kali Yuga from the Mahābhārata war - a feature which is clearly at variance with both Epic and Purāṇic traditions. This latter compromise solution is that which is generally to be found in subsequent contexts: notably in the Rājatarāṅgī,

---

and also in such present-day usages of the system as that followed in Kashmir.

It may be observed that the former version is associated especially with the literature of the sacrificial cult -- namely primarily the Vedic texts -- as is indicated by Vrddha Garga's reference to karmasu or use in sacrifices, and as is indicated also by the employment in this version of a list of 28 Naksatras which frequently occurs also in the Vedic literature. The latter version is associated especially with the non-sacrificial literature, and with popular usages: as is indicated through its appearance in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts, and through its common designation as the Lok-Kāl or Laukika -- namely the popular or people's era.

The introduction of the latter version may be placed at a period prior to its recognition by Vrddha Garga around the end of the 1st century B.C.: while its full incorporation within the early Purāṇic texts may be placed -- as has been suggested especially in sub-section (c) -- most probably in the latter part of the 3rd century A.D.

ii. It is possible to draw certain further conclusions as to the origins of the latter version of the Saptarṣi Yuga. In general terms, it may be suggested that it owes its origin in some measure to a cultural context of a more southern geographical orientation than that usually associated with the sacrificial literature of the Vedic tradition, on the basis of the passage in the Bāla Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa which relates that Viśvāmitra created a second or new set of Saptarṣis and Naksatras in the southern region:

"srjan dakṣiṇamārgasthān saptarṣīn aparāṇ punah ||  
naksatramālaṁ aparāṁ asṛjat krodhamūrchitah" | (174)

It may be noted in this respect that the earliest epigraphic use of

the Saptarsi Yuga occurs in a recently-discovered Vākātaka inscription which comes from a region well to the south of the Vindhyas: namely from the village of Hisse-Borālā, some six miles to the south of Bassim/Washim - the former capital of the so-called Basim branch of the Vākātaka dynasty.<sup>(175)</sup> The inscription belongs to king Devasena, whose reign had previously been placed somewhat conjecturally by Altekar and others around A.D. 455-475:<sup>(176)</sup> and one of the dates given in the inscription is that of Śaka 380 or A.D. 458 - thereby constituting the earliest example known so far of the use of the Śaka era, and also tending to confirm the previously conjectural date of Devasena proposed by Altekar and others. The inscription also contains a reference to the Saptarsi Yuga: and since this has been a matter of considerable conjectural interpretation, reference may be made to the first line of the inscription which contains the system of dating. The text of the first line is damaged in two places, and two parts of it are consequently either difficult or impossible to read: but as best reconstructed,<sup>(177)</sup> it reads as follows:

"siddham || ( - - - )tasya vrittasya dhru 20 saptarsaya ūttarāsu  
(pha - - su) śakānām 380 vākātakānām śrī devāsanasya" ||

The content of the first lacuna is unknown: while that of the second lacuna may almost certainly be read as phalgunīsu - as has been suggested by Kolte, Gai and Sankaranarayanan. As has been seen in the examination in preceding sub-sections of the two versions of the Saptarsi Yuga, during the period A.D. 425-525 within which the inscription is dated (i.e. in A.D. 458), the Saptarsis would be in Jyesthā according to the version followed by Vṛddha Garga, but in Uttara Phalgunī according to the version followed by Varāhamihira and the early Purāṇic texts. It may accordingly be inferred that

(175) Documented by S. Gokhale - The Hisse-Borala Inscription of Devasena : in Ep.Ind. vol.37 part 1, pp.1ff.

(176) e.g. in Majumdar and Altekar - The Vākātaka-Gupta Age, p.121.

(177) Accounts of V.B. Kolte and of G.S. Gai & S. Sankaranarayanan in Ep.Ind. vol.37 part 1, pp.3-8: also cf. Dr. Mirashi Felicitation Volume, pp.372ff.



the inscription follows the same version of the Saptarṣi Yuga as that used by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts.

The meaning of the expression ( )ta.sya vrittasya in the inscription is unclear - due probably to the loss of the preceding words or syllables: and the next word dhru has been transliterated as vrā by Gokhale, has been read also as vrū or vri by Kolte, and has been read as the numeral 3000 by Gai and Sankaranarayanan. The sign for the numeral 20 may also be read as dhi.

In interpreting this line of the inscription, Kolte has taken the statement of Varāhamihira in the Brhatsamhitā (13.3-4) as indicating that the date when Yudhiṣṭhira was ruling in 2526 pre-Śaka indicates the first year wherein the Saptarṣis entered Maghā. However, the discussion during the course of this section - as also the researches of Cunningham and others - will have demonstrated that the Saptarṣis would have entered each Nakṣatra in the year 76 of each Christian century B.C., and in the year 25 of each Christian century A.D. Hence the resulting interpretation offered by Kolte - whereby he deems that the Saptarṣis would have spent six years in the Nakṣatra Uttara Phalgunī in A.D. 458 - would appear to be based upon an initial misconception. Further criticisms of Kolte's interpretation have been made by Gai and Sankaranarayanan. The alternative interpretation offered by these two writers would similarly appear to rest upon a misconception. By interpreting the third clear word in the inscription as the numeral 3000 - rather than as dhru - they attempt to harmonise the resulting date of 3020 with the date of Śaka 380 by suggesting that the statement of Varāhamihira relates to the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira being not in 2526 pre-Śaka A.D. 78, but rather in pre-Śaka-Śālivāhana - or in other words in 2526 pre-Vikrama 57 B.C. They also reinterpret the figures sad-dvika of Varāhamihira (13.3) as meaning  $6 \times 2$  rather than 26: and they would thus place the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira some 2512 years

---

before 57 B.C., namely in 2569 B.C. Thereafter, by incorporating santa (in saptarsava) in the inscription with the preceding numerals 3000 + 20, the conclusion is reached that 3027 years after the date of Yudhiṣṭhira in 2569 B.C. indicates the year A.D. 458 - which is also that stated in the inscription in the form Śaka 380. The attempted interpretation is an ingenious one: yet it contradicts the statements of Varāhamihira, Parāśara and Āryabhata - as also of Kalhana - that there occurred an interval of approximately 650 years between the commencement of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. and the times of the Mahābhārata war and the reign of Yudhiṣṭhira - the latter of which must therefore be placed, according to Varāhamihira and others, around 2448 B.C., rather than in 2569 B.C. as suggested by Gai and Sankaranarayanan. Hence this interpretation of the statement of Varāhamihira - thus also of the system of dating used in the inscription - cannot therefore be accepted as valid.

An alternative interpretation may be proposed. It may firstly be observed that neither of the figures 3020 or 20 - if indeed either or both is in fact intended to designate a numerical rather than a consonantal form in the inscription - would appear to harmonise satisfactorily with the period of the Saptarsi Yuga: the former since it would thus refer back to a date of  $3020 - 458 = 2562$  B.C., which would not appear to be a significant date: the latter since it would thus refer to the 20th year of the Saptarsis being in the Nakṣatra Uttara Phalgunī, namely to A.D. 445 - which is some 13 years prior to the date of the inscription in the year Śaka 380 or A.D. 458. It would be possible to suggest that the latter date of A.D. 445 might be intended to refer - together with the lacuna at the start of the line - to the commencement of the reign of Devasena. But it may also be suggested that - as occurs in a very large number of other inscriptions, and as is the case with the following figure 380 - the numerical forms 3020 or 20 are connected in some way with

what precedes them in the inscription - rather than with the statement concerning the Saptarsis being in Uttara Phalgunī, which follows them. On this basis it would be possible that the figure 20 refers - together with the missing first part of the inscription - to the 20th year of the reign of Devasena, or to some further type of information such as the day of the month. Thus the first line of the inscription might be divided into the following separate informational categories:

- a. siddham
- b. ( \_ \_ \_ )tasya vrittasya dhru 20
- c. saptarṣaya ūttarāsu phalgunīṣu
- d. śakanām 380
- e. vākātakanām śrī devasenasya

On this basis, therefore, the inscription will contain no reference to the precise year of the Saptarsi Yuga, but will merely state the Nakṣatra which the Saptarsis were thought to be occupying at that time.

In more general terms it may be observed that among the important features of the inscription are firstly that it is dated in the Śaka era - thereby affording the earliest example of the use of that era - and secondly that it affords evidence of the use of the second version of the Saptarsi Yuga - namely that used also by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts, as opposed to that used by Vrddha Garga. It may further be observed that this first inscriptional use of the Saptarsi Yuga comes from a region to the south of the Vindhya, between the Narmadā and Godāvarī rivers - namely from the region formerly ruled over by the Śātavāhanas or Andhras, the ending of whose dynasty has been seen to provide one of the main dates (namely A.D. 238) in the Purāṇic reckoning and account of the Saptarsi Yuga.

---

iii. The conclusion may now be proposed that the version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga which is used by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts - and which is used also in the Hisse-Borālā inscription of the Vākātaka king Devasena - was current during the 3rd to the 6th centuries A.D. especially in the region of Eastern Madhya Pradesh and Northern Maharashtra, to the south of the Vindhya. It may accordingly be suggested that the reference in the Bāla Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana to the creation of a "new" series of Saptar̥ṣis and Nakṣatras in the southern region relates in effect to this latter version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga, which was gradually coming to supersede the former version as used by Vṛddha Garga.

Reference may here be made to the conclusion reached at the end of Chapter 3: namely that the origin and development of the second main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group may itself be linked in some measure with social and cultural changes which were occurring during the late centuries B.C. and the early centuries A.D. in a region generally to the south of the Vindhya. The later version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga - which appears during that period and within that region - may on this basis be seen as a further illustration of such cultural changes and innovations which originated in the region to the south of the Vindhya, and which gradually came to influence and even supersede the traditions previously current in the Indo-Gangetic valleys: even as the version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga used by Vṛddha Garga was largely superseded by that used by Varāhamihira and in the early Purāṇic texts, and as the R̥ṣis of the second main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group came to replace in importance those of the first main list of the group. In this respect it may accordingly be inferred in more general terms that the region of the Western Deccan, to the south of the Vindhya and around the Narmadā and Godāvarī valleys, witnessed during especially the early centuries of the Christian era dynamic cultural changes under the Śātavāhana and

---

Vākātaka dynasties: changes which included not only the emergence of a "new" version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga - which in practice came to virtually replace that formerly used by Vṛddha Garga - but also the appearance of Ṛ̥ṣis who came to be incorporated within the Saptar̥ṣi group and to constitute the second main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group. In view of the importance of the Ṛ̥ṣis of the second main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts - as compared with the relatively minor importance of the Ṛ̥ṣis of the first main list of the Saptar̥ṣi group - and in view also of the "new" version of the Saptar̥ṣi Yuga which is presented in the early Purāṇic texts, it may be inferred that the formulation of the Epic and early Purāṇic traditions of the Saptar̥ṣis are to be associated especially with this cultural centre of the Western Deccan during especially the early centuries of the Christian era. The likelihood may moreover be expressed that many further Epic and Purāṇic traditions, which have no clear Vedic antecedents - as for example many topics in Śaiva mythology and tradition - may similarly owe their appearance in those texts to the growing influence of cultural milieus of a more southern orientation than that of the Indo-Gangetic valleys which may be said to constitute the epicentre or mainstream of Vedic culture: and in particular to the cultural milieus associated with the Śātavāhana and Vākātaka dynasties of the Western Deccan during the early centuries of the Christian era.

---

CONCLUSION.

The traditions of the Saptarsi group may be seen to have undergone a number of changes - and to have been expanded in a number of different directions - during the course of their development from the Vedic Saṁhitās to the early Purāṇic texts. One of the main periods of change is evident between the Vedic texts on the one hand and the Epic and early Purāṇic texts on the other hand: but other changes are also evident within the Vedic literature itself.

One of the earliest changes occurs in connection with the tradition which identifies the Saptarsis with the seven stars of Ursa Major: wherein it is said that the Ṛsis were in former times called Rksas or bears. This reference may be seen to indicate that early ideas concerning the constellation Ursa Major were derived primarily from an essentially Indo-European context: while other terms used of the Saptarsis - such as their designation as Ukṣanas or oxen - may again be taken as indications of essentially Indo-European ideas within the traditions of the Saptarsi group. The change which occurs within the Vedic Saṁhitās from the designation Rkṣa to the designation Ṛsi for this constellation may be said to have occurred primarily as a result both of the growing influence over the Indo-Aryan cult of essentially non-Indo-European ideas and concepts, and also of the increasingly important role which the Ṛsi was coming to occupy within Vedic culture - as is indicated primarily through his revelation of Rks or hymns of praise to the Gods, which came to be regarded as embodiments of divine knowledge.

A change which occurs between the various Vedic Saṁhitās concerns the type of status which is accorded to the Saptarsis. In the Rgveda they are regarded firstly as revealers of hymns, and secondly as those who come from heaven to earth in order to attend the sacrifices of men: while in the later Vedic Saṁhitās there appears

---

a tradition which is further to be found in the Brāhmaṇa and Upaniṣadic texts, wherein the Saptarṣis are seen as residing within men - being identified with the seven Prāṇas, the vital breaths or the sense-organs in the head. This indicates what may be termed the identification of macrocosm and microcosm within the traditions of the Saptarṣis - the identification of the Saptarṣis as stars in the sky with the Saptarṣis as residing within the head: and as such it may be paralleled to further similar examples of the identification of macrocosm and microcosm which occur within these texts.

The actual identities of the Ṛṣis who are included within the Saptarṣi group may be said to have been largely in the process of formulation in the Vedic Saṁhitās and the Brāhmaṇas: while in the subsequent texts, most notably in the Sūtras, these have been established in a more or less standardised form as Viśvāmitra, Jamadagni, Bharadvāja, Gotama, Atri, Vasistha, and Kaśyapa - together with Agastya as the eighth Ṛṣi. Such identities are more or less consistently adhered to throughout the later Vedic texts. However, further changes are already evident in certain of the Śrauta Sūtra texts: where, in the sections on Gotra and Pravara, the same group is called the Saptarṣis, but the seven who are regarded as founders of Gotras are now Bhṛgu, Aṅgiras, Atri, Viśvāmitra, Vasistha, Kaśyapa, and Agastya. These changes which occur in the context of the Gotra organisation may be seen as precursors of the change in identities which occurs in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts: wherein the identity of the Ṛṣis who are included in the Saptarṣi group is generally given as Marīci, Atri, Aṅgiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasistha - while Bhṛgu is additionally frequently appended to or included within the group. This change in identities may be examined at a number of different levels: firstly through the lists of Saptarṣis in the Gotra organisation in both the Śrauta Sūtra and

---

the early Purāṇic texts; secondly through further lists which are given of Ṛṣis under different headings - such as the Prajāpatis and the Mind-born Sons of Brahmā; thirdly through the family relationships which are said to exist between the various Ṛṣis - whereby it may be seen that a Ṛṣi who appears in the first main list of the Saptarṣi group but not in the second is invariably said to be the "son" of a Ṛṣi in the second main list; and fourthly through the geographical regions with which the various Ṛṣis are associated - whereby it may be seen that the Ṛṣis who appear in the first main list, as also the first main group as a whole, are associated predominantly with the northern region of India: while the Ṛṣis who appear in the second main list, as also the second main group as a whole, are associated predominantly with the southern region of India to the south of the Vindhyas. The change in identities which occurs between the Vedic texts on the one hand and the Epic and early Purāṇic texts on the other hand may on this basis be said to be due in some measure to the growing influence of certain Brahmin groups or priestly families associated with a region or regions to the south of the Vindhyas - thereby suggesting the increasing importance of such social and cultural influences from trans-Vindhyan regions during especially the late centuries B.C. and the early centuries A.D.

An almost exclusively Purāṇic tradition of the Saptarṣi group occurs in connection with the Manvantara theory: wherein each of the 14 Manvantaras is said to be presided over by a Saptarṣi group, and thus the number of Saptarṣi groups is expanded from two to fourteen. In this theory, the Ṛṣis of the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group consistently appear in the 1st and 7th Manvantaras - those of the second main list, headed by Marīci, in the 1st Manvantara, and those of the first main list, headed by Viśvāmitra, in the 7th Manvantara: while the Ṛṣis of the 8th Manvantara are additionally especially those who are said in the Epic and early Purāṇic texts to be the "sons"

---



of the Ṛsis in the 7th Manvantara, and who are said to have taken part in the Mahābhārata war. The various groups of Saptarṣis are variously said to appear on the earth during either the Kṛta, Tretā, or Dvāpara Yugas: and in this respect the Manvantara traditions of the Saptarṣis may be said to have evolved from a scheme wherein the Ṛsis of the 1st Manvantara were previously thought to have appeared on the earth during the Kṛta Yuga, while their "sons" of the 7th Manvantara were thought to have appeared during the Tretā Yuga, and their "sons" in turn during the Dvāpara Yuga of the same Kalpa or day of Brahmā - wherein a Kalpa consisted of a single succession of the four Yugas, as in the Mahābhārata, prior to the assimilation of the Manvantara to the scheme of Yugas and Kalpas as occurs in the early Purāṇic texts. Thus the tradition of the different Saptarṣi groups in the 14 Manvantaras may be said to have evolved from an earlier association of groups of Saptarṣis with particular Yugas, wherein the number of Saptarṣi groups was expanded firstly from two to three before being expanded to fourteen: and the length of time separating the appearances of the different groups was at first deemed to be of relatively short duration, rather than of the vastly increased durations as given in the developed Manvantara tradition of the early Purāṇic texts.

Apart from such changes in the identity of the Ṛsis who are included in the Saptarṣi group, a further important tradition of the Saptarṣis in the Epic and more especially early Purāṇic and astronomical texts is that wherein, as the seven stars of Ursa Major, they are thought to remain for 100 years in each of the Nakṣatras: an idea which accordingly gives rise to a system of chronology - termed the Saptarṣi Yuga in the early Purāṇic texts - of which two variant versions may be discerned. The first of these is evident in the works of Vṛddha Garga around the end of the 1st century B.C., and was noted by Greek and Roman writers as early as the 4th century B.C.:

---

while the existence of the second version was noted by Vrddha Garga, and it was subsequently used in the early Purāṇic texts. An essential difference between the two versions may be seen to lie in the number of Nakṣatras used in each version: for while the latter version employed a total of 27 Nakṣatras, the former version employed a total of 28 Nakṣatras, and thus differs fundamentally in character from the latter version. In addition, both versions differ from each other in the period ascribed to the Saptarṣis being in a particular Nakṣatra in any given cycle: thus while the former version placed the start of the Kali Yuga - when the Saptarṣis were in Maghā - in 3102 B.C. and commenced each complete cycle with Kṛttikā, the latter version placed the start of the Kali Yuga - when the Saptarṣis were in Maghā - in 2414 B.C., whence the start of the complete cycle with Kṛttikā in the former version corresponded to the start of the same complete cycle with Śravisthā in the latter version, and of the preceding complete cycle with Śravanā. Such later astronomers as Varāhamihira and Āryabhaṭa attempted to combine the two versions, by accepting the start of the Kali Yuga in 3102 B.C. while at the same time placing the Saptarṣis in Maghā in 2414 B.C.: and the resulting scheme of chronology which they adopted may be found also in the works of Kalhana, and is employed to the present day in Kashmir.

The change which occurs between the two different versions of the Saptarṣi Yuga may be seen - as with the identities of the Rsis included in the two main lists of the Saptarṣi group - to be due in large measure to the influence of ideas originating from a region to the south of the Vindhya: and more specifically from the region of the Western Deccan, around the Narmadā and Godāvarī valleys, during the rule of the Śātavāhana and Vākāṭaka dynasties in the early centuries of the Christian era. On this basis it may be concluded that the changes between the Vedic traditions of the Saptarṣi group

---

on the one hand and the Epic and early Purāṇic traditions of the Saptarsi group on the other hand have been brought about due in considerable measure to the increasingly important role of Brahmin groups or priestly families in the region of the Western Deccan during the early centuries of the Christian era in influencing and formulating such Epic and early Purāṇic traditions.

---

BIBLIOGRAPHIES

BIBLIOGRAPHY 1 : Textual Editions Cited.1. Vedic Samhitās.(a) R̥gveda:

R̥gveda - with commentary of Sāyana: F. Max Muller : 4 vols. :  
London 1890-1892.

(b) Sāmaveda:

Sāmaveda - with commentary of Sāyana: S. Sāmaśramī : Bib.Ind. :  
5 vols. : Calcutta 1874-1878.

(c) Yajurveda:

Kāthaka Samhitā - L. von Schröder : 4 vols. : Leipzig 1909-1922,  
rep. Wiesbaden 1970-1972.

Maitrāyaṇī Samhitā - L. von Schröder : 4 vols. : Leipzig 1881-1886,  
rep. Wiesbaden 1970-1972.

Taittirīya Samhitā - with commentary of Mād̥hava: Bib.Ind. :  
Calcutta 1860.

Vājasaneyi Samhitā - with commentary of Mahīdhara: A. Weber :  
Berlin 1849.

- V.L.S. Pansikar : Bombay 1912.

- Pravara-parīśiṣṭha, in A. Weber - Die Handschriften  
und Verzeichnisse der Königlichen Bibliothek zu  
Berlin, vol.1 no.251 (Weber 13,8): Berlin 1853.

(d) Atharvaveda:

Atharvaveda - with commentary of Sāyana: Bombay 1895.

- V. Bandhu : VIS vol.17 : Hoshiarpur 1960-1964.

- R. Roth & W.D. Whitney : 2nd ed. revised M. Lindenau :  
Berlin 1924.

## 2. Brāhmanas.

- Aitareya Brāhmaṇa -- with commentary of Sāyana: T. Aufrecht : Bonn 1879.  
 - with commentary of Sāyana: S. Sāmaśramī : Bib.Ind. :  
 4 vols : Calcutta 1894-1906.  
 - E. Haug : Bombay 1863.
- Gopatha Brāhmaṇa -- R.L. Mitra : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1872, rep. Delhi 1972.
- Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa -- W. Caland (part) : Amsterdam 1919.  
 - H. Oertel : JAOS 16-28 : 1896-1906.  
 - SVS 31 : Nagpur 1954.
- Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa -- G.V. Chhāyā : ASS 5 : Poona 1911.  
 - E.R.S. Sarma : Wiesbaden 1968.
- Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa -- with commentary of Sāyana: Bib.Ind. : 2 vols. :  
 Calcutta 1870-1874.  
 - with commentary of Sāyana: A.C. & P. Śāstri :  
 KSS 105 : Benares 1935-1936.
- Sadvimśa Brāhmaṇa -- K. Klemm : Guterslow 1894.
- Sāmavidhāna Brāhmaṇa -- A.C. Burnell : London 1873.
- Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa -- with commentary of Sāyana: S. Sāmaśramī : Bib.Ind. :  
 4 vols. : Calcutta 1894-1906. (part)  
 - with commentary of Sāyana: T. Aufrecht : Bonn 1879.  
 - with commentary of Sāyana: K.S. Āgāse : ASS 32 :  
 Poona 1896.  
 - A.C. & P. Śāstri : KSS 127 : Benares 1937.
- Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa -- with commentary of Sāyana: R.L. Mitra : Bib.Ind. :  
 3 vols. : Calcutta 1859.  
 - with commentary of Sāyana: N.B. Godbole : ASS 37 :  
 Poona 1898, rep. 1934.
- Talavakāra Brāhmaṇa -- see Jaiminiya.
- Tāndya-mahā Brāhmaṇa -- see Pañcaviṃśa.

### 3. Āraṇyakas and Upaniṣads.

#### (a) Āraṇyakas:

Aitareya Āraṇyaka - with commentary of Sāyana: R.L. Mitra : Bib.Ind. :  
Calcutta 1876.

- A.B. Keith : Oxford 1909, rep. 1969.

Kausītaki Āraṇyaka - see Śāṅkhāyana.

Śāṅkhāyana Āraṇyaka - T. Pāṭhaka : ASS 90 : Poona 1922.

Taittirīya Āraṇyaka - with commentary of Sāyana: R.L. Mitra :  
Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1872.

#### (b) Upaniṣads:

Eighteen Principal Upaniṣads - V.P. Limaye & R.D. Valdekar : Poona 1958.

One Hundred and Eight Upaniṣads - Bombay 1913.

### 4. Kalpa Sūtras.

#### (a) Śrauta Sūtras:

Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra - R. Garbe : Bib.Ind. : 3 vols. : Calcutta  
1881-1903.

Āśvalāyana Śrauta Sūtra - R. Vidyardatna : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1874.

Baudhāyana Śrauta Sūtra - W. Caland : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1904-1924.

Drāhyāyana Śrauta Sūtra - J.N. Reuter : London 1904. (part)

- Raghu Vira : Lahore 1934. (part)

Hiranyakeśin Śrauta Sūtra - K.B. Āgāse : ASS 53 : Poona 1907-1932.

Jaiminiya Śrauta Sūtra - D. Gaastra : Leiden 1906.

Kātyāyana Śrauta Sūtra - V. Śarma : CSS : Benares 1933.

Lāṭyāyana Śrauta Sūtra - A. Vedāntarāgīśa : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1872.

Mānava Śrauta Sūtra - J.M. van Gelder : SP 27 : Leiden 1921, rep. Delhi  
1961.

Śāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra - A. Hillebrandt : Bib.Ind. : 4 vols. :  
Calcutta 1889-1899.

Satyāsādha Śrauta Sūtra - see Hiranyakeśin.

Vaikhāṇasa Śrauta Sūtra - W. Caland : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1941.

Vaitāna (Śrauta) Sūtra - R. Garbe : London 1878.

(b) Grhya Sūtras:

Āpastamba Grhya Sūtra - M. Winternitz : Vienna 1887.

- A.C. Sastri : KSS 59 : Benares 1928.

Āśvalāyana Grhya Sūtra - A.F. Stenzler : ADMG : Leipzig 1864-1878.

Gobhila Grhya Sūtra - C.K. Tarkalankara : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1871-1880.

- M.K. Bakshi : Benares 1936.

Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra - J. Kirste : Vienna 1889.

Khādīra Grhya Sūtra - A.M. Sastri & L. Srinivasācārya : Mysore 1913.

Mānava Grhya Sūtra - R.H. Sastri : Baroda 1926.

Pāraskara Grhya Sūtra - A.F. Stenzler : ADMG : Leipzig 1864-1878.

Śāṅkhāyana Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : Ind.Stud. vol.15.

- S.R. Seghal : Delhi 1960.

Vaikhānasa Grhya Sūtra - W. Caland : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1941.

Vaikhānasa Sūtra - with Pravara-praśna: India Office MS Keith 4684,  
Aufrecht 17, folios 183-192.

(c) Dharma Sūtras:

Āpastamba Dharma Sūtra - C.R. Sastri : KSS 93 : Benares 1932.

- G. Bühler : BPS 44 + 1 : Poona 1932.

Baudhāyana Dharma Sūtra - C. Sastri : Benares 1934.

Gautama Dharma Sūtra - A.F. Stenzler : London 1876.

- G.S. Gokhale : Poona 1910.

Vaikhānasa Dharma Sūtra - W. Caland : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1927.

Vāsistha Dharma Sūtra - A.A. Führer : Bombay 1883.



## 5. Epics.

### (a) Rāmāyana:

Rāmāyana of Valmīki - G.H. Bhatt et.al. : Oriental Institute, Baroda :  
1960- (excluding Uttara Kāṇḍa).

- K.P. Parab : Bombay 1888.

### (b) Mahābhārata:

Mahābhārata - V.S. Sukthankar et.al. : Bhandarkar Oriental Research  
Institute : Poona 1933-1959.

- P.C. Roy : Calcutta 1888-1889

- Gorakhpur 1955-1957.

## 6. Purānas.

### (a) Harivamśa:

Harivamśa - P.L. Vaidya : Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute :  
Poona 1969.

### (b) Early Purānas:

Brahmaṇḍa Purāṇa - J.L. Shastri : Delhi 1973.

Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa - F.E. Pargiter : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1862.

Matsya Purāṇa - H.N. Apte : ASS 54 : Poona 1907.

Vāyu Purāṇa - R.L. Mitra : Bib.Ind. : 2 vols. : Calcutta 1880-1888.

Viṣṇu Purāṇa - J. Vidyasagara : Calcutta 1882.

Yuga Purāṇa - D.R. Mankad : Vallabhvidyanagar 1951.

7. Dharma Śāstras. (= Smrtis)

Brhaspati Dharma Śāstra - R.V.R. Aiyangar : GOS 85 : Baroda 1941.

Mānava Dharma Śāstra - J. Jolly : London 1887.

- G. Jha : Bib.Ind. : 3 vols. : Calcutta 1932-1930.

Nārada Dharma Śāstra - J. Jolly : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1881.

Viṣṇu Dharma Śāstra - J. Jolly : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1881.

Yājñavalkya Dharma Śāstra - A.F. Stenzler : Berlin & London 1849.

- N.S. Khiste & J.S. Hośiṅga : Benares 1924-1930.

- S.C. Vasu : SBH : Allahabad 1909.

8. Astronomical Texts.

Brāhmasphuṭasiddhānta of Brahmagupta - M.S. Dvivedin : Benares 1902.

Brhatsamhitā of Varāhamihira - H. Kern : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1865.

Mahāsiddhānta of Āryabhata - M.S. Dvivedin : Benares 1910.

- S.R. Sarma : Marburg 1966.

Pañcasiddhāntikā of Varāhamihira - G. Thibaut & M.S. Dvivedin :  
Benares 1889, rep. 1968.

Sūrya Siddhānta - F. Hall : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1859.

Vedāṅgajyotiṣa - with commentary of Somākara: M.S. Dvivedin : Benares 1908.

Yogayātrā of Varāhamihira - H. Kern : Ind.Stud. vols. 10, 14, 15 :  
Leipzig 1868-1878.

## 9. Literary Texts.

### (a) Bhāsa:

Thirteen Plays of Bhāsa - G. Sastri : TSS.

Plays ascribed to Bhāsa - C.R. Devadhar : Poona 1951.

(Pratijñā-yaugandharāyanam : Svapna-vāsavadattam : Daridra-cārudattam :  
Pañcarātram : Madhyama-vyāyoga : Pratimā-nāṭakam : Dūtavākyaṃ :  
Dūta-ghaṭotkacaṃ : Karna-bhāram : Ūrubhaṅgam : Avimārakam :  
Bāla-caritam : Abhiṣeka-nāṭakam)

### (b) Śūdraka:

Mṛcchakatika - J. Vidyasagara : Calcutta 1891.

### (c) Kālidāsa:

Abhijñānaśākuntalam - M.R. Kale : Bombay 1898, rep. 1957.

Kumārasambhava - M.R. Kale : Bombay 1923, rep. Delhi 1967. (cantos 1-8)

Mālavikāgnimitra - C.R. Devadhar : Delhi 1972. (Works of Kālidāsa vol.1)

Meghadūta - N.B. Godbole & K.P. Parab : Bombay 1886.

Raghuvamśa - K. Parab : Bombay 1892.

- G.R. Nandargikar : Bombay 1891.

Rtusamhāra - S. Ayyar : Bombay 1897.

- S.R. Seghal : Lahore 1944.

Vikramorvaśīyam - C.R. Devadhar : Delhi 1972. (Works of Kālidāsa vol.1)

10. Miscellaneous Texts.

Arthaśāstra of Kauṭilya - PSS 3 : Lahore 1923.

Bhāgavata Purāṇa - with commentary of Śrīdhara: Bombay 1832.

- C.L. Goswami : Gorakhpur 1971.

Bṛhaddevatā attributed to Śaunaka - A.A. Macdonell : MOS 5 : Cambridge (Massachusetts) 1904.

Gotra-pravara-mañjarī of Puruṣottama - P.C. Rao : in Gotra-pravara-nibandha-kadambam : Mysore 1900.

Iliados of Homer - A.T. Murray : LCL : 2 vols. : London & New York 1924-1925.

Indica of Arrian - E.I. Robson : LCL : London & New York 1929.

Kāma Sūtra of Vātsyāyana - G.S. Śastri : CSS 29 : Benares 1929.

Naturalis Historia of Pliny - H. Rackham et.al. : LCL : 10 vols. : London & Cambridge 1938-1962.

Nighaṇṭu & Nirukta of Yaska - L. Sarup : Oxford 1927.

- S. Sāmaśramī : Bib.Ind. : 4 vols. : Calcutta 1882-1891.

Odysseia of Homer - A.T. Murray : LCL : 2 vols. : London & New York 1919.

Rājataranginī of Kalhana - V. Bandhu : WIS 5-6 : Hoshiarpur 1963-1965.

BIBLIOGRAPHY 2 : Main Translations of Texts.

(in alphabetical order of texts)

- Abhijñānaśākuntalam - C.R. Devadhar : Delhi 1966, rep. 1972.  
(Works of Kālidāsa vol.1)
- Ā'in-i-Akbari - H.S. Jarrett : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1948-1949.
- Aitareya Āraṇyaka - A.D. Keith : Oxford 1909, rep. 1969.
- Aitareya Brāhmaṇa - E. Haug : Bombay 1863.  
- A.D. Keith : HOS 25 : Cambridge 1920, rep. Delhi 1971. (R̥gveda Brāhmaṇas)
- Āpastamba Dharma Sūtra - G. Bühler : SBE 2 : Oxford 1870.
- Āpastamba Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 30 : Oxford 1892.
- Āpastamba Śrauta Sūtra - W. Caland : Amsterdam 1921-1928, rep. Wiesbaden 1969. (German)
- Arthaśāstra - R. Sharmasastri : Mysore 1915, rep. 1967.
- Āśvalāyana Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 29 : Oxford 1886.  
- A.F. Stenzler : ADMG : Leipzig 1864-1878.
- Atharvaveda - W.D. Whitney : HOS 7-8 : Cambridge 1905, rep. Delhi 1971.
- Baudhāyana Dharma Sūtra - G. Bühler : SBE 14 : Oxford 1882.
- Bhāsa : Thirteen Trivandrum Plays attributed to Bhāsa - A.C. Woolner & L. Sarup : London 1930-1931.
- Bibliothèque of Apollodorus - J.G. Frazer : LCL : 2 vols. : London & New York 1921.
- Brhaddevatā - A.A. Macdonell : HOS 6 : Cambridge 1904.
- Brhaspati Dharma Śāstra - J. Jolly : SBE 33 : Oxford 1889.
- Brhatsamhitā - H. Kern : JRAS n.s. 4-7, 1870-1875.
- Compendium of Solinus - in R.C. Majumdar, Classical Accounts of India.  
- in J.W. McCrindle, Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian.
- Gautama Dharma Sūtra - G. Bühler : SBE 2 : Oxford 1870.
- Gobhila Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 30 : Oxford 1892.
- Gotra-pravara-mañjarī - J. Brough : Cambridge 1953.
- Harivamśa - M.N. Dutt : Calcutta 1897.  
- S.A. Langlois : 3 vols. : London 1834. (French)
- Hiranyakeśin Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 30 : Oxford 1892.
- Iliad of Homer - A.T. Murray : LCL : 2 vols. : London & New York 1924-1925.
- India of Albīrūnī - E. Sachau : London 1888, rep. Delhi 1964.
- Indica of Arrian - E.I. Robson : LCL : London & New York 1929.
- Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa - W. Caland : Amsterdam 1919. (German : part)  
- H.H. Bodewitz : Leiden 1973. (1.1-65)
- Jaiminiya Brāhmaṇa & Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa - H. Oertel : JAOS 14-16, 1894ff.
- Jaiminiya Śrauta Sūtra - D. Gaastera : Leiden 1906. (Dutch)
- Kāma Sūtra - R. Burton : London 1883, rep. 1969.
- Kausītaki Brāhmaṇa - A.D. Keith : HOS 25 : Cambridge 1920, rep. Delhi 1971. (R̥gveda Brāhmaṇas)
- Khādīra Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 29 : Oxford 1886.

- 552.
- Kumārasambhava - M.R. Kale : Delhi 1923, rep. 1967. (Cantos 1-8)
- Mahābhārata - P.C. Roy : Calcutta 1884-1896.  
- J.A.B. van Buitenen : Chicago 1974. (Vol.1)
- Mahāsiddhānta - S.R. Sarma : Harburg 1966.
- Mālavikāgnimitram - C.R. Devadhar : Delhi 1966, rep. 1972. (Works of Kālidāsa vol.1)
- Mānava Dharma Śāstra - G. Bühler : SBE 25 : Oxford 1886.
- Mānava Grhya Sūtra - M.J. Dresden : Gröningen 1941.
- Mānava Śrauta Sūtra - J.H. van Gelder : SP 27 : Leiden 1921, rep. Delhi 1963.
- Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa - F.E. Pargiter : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1884-1904, rep. Benares 1969.
- Matsya Purāṇa - S. Vidyārṇava : SBH 17 : Allahabad 1916-1917.
- Meghadūta - F. & E. Edgerton : Ann Arbor, 1964.
- Metamorphoses of Ovid - E.J. Miller : LCL : 2 vols. : London & New York 1916-1929.
- Mṛcchakatika - J.A.B. van Buitenen : New York 1968.
- Mudrārākṣasa - M.R. Kale : Delhi 1911, rep. 1965.
- Nārada Dharma Śāstra - J. Jolly : SBE 33 : Oxford 1889.
- Naturalis Historia of Pliny - H. Rackham et.al. : LCL : 10 vols. : London & Cambridge 1938-1962.
- Nighaṇṭu and Nirukta - L. Sarup : Oxford 1921.
- Odyssey of Homer - A.T. Murray : LCL : 2 vols. : London & New York 1919.
- Pañcasiddhāntikā - G. Thibaut & S. Dvivedin : Benares 1889, rep. 1968.
- Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa - W. Caland : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1931.  
- E.W. Hopkins : TCAAS col.15.
- Paraskara Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 29 : Oxford 1886.  
- A.F. Stenzler : ADMG : Leipzig 1864-1878.
- Poetica Astronomica of Hyginus - M. Grant, The Myths of Hyginus : Kansas 1960.
- Raghuvamśa - R. Antoine : Calcutta 1972.
- Rājatarāṅginī - M.A. Stein, Kalhana's Chronicle of the Kings of Kashmir : 2 vols. : London 1900.
- Rāmāyana - H.P. Sastri : 3 vols. : London 1953-1959, rep. 1962-1970.
- Rgveda - K.F. Geldner : HOS 33-36 : Cambridge 1951-1957. (German)  
- L. Renou, Études Védiques et Péniniennes : Paris 1955-1969. (French)  
- H.H. Wilson : London 1866.  
- R.T.H. Griffiths : Benares 1896.
- Rtusamhāra - R.S. Pandit : Bombay 1947.
- Sadvimśa Brāhmaṇa - W.B. Bollée : Utrecht 1956.
- Śāṅkhāyana Āraṇyaka - A.B. Keith : RAS otf 18 : London 1908.
- Śāṅkhāyana Grhya Sūtra - H. Oldenberg : SBE 29 : Oxford 1886.
- Śāṅkhāyana Śrauta Sūtra - W. Caland & L. Chandra : SVS 32 : Nagpur 1953.
- Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa - J. Eggeling : SBE 12, 26, 41, 43, 44 : Oxford 1882-1900.
- Sirozah - J. Darmesteter : SBE 22 : Oxford 1883.

- Sūrya Siddhānta - E. Burgess : JAOS 6, 1860.
- Taittirīya Samhitā - A.B. Keith : HOS 18-19 : Cambridge 1914, rep. Delhi 1967.
- Talavakāra Brāhmaṇa - see Jaiminīya.
- Tāndya-mahā Brāhmaṇa - see Pañcaviṃśa.
- Upaniṣads : Thirteen Principal Upaniṣads - R. Hume : London 1877, rep. Madras 1968.
- Sechzig Upaniṣad's des Veda - P. Deussen : Leipzig 1921. (German)
- Vaikhāṇasa Dharma Sūtra - K. Rangachari : Madras 1930.  
- W. Caland : Bib.Ind. : Calcutta 1929.
- Vaitāna Sūtra - S.N. Ghosal : IHQ 58-60.  
- W. Caland : Amsterdam 1910.
- Vājasaneyi Samhitā - A. Weber : Ind.Stud. 2. (part)  
- J. Muir : OST 4. (part)  
- R.T.H. Griffiths : Benares 1927.
- Vāsistha Dharma Sūtra - G. Bühler : SBE 14 : Oxford 1882.
- Vikramorvaśīyam - C.R. Devadhar : Delhi 1966, rep. 1972. (Works of Kālidāsa vol.1)
- Viṣṇu Dharma Śāstra - J. Jolly : SBE 7 : Oxford 1880.
- Viṣṇu Purāṇa - H.H. Wilson : London 1840, rep. Calcutta 1972.
- Yājñavalkya Dharma Śāstra - E.F. Stenzler : Berlin & London 1849.  
- J.R. Gharpure : Girgaon 1936-1944.
- Yajurveda - see Taittirīya and Vājasaneyi Samhitās.
- Yashts - J. Darmesteter : SBE 22 : Oxford 1883.
- Yogayātrā - H. Kern : Ind.Stud. 10,14,15 : Leipzig 1868-1878.

NOTE: Volumes of HOS published in Cambridge, Massachusetts.

Volumes of SBE reprinted in Delhi in the 1960's.

BIBLIOGRAPHY 3 : Select Secondary Works.

(in alphabetical order of authors)

- Agrawala, V.S. - Matsya Purāṇa, A Study : Benares 1963.
- Alexander, H.B. - North American Mythology : MAR 10 : Boston 1916.
- Ali, S.M. - Geography of the Purāṇas : Delhi 1966.
- Apte, V.M. - Social and Religious Life in the Grhya Sūtras : Ahmedabad 1954.
- Apte, V.S. - India as known to Pāṇini : Benares 1963.
- Bailey, H.W. - Gāndhārī : BSOAS 11.  
- Indo-Iranica 3 : BSOAS 13.
- Bannerjee, A.C. - Studies in the Brāhmaṇas : Delhi 1963.
- Basak, R.G. - Aśokan Inscriptions : Calcutta 1959.
- Basham, A.L. - Studies in Indian History and Culture : Calcutta 1964.  
- The Wonder that was India : London 1954, rep. 1967.
- Bedekar, V.M. - Principles of Mahābhārata Textual Criticism : Purāṇa vol.11, 1969.
- Benveniste, E. - Study of Indo-European Vocabulary : Lecture delivered to the University of London, 1949.  
- Le Vocabulaire des Institutions Indo-Européennes : 2 vols. : Paris 1969.
- Bhandarkar, R.G. - Early History of the Deccan : 1884, 2nd ed. 1895 : rep. in Collected Works vol.3 : BORI Poona 1927.
- Bharati, A. - The Tantric Tradition : London 1965.
- Bhargava, P.L. - India in the Vedic Age: 1956, rep. London 1971.
- Bhattacharji, S. - The Indian Theogony : Cambridge 1970.
- Biardeau, M. - Some More Considerations about Textual Criticism : Purāṇa vol.10, 1968.
- Billard, R. - L'Astronomie Indienne : Paris 1971.
- Blair, C. - Heat in the Rig Veda and Atharva Veda : AOSP 45 : Cambridge 1961.
- Bloomfield, M. - The Atharvaveda and the Gopatha Brāhmaṇa : Strassburg 1894  
- A Vedic Concordance : Cambridge 1906.
- Boethlink, O. & Roth, R. - A Sanskrit Dictionary : St. Petersburg 1855-75.
- Bouché-Leclercq, A. - L'Astrologie Grecque : Paris 1899.
- Brough, J. - Early Brahmanical System of Gotra and Pravara : Cambridge 1951  
- Early History of the Gotras : JRAS 1946.
- Burrow, T. - The Proto-Indoaryans : JRAS 1973.  
- The Sanskrit Language : London 1955.
- Bühler, G. - A Detailed Report of a Tour in search of Sanskrit Manuscripts extra number of JEBRAS 1887.
- Carney, A.J. - Iranian Mythology : MAR 6 : Boston 1917.
- Chakravarti, C. - The Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa: Editions and Translations : Purāṇa vol.3, 1961.  
- The Tantras : Calcutta 1963.



- Chatley, H. - Ancient Chinese Astronomy : Asiatic Review 1938.
- Chemburkar, J. - Historical and Religious Background of the Concept of Four Yugas in the Mahābhārata and the Bhāgavata Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.16, 1974.
- Chinnulgund, P.J. & Mirashi, V.V. - Review of Indological Research in last 75 Years : M.M. Chitraoshastri Felicitation Volume : Poona 1974.
- Church, C.D. - The Myth of Four Yugas in the Sanskrit Purāṇas : Purāṇa vol.16, 1974.
- Colebrooke, H.T. - Miscellaneous Essays : London 1873.
- Cox, G.W. - Mythology of the Aryan Nations : London 1878, rep. Benares 1963
- Cunningham, A. - The Ancient Geography of India : 1871, rep. Calcutta 1963  
- A Book of Indian Eras : Calcutta 1883, rep. Benares 1970.
- Dandekar, R.N. - The Two Births of Vasistha : Antiquitates Indogermanicae, Gedenkschrift für Hermann Guntert : Innsbruck 1974.  
- Vasistha as a Religious Conciliator : CASS 41 : Poona 1973  
- Vedic Bibliography : Bombay & Poona, 1946-1951.
- Daniélou, A. - Hindu Polytheism : London 1964.
- Das Gupta, K.K. - The Purāṇas on the Audumbaras : Purāṇa vol.7, 1965.
- Dasgupta, S.N. - History of Indian Philosophy : 5 vols., esp. vols.1-3 : Cambridge 1923-1949.
- Davies, C.C. - Historical Atlas of the Indian Peninsula : Oxford 1896, rep. 1973.
- Deussen, P. - Philosophy of the Upaniṣads : Edinburgh 1905.
- Dikshit, S.B. - Bhāratiya Jyotiḥ Śāstra : Poona 1931.
- Dikshitar, V.R.R. - The Matsya Purāṇa, A Study : Madras 1935.  
- The Purāṇa Index : 3 vols. : Madras 1955.
- Dowson, J. - A Classical Dictionary of Hindu Mythology : London 1913, rep. Delhi 1973.
- Eliade, M. - Shamanism : London 1964.  
- Yoga, Immortality and Freedom : London 1958.
- Farquhar, J.N. - An Outline of the Religious Literature of India : Oxford 1920, rep. Delhi 1967.
- Fausbøll, V. - Indian Mythology in Outline, according to the Mahābhārata : London 1903.
- Gai, G.S. & Sankaranarayanan, S. - Note on the Date of Hisse-Borala Inscription of the time of Vakataka Devasena : Ep.Ind. vol.37, 1967.
- Fick, R. - Social Organisation in North-East India in the Time of the Buddha : 1920, rep. Bombay 1966.
- Gokhale, S. - Hisse-Borala Inscription of Devasena, Śaka 380 : Ep.Ind. vol.37, 1967.
- Goldman, R. - Myth and Metamyth: A Critical Study of the Evolution and Manipulation of the Bhārgava Corpus in the Mahābhārata : University of Pennsylvania Ph.D Thesis, 1971.
- Gonda, J. - Aspects of Early Viṣṇuism : rep. Delhi 1969.  
- Agastyaparva : Hague 1933-1936.

- Gonda, J. - The Old Javanese Agastyaparva : Purāṇa vol.4, 1962.  
 - Einige Mitteilungen über das Altjavanische Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa : Acta Orientalia 11, 1933.  
 - The Old Javanese Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.2, 1960.  
 - Notes on Brahman : Utrecht 1950.  
 - Die Religionen Indiens : vol.1 : Stuttgart 1960.
- Grant, M. - Myths of the Greeks and Romans : New York 1962.
- Grassman, W. - Wörterbuch zum Rigveda : Leipzig 1873.
- Graves, R. - The Greek Myths : 2 vols. : London 1955, rep. 1971.
- Guénon, R. - Symboles Fondamenteaux de la Science Sacrée : Paris 1962.
- Gupta, A.S. - The Manuscripts of the Matsya Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.1, 1959.  
 - Purāṇas and their Referencing : Purāṇa vol.7, 1965.  
 - Purāṇic Theory of the Yugas and Kalpas : Purāṇa vol.11, 1969
- Gyani, S.D. - The Date of the Purāṇas : Purāṇa vols. 1-2, 1959-1960.
- Hastings, J. - Encyclopaedia of Religion and Ethics : 13 vols. : Edinburgh 1908-1926.
- Hauer, J. - Die Anfänge der Yogapraxis : Berlin 1922.
- Hillebrandt, A. - Ritualliteratur : Strassburg 1897.  
 - Vedische Mythologie : Breslau 1891-1892.
- Holmberg, U. - Finno-Ugric and Siberian Mythology : MAR 4 : Boston 1924.
- Holtzmann, A. - Der heilige Agastya nach den Erzählungen des Mahābhāratas : ZDMG 34.
- Hopkins, E.W. - Epic Mythology : Strassburg 1915, rep. Delhi 1974.  
 - The Great Epic of India : New York 1901.  
 - The Religions of India : 1885, rep. Delhi 1970.
- Ions, V. - Indian Mythology : London 1967.
- Iyengar, P.T.S. - History of the Tamils to 600 A.D. : Madras 1929.
- Jacobi, H. - Der Vedische Kalendar und das Alter des Veda : ZDMG 44.  
 - On the Antiquity of Vedic Culture : JRAS 1909 part 2.
- Jain, J.C. - Life in Ancient India as depicted in the Jain Canons : Bombay 1947.
- Jain, J.P. - The Jaina Sources of the History of Ancient India : Delhi 1964
- Jairazbhoy, R.A. - Foreign Influence in Ancient India : Bombay 1963.
- Kane, P.V. - History of the Dharmaśāstra : Poona 1930-1962.
- Kantawala, S.G. - Cultural History from the Matsya Purāṇa : Baroda 1964.  
 - Home of the Matsya Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.3, 1961.
- Kapadia, B.H. - Viśvāmitra in Vedic, Epic and Purāṇic Literature : Vidyanagar 1971.
- Kaye, G.R. - Hindu Astronomy : Memoirs of ASI : Calcutta 1924.
- Keith, A.B. - History of Sanskrit Literature : Oxford 1920, rep. Delhi 1972  
 - Indian Mythology : MAR 6 : Boston 1917.  
 - On the Antiquity of Vedic Culture : JRAS 1902 part 2.  
 - Religion and Philosophy of the Veda and Upaniṣads : HOS 10-11 : Cambridge 1925, rep. Delhi 1970.

- Kirfel, W. - Die Kosmographie der Inder : Hildesheim 1967.  
 - Das Purāṇa Pañcalaksana : Bonn 1927.  
 - Das Purāṇa vom Weltgebäude : Bonn 1954.
- Kosambi, D.D. - The Culture and Civilisation of Ancient India :  
 London 1965.
- Kugler, F.X. - Sternkunde und Sterndienst in Babel : Munster 1907.
- Lal, B.B. - Excavations at Hastināpura : Ancient India vols.10-11, 1954-55.
- Lang, A. - Introduction to Grimm's Household Tales, trans. & ed. M. Hunt :  
 London 1892.
- Law, B.C. - Historical Geography of Ancient India : Paris 1964.
- Lévi, S. - Le Doctrine du Sacrifice dans les Brāhmanas : Paris 1966.
- Macdonell, A.A. - History of Sanskrit Literature : London 1900, rep.  
 Delhi 1971.  
 - Vedic Mythology : Strassburg 1879, rep. Delhi 1971.
- Macdonell, A.A. & Keith, A.B. - Vedic Index : 2 vols. : London 1912,  
 rep. Delhi 1967.
- Majumdar, R.C. - Classical Accounts of India : Calcutta 1960.
- Majumdar, R.C. & Altekar, A.S. - The Vakātaka-Gupta Age : Delhi 1954,  
 rep. 1967.
- Majumdar, R.C. & Pusalker, A.D. (ed) - History & Culture of the Indian  
 People : vol.1, The Vedic Age : Bombay 1951, rep. 1971.  
 vol.2, The Age of Imperial Unity : Bombay 1951, rep. 1968  
 vol.3, The Classical Age : Bombay 1954, rep. 1962.
- Mankad, D.R. - The Matsya Purāṇa and the Rāmāyana : Purāṇa vol.8, 1966.
- Masson-Oursel, P. - Ancient India and Indian Civilisation : London 1934.
- Mayers, W.F. - A Chinese Reader's Manual : Shanghai 1924.
- McCrindle, J.W. - Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian :  
 1877, rep. Calcutta 1960.  
 - Ancient India as described in Classical Literature :  
 London 1901.
- Meyer, J.J. - Gesetzbuch und Purāṇa : Breslau 1929.
- Moor, E. - The Hindu Pantheon : London 1810, rep. Delhi 1968.
- Moore, P. - Atlas of the Universe : London 1970.
- Muir, J. - Original Sanskrit Texts : 5 vols. : London 1872-1884, rep.  
 Delhi 1967.
- Neugebauer, O. - Tamil Astronomy : Osiris 10, 1952.
- O'Flaherty, W.D. - Asceticism and Eroticism in the Mythology of Śiva :  
 London 1973.  
 - Hindu Myths : London 1975.  
 - The Origins of Heresy in Hindu Mythology : Oxford  
 D.Phil, 1973.
- Oldenberg, H. - Der Vedische Kalendar und das Alter des Veda : ZDMG 48,  
 1894.  
 - On the Antiquity of Vedic Culture : JRAS 1902 part 2.  
 - Naksatra und Sieou : NKGWG 1909.

- Oppert, H. - On the Original Inhabitants of Bharatvarṣa or India : London 1893.
- Pargiter, F.E. - Ancient Indian Historical Tradition : London 1922, rep. Delhi 1972.
- The Purāṇa Text of the Dynasties of the Kali Age : Oxford 1913, rep. Benares 1962.
- Pathak, V.S. - Ancient Historians of India : London 1966.
- Peck, W. - Constellations : Edinburgh 1934.
- Phillips, C.H. - Historians of India, Pakistan and Ceylon : Oxford 1961.
- Poerbatjaraka, R.M.Ng. - Agastya in den Archipel : Leiden Thesis, 1926.
- Poussin, L. de la Vallée - Indo-Européens et Indo-Iraniens : Paris 1936.
- L'Inde aux Temps des Mauryas et Barbares, Grecs, Scythes, Parthes et Yue Tchi : Paris 1930.
- Pusalker, A.D. - Studies in the Epics and Purāṇas of India : Bombay 1955.
- Raghavan, V. - Gleanings from the Matsya Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.1, 1959.
- The Greater Rāmāyana : Benares 1973.
- Inventory of Matsya Purāṇa Manuscripts : Purāṇa vol.2, 1960.
- Tamil Versions of the Purāṇas : Purāṇa vol.2, 1960.
- A Unique Two-Khanda Version of the Matsya Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.1, 1959.
- Rahurkar, V.G. - Seers of the R̥gveda : Poona 1964.
- Rapson, E.J. (ed) - Cambridge History of India, vol.1 - Ancient India : Cambridge 1922, rep. Delhi 1968.
- Rau, W. - Staat und Gesellschaft im Alten Indien nach den Brāhmaṇa-texten dargestellt : Wiesbaden 1957.
- Raychaudhuri, H.C. - Political History of Ancient India : rep. Calcutta 1953.
- Reiner, E. - The Etiological Myth of the Seven Sages : Orientalia 30, 1961.
- Renou, L. - Bibliographie Védique : Paris 1931.
- Études Védiques et Pāṇiniennes : Paris 1948 ff.
- L'Inde Classique : Paris 1947.
- Sur la Notion de Brahman : Journal Asiatique 1948.
- Roy, S.B. - Ancient India, A Chronological Study : Delhi 1975.
- Chronological Infrastructure of Indian Protohistory : 3 vols. : Delhi 1975- .
- Roy, S.N. - On the date of the Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa : Purāṇa vol.5, 1963.
- Sastri, A.M. - The Mahābhārata on the Relation between Viśvāmitra and the Audumbaras : Purāṇa vol.7, 1965.
- Sastri, K.A.N. - Agastya : TITLVK, Bataviaasch Genootschap 76, 1936.
- Historical Method in relation to Problems of South Indian History : Madras 1941.
- A History of South India : Bombay 1955, rep. 1971.
- The Mauryas and Satavahanas : London 1957.
- Sources of Indian History, with special reference to South India : London 1964.
- Sastry, K.V.R. - Telugu Versions of the Purāṇas : Purāṇa vol.4, 1962.

- Saussure, L. de - Les Origines de l'Astronomie Chinoise : T'oung Pao series 2 vol.10, 1909.
- Schröder, L. von - *Mysterium und Mimus im Rgveda* : Leipzig 1908, rep. 1972.
- Schwanbeck, E.A. - *Megasthenis Indica* : Bonnae 1846.
- Sethna, K.P. - *Megasthenes and Indian Chronology as based upon the Purāṇas* : Purāṇa vols. 8-10, 1966-1968.
- Sharma, U.C. - *Vasistha in the Purāṇas* : Purāṇa vol.16, 1974.
- Singhal, D.P. - *India and World Civilisation* : 2 vols. : Michigan 1969, rep. London 1972.
- Sircar, D.C. - *The Bhārata War and Purāṇic Genealogies* : Calcutta 1969.
- *Indian Epigraphical Dictionary* : Delhi 1966.
  - *Select Inscriptions bearing on Indian History and Civilisation, vol.1* : Calcutta 1942, rep. 1965.
  - *Studies in the Geography of Ancient and Medieval India* : Delhi 1960.
- Smith, V.A. - *Early History of India* : Oxford 1924.
- *Oxford History of India* : Oxford 1958, rep. 1967.
- Suryanarayanarao, N.K. - *Kannada Versions of the Purāṇas* : Purāṇa vol.6, 1964.
- Sorenson, S. - *Index to Names in the Mahābhārata* : London 1904.
- Thibaut, G. - *Contribution to the Explanation of the Jyotisha-Vedāṅga* : JASB 46 no.4, 1877.
- Thieme, P. - *Agastya und Lopāmudrā* : ZDMG 113, 1963.
- Tilak, B.G. - *The Arctic Home in the Vedas* : Poona 1903, rep. 1971.
- *Orion* : Poona 1893, rep. 1972.
- Thomas, P.J. - *Epics, Myths and Legends of India* : Bombay 1948.
- Trautman, T.R. - *Kautilya and the Arthaśāstra* : Mysore 1958.
- Wagle, N.K. - *Society at the Time of the Buddha* : Bombay 1966.
- Wasson, R.G. - *Soma, Divine Mushroom of Immortality* : New York 1969.
- Weber, A. - *Die Handschriften und Verzeichnisse der Königlichen Bibliothek zu Berlin, vol.1* : Berlin 1853.
- (ed) *Indische Studien* : 18 vols. : 1850-1898.
  - *Die Nachrichten von den Nakṣatra* : AKAWB, Berlin 1862.
- Whitney, W.D. - *Jacobi and Tilak on the Age of the Veda* : JAOS 16.
- Winternitz, M. - *History of Indian Literature* : 2 vols. : Calcutta 1927-1933. (revised from German ed. of Leipzig 1908)
- Woodroffe, J.G. - *Introduction to Tantra Śāstra* : rep. Madras 1969.
- *Shakti and Shakta* : rep. Madras 1969.
- Yazdani, G. - *Early History of the Deccan* : 2 vols. : London 1960.
- Zaehner, R.C. - *Hinduism* : London 1966.
- Zimmer, H. - *Myths and Symbols in Indian Art and Civilisation* : Princeton 1946, rep. 1972.